Update Information
2013 Update Number 2

This package updates the *Subject Headings Manual*, 2008 edition, which was published in 2009. All new instruction sheets and replacement pages in 2013 Update Number 2 are dated July 2013. The table that follows lists the pages included in this package and summarizes the nature of the updates. Users who wish to maintain a permanent record of the history of the additions and changes listed here should file this table behind the **Update Information** tab in Volume 4 of the manual.

With this update, the manual is current through the end of July 2013. 2013 Update Number 2 is the final update package that will be published. Future updates will be provided as PDF files that may be downloaded free of charge from the Acquisitions and Bibliographic Access web site, http://www.loc.gov/aba.

> ***Note:*** **This update package cannot be used with the *Subject Cataloging Manual: Subject Headings*, 5th edition, originally published in 1996. That edition is closed, and is no longer being updated. These update sheets are compatible only with the 2008 edition of the *Subject Headings Manual*.**

Instruction Sheet	*Page*	*Addition/Change*	*Action*
Contents	7	Table of contents updated	Replace pp. 7-11
H 40	1-2	Minor editorial changes made	Replace
H 193	2, 5	Minor editorial changes made	Replace pp. 1-5
H 200	3, 10-11	Text updated	Replace pp. 3-12
H 250	9	Examples updated	Replace
H 364	4	Text updated in sec. 2	Replace
H 405	3, 5-15	List updated	Replace pp. 3-15, add p. 16
H 430	1-2	Text updated	Replace pp. 1-3, add p. 4
H 475	1	Minor editorial change made	Replace

Update Information
2013 Update Number 2

Instruction Sheet	*Page*	*Addition/Change*	*Action*
H 690	11	Example updated	Replace
H 708	1-2	Text updated	Replace p. 1; discard p. 2
H 715	1	Minor editorial changes made	Replace
H 720	1	Text updated	Replace
H 807	8	Examples updated	Replace
H 810	1-12	Text updated; typo corrected; list updated	Replace
H 830	2, 10	Minor editorial changes made	Replace
H 835	1-2	Text updated	Replace pp. 1-2; discard p. 3
H 910	1-2	Text updated	Replace
H 925	1	Minor editorial change made	Replace
H 1095	1-61	Procedures updated; list updated	Replace
H 1110	1, 10	Paragraph added; list updated	Replace pp. 1-10
H 1140	1	Text updated	Replace pp. 1-4
H 1147	9	List updated	Replace
H 1151	3	List updated	Replace pp. 1-3
H 1154	4	List updated	Replace pp. 3-12
H 1155.8	1	Text updated	Replace
H 1158	3	List updated	Replace pp. 3-5
H 1188	1, 5	Text updated	Replace pp. 1-5
Contents of vol. 3	2	Table of contents updated	Replace pp. 1-3

Instruction Sheet	*Page*	*Addition/Change*	*Action*
H 1230	1	Text updated	Replace
H 1265	1	Example updated	Replace
H 1295	1-3	Text and examples updated	Replace
H 1300	1-3	Text and examples updated	Replace
H 1330	2, 4	Text and examples updated	Replace
H 1332	6	Text updated	Replace pp. 5-7; discard p. 8
H 1334	1, 8	Text updated	Replace pp. 1-13; add p. 14
H 1365	1	Minor editorial changes made	Replace
H 1366	1	Text updated	Replace
H 1367	3	Example updated	Replace
H 1427	3-4	Examples updated	Replace
H 1430	2-3	Text updated	Replace
H 1435	1-6	Minor editorial changes made; examples updated	Replace
H 1438	2	Minor editorial changes made	Replace
H 1472	2	Example updated	Replace
H 1572	1	New instruction sheet	Add
H 1574	4	Minor editorial change made	Replace
H 1592	1-10	Text updated; examples updated	Replace
H 1593	4	Example updated	Replace
H 1595	1	Example updated	Replace
H 1610	1-4	Instruction sheet rewritten	Replace
H 1627	6	Minor editorial change made	Replace
H 1629	1	Text updated	Replace
H 1631	3-4	Minor editorial changes made	Replace

Update Information
2013 Update Number 2

Instruction Sheet	*Page*	*Addition/Change*	*Action*
H 1635	1-5	New instruction sheet	Add
H 1636	1	Instruction sheet rewritten	Replace p. 1; discard p. 2
H 1642	1	Sec. 4 added	Replace
H 1647	1-4	Minor editorial changes made	Replace
H 1659	2	Examples updated	Replace
H 1676	1	Minor editorial change made	Replace
H 1715	2	Minor editorial change made	Replace
H 1720	2	Examples updated	Replace
H 1780	2	Example updated	Replace
H 1790	1-6	Examples updated	Replace
H 1795	1-4	Text updated; examples updated	Replace
H 1855	6-14	Examples updated	Replace
H 1917.5	6-28	Text updated in sec. 1.a(4); examples updated	Replace
H 1925	1-4	Text updated	Replace
H 1927	2	Minor editorial change made	Replace
H 1942	5	Example updated	Replace
H 1969.5	1	Editorial error corrected	Replace
H 1970	1-2	Minor editorial changes made; examples updated	Replace
H 1995	1	Example updated	Replace
H 1997	3-4	Examples updated	Replace
H 2032	2-4	Examples updated	Replace
H 2070	2	Text updated	Replace
H 2075	3	Example updated	Replace
H 2100	3-4	Minor editorial change made	Replace
H 2110	5	Example updated	Replace

Update Information
2013 Update Number 2

Instruction Sheet	*Page*	*Addition/Change*	*Action*
H 2185	1	Example updated	Replace
H 2186	1	Typographical error corrected	Replace
H 2220	1	Example updated	Replace
H 2230	3	Text updated	Replace
Glossary	3-6	Definitions updated	Replace
Appendix A	5-8	Text and examples updated in sec. 12, 14, and 17	Replace
Appendix B	1-10	Text updated; examples updated	Replace
Appendix C	1	Minor editorial changes made	Replace
Appendix D	1-4	Minor editorial changes made; examples updated	Replace
Appendix E	1-8	Examples updated	Replace
Index	1-103	Index updated	Replace

VOLUME THREE *(Continued)*

Special Topics, Materials, Subdivisions, etc.

H 1572	Dwellings with Extensive Grounds
H 1574	Dynasties, Royal Houses, etc.
H 1576	Early Works
H 1578	Economic Conditions
H 1579	Education
H 1580	Effect of One Topic on Another
H 1580.5	Electronic Serials
H 1581	Emigration and Immigration
H 1591	Evaluation
H 1592	Events
H 1593	Exhibitions
H 1595	Facsimiles
H 1600	Festschriften
H 1610	Fictitious Characters
H 1624	Finance
H 1627	Folklore
H 1628	Forecasting
H 1629	Foreign Relations
H 1630	Gazetteers
H 1631	Genealogy and Family Names
H 1635	Gods and Mythological Figures
H 1636	Gods of Greek and Roman Mythology
H 1642	Government Policy
H 1643	Government Publications
H 1645	Guidebooks
H 1646	Handbooks, Manuals, etc.
H 1647	History
H 1659	Illustrations
H 1660	Imprints
H 1670	Indexes
H 1673	Industries Based on Products
H 1675	Influence of One Topic on Another
H 1675.5	Information Services

Contents

VOLUME THREE *(Continued)*

Special Topics, Materials, Subdivisions, etc.

H 1676	Inquisition
H 1676.5	Inspection
H 1678	Interviews
H 1680	Islam
H 1690	Juvenile Materials
H 1705	Legal Materials: Law and Legislation and Other Subdivisions
H 1710	Legal Materials: Legal Research
H 1715	Legal Materials: Legislation
H 1718	Legal Materials: Systems of Law
H 1720	Legends and Stories about Animals
H 1775	Literature: General
H 1780	Literature: Drama
H 1790	Literature: Fiction
H 1795	Literature: Legends and Romances
H 1800	Literature: Poetry
H 1828	Literature from One Place in Multiple Languages
H 1845	Local History and Genealogical Source Materials
H 1848	Longitudinal Studies
H 1855	Manuscripts
H 1865	Maps and Atlases
H 1870	Marketing
H 1890	Mental Health and Mental Health Services
H 1893	Microforms
H 1895	Miniature Books

VOLUME FOUR

Special Topics, Materials, Subdivisions, etc.

H 1910	Miscellanea
H 1913	Moving Image Genre/Form Terms
H 1916	Museums
H 1916.3	Music: General

VOLUME FOUR *(Continued)*

Special Topics, Materials, Subdivisions, etc.

H 1916.5	Music: Jazz and Popular Music
H 1917	Music of Ethnic, National, and Religious Groups
H 1917.5	Music Form/Genre Headings: Medium of Performance
H 1918	Musical Instruments
H 1919	Name and Names
H 1919.5	Nationalities
H 1920	Newspapers on Special Topics and Ethnic Newspapers
H 1925	Parks, Reserves, National Monuments, etc.
H 1927	Periodicals
H 1928	Personal Narratives
H 1929	Philosophy
H 1935	Pictorial Works
H 1942	Politics and Government
H 1943.5	Popular Works
H 1945	Postage Stamps on Specific Topics
H 1945.5	Posters
H 1949	Professional Ethics
H 1955	Public Opinion
H 1965	Publishers' Catalogs
H 1969	Quotations and Maxims
H 1969.5	Radio Genre/Form Terms
H 1970	Railroads
H 1975	Readers
H 1980	Reference Books
H 1995	Regimental Histories
H 1996	Relations and Military Relations
H 1997	Religion
H 1998	Religious Aspects of Topics
H 2015	Religious Denominations or Religions as Subdivisions
H 2015.5	Religious Life
H 2016	Religious Life and Customs
H 2020	Research
H 2021	Reviews

Contents

VOLUME FOUR *(Continued)*

Special Topics, Materials, Subdivisions, etc.

H 2032	Sermons
H 2040	Simulation Methods in Special Fields
H 2055	Social Conditions
H 2057	Social Life and Customs
H 2060	Societies
H 2070	Software and Works about Software
H 2075	Songs and Music
H 2080	Sources
H 2083	Specifications
H 2095	Statistics
H 2098	Streets and Roads
H 2100	Strikes and Lockouts
H 2110	Study and Teaching
H 2145	Supplementary Works
H 2149	Surveys
H 2160	Tables
H 2184	Terms and Phrases
H 2185	Territories and Possessions
H 2186	Testing
H 2187	Textbooks
H 2190	Texts
H 2217	Training
H 2219	Translating
H 2220	Translations
H 2225	Transportation
H 2227	Treaties
H 2228	Trials
H 2230	Visual Materials and Non-Music Sound Recordings
H 2232	Vocational Guidance
H 2400	Yearbooks
Glossary	
Appendix A	Abbreviations
Appendix B	Capitalization

Contents

VOLUME FOUR *(Continued)*

Special Topics, Materials, Subdivisions, etc.

Appendix C Diacritics and Special Characters
Appendix D Punctuation
Appendix E Geographic Area Codes
Appendix F Subject-Related Codes in Field 008 - Books
Appendix G Subject-Related Codes in Field 008 - Continuing Resources (Serials)

Update Information
Index

Library of Congress Subject Authority Records H 40

BACKGROUND: *Online subject authority records in Classification Web and the LC Database take precedence over all printed products as authority for the non-free-floating elements of subject headings. Additionally, subdivision authority records have been created to control the more than 3,200 free-floating subdivisions. These records, used in conjunction with name authority records in the LC Database and the lists of free-floating subdivisions and other elements in the* ***Subject Headings Manual****, constitute final authority for the assignment of subject headings.*

A copy of each subject authority record in Classification Web also resides in the LC Database. In addition to being the most authoritative list of subject headings, Classification Web is also used for products such as the Subject Headings Tentative Lists and Library of Congress Subject Headings, which was published annually in print form until 2013. LCSH is now available as free PDF files on the Acquisitions and Bibliographic Access website.

1. Characteristics of subject authority records.

a. Records for approved headings. An existing heading that is approved and valid for use is represented in Classification Web and the LC Database by a single authority record with a record ID number in the 010 field having the prefix **sh**.

b. Records for newly proposed headings. Proposed headings reside in the Subject Heading Proposal System, which is a module of Classification Web. The record ID number in the 010 field has the prefix **sp**. The heading is not valid for use until it has been approved during the editorial process. Once the Data Integrity Section has assigned the proposal to a tentative list, the list number can be found in the 907 $t subfield of the MARC authority record in the Subject Heading Proposal System.

c. Records for headings being updated. An existing heading that is being changed in any way is represented in the Subject Heading Proposal System by two authority records, one having a record ID number with the prefix **sh** in the 010 field, and the other having the same record ID number but with the prefix **sp**. In order to determine the nature of the update being performed, it is necessary to compare the "sh" record with its "sp" counterpart. Once the Data Integrity Section has assigned the proposal to a tentative list, the list number can be found in the 907 $t subfield of the MARC authority record in the Subject Heading Proposal System.

2. Assigning valid headings as subjects. Before assigning a subject heading to a work being cataloged, ascertain that either (1) it is an RDA name heading represented by a name authority record in the LC Database (cf. H 430); or (2) it is represented in the LC Database or in Classification Web by a single subject authority record that has an 010 field with an **sh** record number; or (3) if it is represented in the Subject Heading Proposal System by two subject authority records one of which has an 010 field with an **sp** record number, the change being made is to a field other than the 1XX field; or (4) it is authorized by free-floating provisions (cf. H 362 for free-floating terms and phrases, H 1090 for multiple subdivisions, and H 1095-H 1200 for free-floating subdivisions).

Do not assign headings that have both "sh" and "sp" records unless the proposed change is in a field other than the 1XX field, that is, unless the heading itself is unaffected by the change. If the 1XX field is being changed, the proposal has appeared on a tentative list, and editorial process is complete (as shown by the tentative list number in the 907 $t subfield in the MARC authority record in the Subject Heading Proposal System), consult the approved list posted on the Cataloging and Acquisitions Web site (http://www.loc.gov/aba/) to determine whether the proposed change was approved. "sp" records in the Subject Heading Proposal System are converted to "sh" records approximately 3-4 weeks after the date on the tentative list.

3. Non-authoritative subject heading sources. The following sources, although useful tools for reference purposes, may not be treated as authority for the assignment of a subject heading:

- Bibliographic records in the LC Database
- Tentative lists of new subject heading proposals (including those proposals marked **(A)**).

Changing a Heading or Deleting a Subject Authority Record H 193

***BACKGROUND**: In most cases, a subject heading is changed from one form to another by changing the data in the 1XX field of the subject authority record, rather than by deleting the subject authority record and creating a new one. The heading in its new form retains the same authority record control number (010 field) that was assigned to the old heading, and the old heading becomes a 4XX field (UF reference) in the authority record, coded to indicate that it is the earlier form of the current heading. If the heading appears as a broader term or related term (5XX field) in other subject authority records, or if it has been used as an example in a general see or see also reference or scope note, it is changed in those records as well.*

However, if a single heading is "split" into two or more new headings, the original authority record is deleted, and new authority records are created for the new headings using new record control numbers. Authority records are also deleted in cases where duplication of records occurs.

This instruction sheet describes the procedures to be followed to change a subject heading from one form to another or to delete a subject authority record. These procedures are presented in terms applicable to the Subject Heading Proposal System.

1. Retrieving the heading in the Subject Heading Proposal System. In order to change a subject heading to a new form, retrieve the heading in the Subject Heading Proposal System. Click on the icon to the right of the heading in the browse display, and in the dropdown menu click **Propose a change to this record**.

2. Geographic subdivision. See H 364 for guidelines on coding to indicate whether a heading may be subdivided geographically or not. If it is necessary to change the coding for the record in question, do so by selecting the appropriate radio button. The values that appear as radio buttons for the 008/06 field are as follows:

May Subd Geog = Subdivided geographically - indirect
Not Subd Geog = Not subdivided geographically
No Attempt to Code *[This value also indicates that the heading is not currently divided geographically]*

3. Priority 1 proposals. If the proposed change is being made for material that is handled on a priority 1 basis in the editorial process, such as CIPs, select the radio button labeled CIP**.**

4. Adjusting the 1XX field. Change the heading in the 1XX field to the desired form.

5. References. Review the 4XX and 5XX fields to determine whether they conform to current policies for making references (cf. H 370-H 375). If any field is incorrect or inappropriate, change it or delete it as necessary. Add any additional 4XX or 5XX fields that may be required.

Except as stated below, add a 4XX field containing the old form of the heading. Identify this as the earlier form of the heading by adding to the field a $w control subfield containing the data **nne**. Place the control subfield before the $a subfield. The $w subfield generates the notation **[Former heading]** on the tentative list and in *Library of Congress Subject Headings*. Omit this special 4XX field under the following circumstances:

- when the old form of heading "normalizes" to the same string of characters as the new form, that is, when the old form is identical in all respects to the new form except for capitalization, diacritics, hyphens, etc. (Note, however, that when a hyphen is removed from a heading and the hyphenated words are changed to a *single word*, the 4XX from the old form should be made);

- when the only change being made is the correction of a typographical error in the old form of heading;

- when the only change being made is the closing of what had been an open date in the heading or in a period subdivision under the heading;

- when a [*heading*]–[*subdivision*] record is being changed because the basic heading itself is also being changed, and the 4XX field containing the old form of the heading has been added to the authority record for the basic heading. For example, when **Venereal diseases** was changed to **Sexually transmitted diseases,** a 4XX field with the form **Venereal diseases** was added to that record. Therefore a 4XX with the form **Venereal diseases–Eclectic treatment** was not added when that heading was changed to **Sexually transmitted diseases–Eclectic treatment**.

6. Classification number. Review the 053 field(s), if any, present in the record. See H 365 for guidelines on LC classification numbers in subject authority records. If any 053 is incorrect, change or delete it as necessary. If a required 053 field is not present, add it to the record.

7. Authority research information. Use 670, 675, and 952 fields to provide source citations, LC patterns, etc., applicable to the *new* form of the heading, following the guidelines in H 203, *Citation of Sources*, and the procedures in H 200, sec. 9 and 13.

8. Other fields. Add or edit any other fields as necessary, such as the 260, 360, 680, and 781 fields. Follow the procedures described in H 200, sec. 10-13. For examples of content designation of 260 and 360 fields, see H 374, *General See References*, and H 371, *General See Also References*. For examples of 680 and 781 fields, see H 200, sec. 10 and 11.

9. Bibliographic file maintenance. Indicate the total number of bibliographic records that will need to be updated as a result of the proposed change by adding a 952 field formatted as in the following example:

```
952 ## $a Bib. records to be changed: 75
```

If this field is already present in the record, edit it to reflect the number of bibliographic records being submitted with the current proposal. Do not add a second field of this type.

10. Saving and viewing the record. Save the proposed revision to the Subject Heading Proposal System by clicking **Save**. The proposed revision is now searchable within the system. Click the **Refresh** button on the browse display. The text of the heading is displayed in brown, indicating that it is a proposed revision and not yet approved.

11. Changing the heading in 5XX fields in other records. Locate all authority records in which the heading being changed has been used as a broader or related term, that is, those headings that are printed as NTs or RTs in *Library of Congress Subject Headings* under the heading being changed.

Retrieve each authority record in the Subject Heading Proposal System as described in sec. 1, above. In each record, change the data in the 5XX field from the old form of the heading to the new form, or delete the field if the reference is no longer valid under current guidelines (see H 370). Follow the procedures described in H 195, *Changing References in Subject Authority Records*.

> *Note: If other obvious errors are present in any of these records, such as incorrect class numbers, invalid 4XX or 5XX fields, etc., correct these errors at the same time, insofar as this can be done within a reasonable length of time and without doing extensive research. It is not required to determine whether all existing references conform to current policy so that they may be coded as "evaluated" (cf. H 370, Background).*

12. Changing the heading where used as an example in other records. If the heading being changed has been used as an example in a 260 field (general see reference), 360 field (general see also reference), or 680 field (scope note) in another record, there is a 681 field in the record reading "Example under [. . .]" or "Note under [. . .]." If this field is present revise those records as well.

13. Submitting the proposal. Make a printout of the revised authority record for the heading that is being changed as well as printouts of all related authority records that were revised in conjunction with the proposal. In order to facilitate processing of the proposal for the tentative list, circle the tags of all fields that have been changed or added, using red ink if possible. It is not necessary to explicitly indicate fields that have been deleted. Submit the printouts to the Data Integrity Section together with the work being cataloged, if any, and printouts of any bibliographic records that will need to be changed. Once these printouts have been submitted to the Data Integrity Section, make no further changes to the online authority records in the Subject Heading Proposal System. If any further additions or changes are required, notify the Data Integrity Section by telephone, email, or inter-office mail.

14. Deleting an authority record. Normally, a subject authority record may be deleted only if either: (a) the heading duplicates a name heading; (b) the heading is replaced by a heading already represented by another subject authority record; or (c) an existing heading is being split into two or more new headings. If any of these conditions is met, submit a proposal to delete the record, as follows:

a. Retrieving the heading in the Subject Heading Proposal System. Retrieve the subject heading that is to be deleted. Click on the icon to the right of the heading in the browse display, and in the dropdown menu click **Propose cancelling this heading**.

b. Priority 1 proposals. If the proposed deletion is being made for material that is handled on a priority 1 basis in the editorial process, such as CIPs, select the radio button labeled CIP.

c. Explanation of the cancellation. Add a 682 field to the record with an $i subfield containing an appropriate note explaining why the record is being deleted. Select this note from the list provided in H 193.5. If the note includes a citation to a replacement heading, use an $a subfield to cite the heading. *Example:*

```
682 ## $i This authority record has been deleted because the heading
         is covered by the subject heading $a Congo (Democratic Repub-
         lic)--Languages $i (sh 85149573).
```

d. Saving and viewing the record. Save the revised record to the Subject Heading Proposal System by clicking **Save**. The proposed deletion is now searchable within the system. Click the **Refresh** button on the browse display. The text of the heading is displayed in brown, indicating that it is a proposed deletion and not yet approved.

e. Submitting the proposal. Make a printout of the revised authority record for the heading that is being deleted. In order to facilitate processing of the proposal for the weekly list, circle the tags of all fields that have been changed or added, using red ink if possible. It is not necessary to explicitly indicate fields that have been deleted. Submit the printout to the Data Integrity Section together with the work being cataloged, if any, and printouts of any bibliographic records that will need to be changed. Once these printouts have been submitted to the Data Integrity Section, make no further changes to the online authority record. If any further additions or changes are required, notify the Data Integrity Section by telephone, email, or inter-office mail.

GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR SUBJECT HEADING AUTHORITY RECORDS

2. Accessing templates for new headings. On the main menu, click on the appropriate option for the type of heading being established. This retrieves one of the various templates, or forms, that have been designed for creating different categories of headings.

> *Note: Subject headings and references are tagged according to the definitions in the MARC 21 Format for Authority Data. For heading-subdivision combinations in 1XX, 4XX, or 5XX fields, the tag is based on the $a subfield, and the corresponding template is used to create it. For example, since the heading* ***Jesus Christ—Date of death*** *is tagged* ***100*** *(based on the $a subfield* ***Jesus Christ****), the Personal Name Heading template is used to create it; since* ***Harvard University—Student housing*** *is tagged* ***110*** *(based on the $a subfield* ***Harvard University****), the Corporate Body Heading template is used; since* ***Beowulf—Characters*** *is tagged 130 (based on the $a subfield* ***Beowulf****), the Uniform Title Heading template is used; etc.*

Each of the templates is discussed specifically in sections 2.a-2.j, below.

a. Topical heading. Use this template to establish topical subject headings, including events that are not subdivisions under places, groups of legendary characters and deities, etc.

b. Geographic heading. Use this template to establish geographic features and named entities that have been designated as geographic in nature (see H 405). Also use this template to establish time periods and events that are subdivisions under places.

c. Fictitious character heading. Use this template to establish headings of the type **Teenage Mutant Ninja Turtles (Fictitious characters)** (see H 1610).

d. Family name heading. Use this template to establish headings of the type **Smith family** (see H 1631).

e. Corporate body heading (Buildings, etc.). Use this template to establish subdivisions under named entities that are corporate bodies, and to establish subject headings for named entities that have been designated as similar to corporate bodies and tagged 110 (see H 405).

f. Meeting heading. Use this template to establish subdivisions under headings for meetings and events that are tagged 111, e.g., **Super Bowl—Records**.

GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR SUBJECT HEADING AUTHORITY RECORDS

2. Accessing templates for new headings. *(Continued)*

g. Personal name heading. Use this template to establish subdivisions under personal names, e.g., **Jesus Christ—Betrayal**.

h. Uniform title heading. Use this template to establish subdivisions under uniform titles, e.g., **Bible--Quotations in the Book of Mormon**.

i. General see Reference. Use this template to establish general see references (150/260) (see H 374).

j. Other templates. Two other templates are also available.

(1) Genre/Form Term. Use this template to establish genre/form terms.

(2) Children's Headings. Templates similar to those listed in sec. 2.a-2.i, above, are provided for proposing *Children's Subject Headings*.

3. General information about entering data in the templates.

a. Fixed vs. editable data. Some areas of the templates contain data that cannot be edited by the user. Other areas have fields in which the cursor can be placed and data can be entered or edited by the user. In many of these editable fields, some data has already been provided by the system. For example, in the 1XX field, the system includes the data **$a** by default. Default data provided by the system can in most cases be edited or deleted by the user if necessary.

b. Adding subfields in editable fields. The system uses the dollar sign ($) to represent a delimiter. In order to add a new subfield to an existing field, type a dollar sign followed by the appropriate subfield code letter. *Example:*

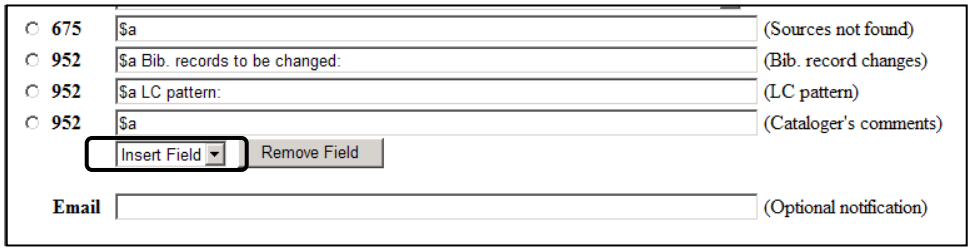
```
150 $a Greenhouse gases [existing subfield]
150 $a Greenhouse gases $x Law and legislation [new subfield added]
```

GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR SUBJECT HEADING AUTHORITY RECORDS

3. General information about entering data in the templates. *(Continued)*

c. Adding new fields to the template. Immediately below the final 952 field in the template is an **Insert field** menu. If it is necessary to add a new field to the template, select the radio button of the existing field above which the new field is to be inserted. Then click the down arrow on the **Insert field** menu in order to display a list of available fields. Click on the desired field, and it will be inserted immediately above the field whose radio button was selected.

Note: If no radio button is selected, the system will automatically insert the new field before the next higher numbered tag in the template.

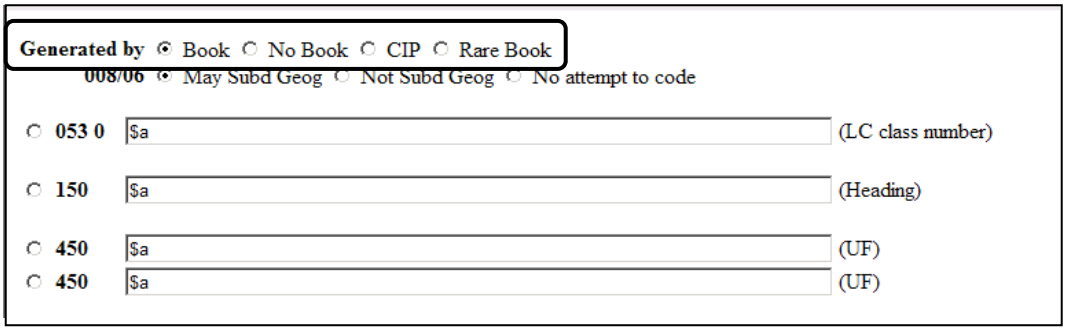


d. Fields that the user leaves blank. Any field that appears in a basic template and is left blank by the user is automatically deleted by the system when the record is saved. It is not necessary for the user to take any action to remove an unneeded field from a template.

Note: If desired, a field may be removed by selecting the radio button of the field and clicking the ***Remove Field*** *button.*

GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR SUBJECT HEADING AUTHORITY RECORDS

4. "Generated by". At the top of the form select the appropriate radio button from the four options.



Book. Select this button if any non-Priority-1 bibliographic item is being submitted with the proposal, such as a book, serial, etc.

No Book. Select this button if no bibliographic item is being submitted with the proposal. For example, if the proposal is being made in order to correct an error or in response to correspondence, select **No book**.

*Note: If the item that has generated the proposal is printed music, select **No Book** and do not submit the item with the proposal.*

CIP. Select this button if the proposal is being made in connection with the cataloging of a CIP or any other Priority 1 material, except a rare book.

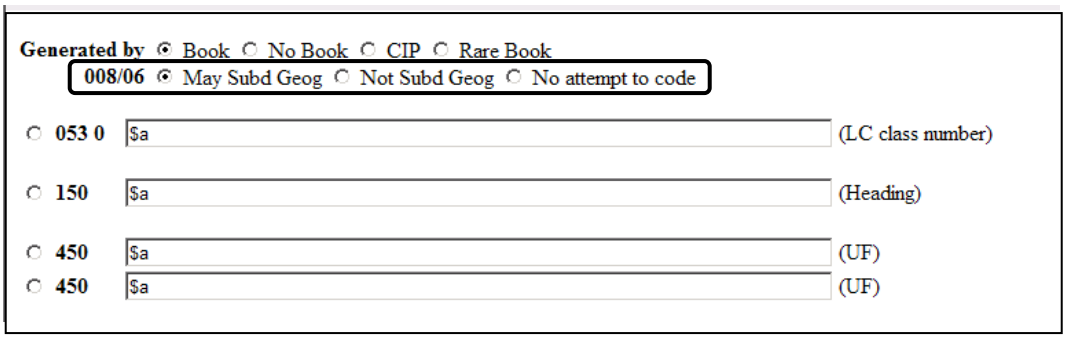
Rare Book. Select this button if the proposal is being made in connection with the cataloging of a rare book.

Note: Because these radio buttons are for internal LC workflows, they are not present for users who work in SACO libraries.

GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR SUBJECT HEADING AUTHORITY RECORDS

5. Field 008/06 (Geographic subdivision). The values that appear as radio buttons for the 008/06 field in the templates are as follows:

May Subd Geog = Subdivided geographically - indirect
Not Subd Geog = Not subdivided geographically
No Attempt to Code *[This value also indicates that the heading is not currently divided geographically]*



H 364 provides guidelines on how to choose the appropriate code for geographic subdivision. Following those guidelines, select the appropriate radio button.

Note: Field 008/06 does not appear in the templates for certain types of headings because it is set by default and cannot be edited. For example, in the template for family name headings, the 008/06 is set to ***Not Subd Geog*** *and may not be changed.*

6. 053 field (LC Class Number). Follow the rules and guidelines in H 365 to determine whether to assign a class number to the heading. Enter each number or span of numbers in a separate **053** field. For a single number, use the $a subfield. For a span of numbers, use the $a subfield for the beginning number of the span and add a $b subfield for the ending number. Provide the full class number (including class letters) in both the $a and $b subfields. Do not key a hyphen. Enter the appropriate qualifying term, if any, in a $c subfield. Do not enclose data in the $c subfield in parentheses. *Example:*

```
053 #0 $a HG289 $b HG297 $c Finance
```

053 fields left blank will be automatically deleted by the system when the record is saved (see sec. 3.d, above).

If an additional 053 field is required, or if the template does not provide an 053 field but one is needed, add it by using the appropriate technique described in sec. 3.c., above.

GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR SUBJECT HEADING AUTHORITY RECORDS

7. The heading. Enter the text of the proposed heading in the 1XX field. If a heading-subdivision combination is being proposed, create the necessary subfields using the technique described in sec. 3.b., above.

8. Tracings and references.

a. General rule. Record all UF, BT, or RT references as tracings, that is, as 4XXs or 5XXs. Determine by searching the subject headings in *Classification Web* that any proposed 4XX does not conflict with an existing heading or UF reference and that any proposed 5XX exists as a currently valid heading.

Reference patterns. Many new headings belong to special categories having their own prescribed sets of references, such as names of individual structures, monuments, or geographic features. Specific subdivisions also have characteristic reference patterns. These can be determined by consulting individual instruction sheets in the *Subject Headings Manual* or by examining existing subject authority records for other headings in the category. Use only authority records whose references have been *evaluated* (that is, those with the value **a** in field 008/29) as patterns for new proposals.

b. 4XXs. Follow the rules and guidelines in H 373 for making UF references. Record UF references in 4XX fields. Use the technique described in sec. 3.c, above, to add additional blank 4XX fields to the template. List these fields in alphabetical order. Do not add $w control subfields to 4XX fields except under the conditions described in the note below. Provide authority to support variant forms of names and alternate terminology for subjects in 670 fields (see sec. 9). *Example:*

```
150 ## $a French fries
450 ## $a Chips (French fries)
450 ## $a French fried potatoes
450 ## $a French frieds
```

Note: New subject authority records are sometimes created because a subject heading is being canceled and replaced by two or more new headings (cf. H 193). In those cases, add a 4XX field to each of the new authority records containing the old form of the heading. Identify this as the earlier form of the heading by adding, at the beginning of the field, a $w control subfield with the data ***nne****.*

GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR SUBJECT HEADING AUTHORITY RECORDS

8. Tracings and references. *(Continued)*

c. 5XXs (BTs and RTs). Follow the principles in H 370 for making broader term and related term references. Record BT references in 5XX fields that have a $w control subfield containing the value **g**. This control subfield identifies references as broader terms. List them in alphabetical order. Record RT references in 5XX fields that have no $w control subfield. The absence of the control subfield identifies the reference as a related term. List them in alphabetical order immediately following the list of broader term references. Use the technique described in sec. 3.c, above, to add additional blank 5XX fields to the template, as needed. *Example:*

```
150  $a Carpets
550  $w g $a Floor coverings [a broader term]
550  $a Rugs [a related term]
```

Note: For each related term 5XX, a reciprocal 5XX must be added to the authority record for the heading being used as a reference. To do this, follow the procedure described in H 195, ***Changing References in Subject Authority Records***.

There must be an authority record in the subject authority file for each subject heading used as a 5XX. In cases where a 5XX is made from a generic term divided by place or from a topic divided by a free-floating subdivision, for example, **Mountains—Colorado** or **Oxygen—Toxicology**, an authority record for the generic term divided by the specific place or for the specific heading-subdivision combination needed in the 5XX may not yet have been created. In these cases, it is not necessary for the cataloger to create the authority record; editorial staff will create it.

d. Narrower terms (NTs). Make references from the new heading being proposed to existing narrower headings by adding the new heading as a BT (that is, a 5XX field having a $w control subfield containing the value **g** to the existing authority records for the narrower terms. Do this by following the procedures in H 195 for changing references in existing subject authority records and submitting a printout of each changed record together with the proposal for the new heading. Although the MARC 21 format provides value **h** to identify narrower terms in a $w control subfield of 5XX fields, the Library of Congress does not use this value nor include narrower terms in records for broader terms.

GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR SUBJECT HEADING AUTHORITY RECORDS

9. Citation of sources. Use the **670** and **675** fields to cite sources that were consulted in preparing the proposal. See H 202 for instructions on the authority research required for subject heading proposals.

a. Work cataloged. Cite the work for which the heading is being proposed as the first 670 field. Provide the LCCN, the main entry and title proper, and the publication date. Abridge titles proper if they are lengthy, but include key words that support the form of the proposed heading or that justify a UF reference, even if they appear in a subtitle. When establishing both a new heading and a new subdivision for the same work, cite the work in both authority records.

Note: When citing a Web site, include the date viewed in the $a subfield.

Include in a $b subfield information from the work that will be useful in evaluating the proposal. *Examples:*

```
670 ## $a Work cat: 96011759: Petering, D.E.K. The Anton
          Wilhelm Petering family genealogy, 1995.

670 ## $a Work cat.: 2010413893: Archeological and historical
          investigations at Battery Hamilton (9CH953), Chatham
          County, Georgia, 2008: $b p. iii (The archeological
          site [Battery Hamilton] is located in the Savannah
          River on Bird Island about three miles upstream from
          Fort Pulaski)
```

b. Other sources in which the heading was found. Use additional 670 fields to cite sources that support the form of the proposal or references. Follow the style and conventions for citation of sources described in H 203. *Examples:*

```
670 ## $a Rieger, R. Glossary of genetics, 1990 $b (geno-
          type-environment interaction)

670 ## $a MEDLINE on 1stsearch, Feb. 15, 1996 $b (genotype-envi-
          ronment interaction; genotype by environment interac-
          tion; gene-environment interaction; genotype x
          environment interaction)
```

Do not cite LC patterns or the *Subject Headings Manual* in 670 fields. Instead, use the 952 (LC pattern) field, as described in sec. 15, below.

GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR SUBJECT HEADING AUTHORITY RECORDS

9. Citation of sources. *(Continued)*

c. Sources in which the heading was not found. Use a single 675 field to cite sources that were consulted but do not include the term or any variation of it. Cite these sources in the same manner as sources in which the term was found. Cite each source in a separate $a subfield. Put a semicolon after each source citation before starting a new $a subfield. Use no other subfield coding. *Example:*

```
675 ## $a Lippincott; $a Web. geog.; $a Times atlas; $a Britannica
          online, June 28, 2013
```

10. Scope note. Follow the guidelines in H 400 for determining whether a scope note is appropriate. If a scope note is being provided for the heading being established, enter it in a 680 field. Use the technique described in sec. 3.c to add a blank 680 field to the template. Use $i subfields for explanatory text and $a subfields for headings or subdivision terms that are used to amplify or illustrate the text contained in the $i subfields. *Example:*

```
150 ## $a Developmental neurobiology
680 ## $i Here are entered works on the growth and differentiation
          of the nervous system. Works limited to the growth of
          the nervous system are entered under $a Nervous
          system--Growth.
```

Note: The introductory phrase, "Here are entered works on," is system-supplied.

11. Geographic subdivision information. For geographic subject headings, enter data in the 781 field showing the form of the heading when it is used as a geographic subdivision, following the guidelines in H 830.

Note: If the heading is not valid for use as a geographic subdivision, leave the 781 field blank. When the record is saved, the system will automatically add a 667 field stating that the heading is not valid for use as a geographic subdivision. See the detailed guidelines in H 836.

GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR SUBJECT HEADING AUTHORITY RECORDS

12. General see also references. None of the basic templates include a blank 360 field. If one is required, add it to the template using the technique described in sec. 3.c, above. Enter the text of the reference in the blank 360 field, creating $a and $i subfields as needed, using the technique described in sec. 3.b, above. Use $i subfields for explanatory text and $a subfields for the heading(s) or subdivision(s) referred to. *Example:*

```
150 ## $a Apologetics
360 ## $i subdivision $a Apologetic works $i under individual denomina-
          tions, e.g., $a Catholic Church--Apologetic works
```

Rules and guidelines for making general see also references are provided in H 371.

13. General see references. To create a general see reference, use the General See Reference template. Enter the term from which the reference is being made in the 150 field. Enter the text of the reference in the blank 260 field, creating $a and $i subfields as needed, using the technique described in sec. 3.b, above. Use $i subfields for explanatory text and $a subfields for the heading(s) or subdivision(s) referred to. *Example:*

```
150 ## $a Controversial literature
260 ## $i subdivision $a Controversial literature $i under individual
          religions, religious denominations, monastic and religious
          orders, and sacred works for works that argue against or
          express opposition to those groups or works
```

Rules and guidelines for making general see references are provided in H 374.

14. Bibliographic file maintenance. Before submitting a completed proposal to the Data Integrity Section, search the LC Database to locate existing bibliographic records that should be updated as a result of the new proposal. Enter the total number of records to be changed in the 952 (Bib record changes) field. If there are none, enter **0** after the standard text, "Bib. Records to be changed."

For detailed information about bibliographic file maintenance, see H 165.

2. Pattern headings.

a. Pattern: Medium of performance. *(Continued)*

(3) The following headings for vocal music:

```
150 ## $a Choruses
150 ## $a Choruses, Sacred
150 ## $a Choruses, Secular
150 ## $a Sacred songs
150 ## $a Songs
150 ## $a Vocalises
```

(4) Accompanying ensemble. An accompanying ensemble may be added to headings for solo instrument(s) and solo vocal music, as long as the ensemble has itself been established. The pattern applies to the connecting word **with** and the terms for the accompaniment that follow it. *Examples:*

```
150 ## $a Piano music
150 ## $a Chamber orchestra music
650 #0 $a Piano with chamber orchestra.
```

```
150 ## $a Violin and piano music
150 ## $a String orchestra music
650 #0 $a Violin and piano with string orchestra.
```

```
150 ## $a Chamber orchestra music
150 ## $a Clarinet music
150 ## $a Flute music
150 ## $a Violin music
150 ## $a Cello music
650 #0 $a Clarinet, flute, violin, cello with chamber
        orchestra.
```

```
150 ## $a Songs
150 ## $a Piano music
650 #0 $a Songs (High voice) with piano.
```

2. Pattern headings. *(Continued)*

b. Pattern: Musical format. This pattern applies to the free-floating form subdivisions that characterize the physical format and some standard types of arrangement of the music. The subdivisions are listed in H 1160. *Examples:*

```
650 #0 $a Concertos (Violin) $v Solo with piano.
650 #0 $a Operas $v Vocal scores with piano.
650 #0 $a Piano music (Pianos (2)) $v Scores.
650 #0 $a Symphonies $v 2-piano scores.
650 #0 $a Wind quintets (Bassoon, clarinet, flute, horn,
        oboe) $v Scores and parts.
```

c. Pattern: Singular/plural form. Names of musical instruments established in the singular may be used also in the plural as may be needed to specify medium of performance in form/genre headings for musical works. Conversely, types of instrumental ensembles established in the plural may also be used in the singular. For additional guidelines, see H 1917.5 and H 1918. *Examples:*

```
150 ## $a Bassoon music
150 ## $a Clarinet music
150 ## $a Horn music
150 ## $a Oboe music
```

authorize "bassoons," "clarinets," "horns," "oboes"
as in

```
650 #0 $a Wind nonets (Bassoons (3), clarinets (2),
          horns (2), oboes (2))
150 ## $a Instrumental ensembles
```

authorizes "instrumental ensemble"
as in

```
650 #0 $a Trumpet with instrumental ensemble.
```

2. Coding new headings to indicate that they are not subdivided geographically. Code a new subject heading to be not subdivided geographically by selecting the radio button labeled **Not Subd Geog** on the proposal template in the Subject Heading Proposal System. Use this code when *Library of Congress Subject Headings* provides an alternative way of expressing that topic in relation to a place, and in situations where a decision has been made that all headings belonging to a particular category are to be coded as **Not subdivided geographically**. Also use this code in situations in which it is judged desirable to record a definite decision that an individual heading is not to be used with geographic subdivisions, such as when the meaning of the heading calls for it, or when subdivision by place would be ambiguous.

Code all headings of the following types as **Not subdivided geographically**:

- headings for topics that have corresponding subdivisions that are used to represent that topic in conjunction with a place. For example, the heading **Commerce** is not subdivided geographically. Instead, the corresponding subdivision **–Commerce** is used under names of countries, cities, etc., to represent the commerce and trade of that place. This situation occurs most frequently for general headings that correspond to free-floating subdivisions used under names of places (cf. H 1140).

- headings for *general* literary forms or genres. Headings like **Poetry**, **Short stories**, and **Lawyers' writings** are not subdivided geographically because specific headings with national adjectival qualifiers are established to represent those forms or genres originating in a particular country, for example, **Canadian poetry**; **Short stories, Mexican**; **Lawyers' writings, Chilean**.

- headings for literary or artistic forms established with regional geographic qualifiers, for example, **Epic poetry, European**. The epic poetry of individual European countries is expressed by separate headings that are qualified by their country of origin, for example, **Epic poetry, Italian**.

2. Coding new headings to indicate that they are not subdivided geographically. *(Continued)*

- individual headings in the following categories:

  - names of families, royal houses, dynasties, for example, **Windsor, House of**

  - named brands and products, for example, **IBM microcomputers**

  - names of groups of fictitious and legendary characters, for example, **Hardy Boys (Fictitious characters)**

- headings for which geographic subdivision is not conceptually logical. For example, the heading **World politics** is not subdivided geographically because it signifies political history and conditions worldwide. Similarly, the heading **Global environmental change** is not subdivided geographically because it stands for the global phenomenon. However, extended headings formulated by combining such headings with subdivisions that have a geographic orientation may subdivide geographically, for example, **Global environmental change—Economic aspects** *(May Subd Geog).*

- headings of the type **[*topic*] in art**, **[*topic*] in literature**, **[*topic*] in mass media**, **[*topic*] in motion pictures**, **[*topic*] in music**, **[*topic*] in opera**, and **[*topic*] on television**, when the headings represent the portrayal of special topics in these media. With these headings, it would not be clear whether a geographic subdivision would refer to the location of the topic or the medium.

BACKGROUND: *(Continued)*

Lists of the categories of headings falling into both these groups are on pp. 5-13. This instruction sheet describes the procedures to be followed when it is necessary for a subject cataloger to establish a heading in one of these categories, or to request a descriptive cataloger to establish a heading for subject usage.

1. General rule. Whenever a new heading is needed for a named entity, consult the two lists on pp. 5-13 to determine whether the heading is categorized as a Group 1 or Group 2 heading. Follow the procedures appropriate to the group. If neither the precise category, nor a broader category that encompasses the precise category, nor a very closely analogous category is found in either of the two groups, bring the matter to the attention of the Policy and Standards Division (PSD) for an interpretation and possible addition of the category to one of the lists.

2. Group one headings. First search to determine whether the required heading has already been established as an RDA name heading. If so, use the heading as established. If not, establish it as a name heading or request a descriptive cataloger to do so.

If a heading in this category has been established as a *subject* heading, submit a proposal to delete the subject authority record according to the procedures in H 193 after it has been established it as a name heading.

3. Group two headings.

a. Heading required for subject cataloging purposes. First search to determine whether the entity has already been established as a name heading according to former guidelines. After making this determination, proceed as follows:

(1) Name authority record not found. Submit a proposal to establish the entity as a subject heading, following the standard procedures described in H 200, as well as any special procedures described in individual instruction sheets appropriate to particular categories of named entities, for example, H 1334 for buildings and structures, H 1925 for parks, etc.

Proposals of this type appear in the main alphabetical section of the tentative list and are treated as subject headings.

3. Group two headings.

a. Heading required for subject cataloging purposes. *(Continued)*

(2) RDA or AACR2 name authority record found. If the record does *not* have a 667 field with the notation **Subj Headings Manual/RDA**, consult the Policy and Standards Division to determine whether it should be canceled as a name heading and re-established as a subject heading.

(3) Pre-AACR2 name authority record found. Submit a proposal to establish it as a subject heading, as described in sec. 1.a., above. Notify the Policy and Standards Division of the invalid name heading so that the name authority record can be deleted.

b. Heading needed for use as descriptive access point. Follow the guidelines in the *Descriptive Cataloging Manual*, Z1, Appendix 1: Ambiguous Entities, sec. 1.2.(e) and sec. 3.1.

GROUP ONE - NAME AUTHORITY GROUP HEADINGS: Named entities always established according to descriptive cataloging conventions with authority records that always reside in the name authority file.

Category	*MARC tag*
Abbeys	110
Academies	110
Airplanes, Named	110
Airports	110
Almshouses	110
Animals, Named	100
Aquariums, Public	110
Arboretums	110
Armories	110
Arsenals	110
Art works, Individual	100, 110, 130
Artificial satellites	110
Asylums (Charitable institutions)	110
Athletic contests	111
Banks	110
Bars	110
Biblical characters	100
Biological stations	110
Boards of trade (Chambers of commerce)	110
Botanical gardens	110
Broadcasting stations	110
Business parks	110
Cathedrals	110
Cemeteries[1]	110
Chambers of commerce	110
Chapels	110
Churches (in use or ruins)	110
Circuses	110
City sections[2]	151
Collective settlements	151
Colleges	110
Comarcas	151

H 405 Establishing Certain Entities in the Name or Subject Authority File

GROUP ONE - NAME AUTHORITY GROUP HEADINGS

Category	*MARC tag*
Comic strips	130[3]
Communes	151
Competitions	111
Computer programs and software	130[3]
Concentration camps	110
Concert halls	110
Conservation districts	151
Contests	111
Convents	110
Correctional institutions	110
Country clubs	110
Crematories	110
Dance halls	110
Denominations, Religious (Individual)	110
Dispensaries	110
Ecclesiastical entities that are also names of places, for example, **Catholic Church. Diocese of Basel (Switzerland)**; **Constantinople (Ecumenical patriarchate)**	110
Ecological stations	110
Educational institutions	110
Electronic discussion groups	130
Events[4]	111
Exhibitions	111
Expeditions, Military[5]	111
Expeditions, Scientific	111
Experiment stations	110
Expositions	111
Factories	110
Fairs	111
Festivals and celebrations	111
Fictitious characters (Individual)[17]	100
Fish hatcheries	110

GROUP ONE - NAME AUTHORITY GROUP HEADINGS

Category	*MARC tag*
Folk festivals and celebrations	111
Forest districts	151
Forests (Administrative agencies)[6]	110
Funds	110
Funeral homes, mortuaries	110
Galleries	110
Games (Events)	111
Gangs	110
Gods (Individual)[23]	100
Halfway houses	110
Helplines, hotlines	110
Herbariums	110
Hospitals	110
Hotels	110
Housing projects	110
Individual works of art	100, 110, 130
Industrial districts	110
Jurisdictions, Ancient (other than cities)	151
Laboratories	110
Legendary characters (Individual)[18]	100
Libraries	110
Library districts	110
Markets	110
Military installations (active; also all after 1899)	151
Mining districts	151
Monasteries	110
Morgues	110
Mosques	110
Motels	110
Motion pictures	130
Museums	110
Mythological figures (Individual)[24]	100

H 405 Establishing Certain Entities in the Name or Subject Authority File

GROUP ONE - NAME AUTHORITY GROUP HEADINGS

Category	*MARC tag*
Night clubs	110
Nursing homes	110
Observatories	110
Old age homes	110
Opera companies	110
Orphanages	110
Parades	111
Park districts	151
Parks (Administrative agencies)[7]	110
Planetariums	110
Planned communities	151
Plans (Programs)	110
Poorhouses	110
Port authorities	110
Prisons	110
Projects, plans, etc.	110
Public celebrations, pageants, anniversaries	111
Publishers' imprints	110
Pueblos	151
Races (Contests)	111
Radio programs	130
Railroads	110
Recreation districts	151
Refugee camps	110
Religious denominations	110
Research stations	110
Reserves (Administrative agencies)[6]	110
Research parks	110[22]
Restaurants	110
Sanatoriums	110
Sanitation districts	151
Satellites, Artificial	110
School districts	110

GROUP ONE - NAME AUTHORITY GROUP HEADINGS

Category	*MARC tag*
Schools	110
Service stations	110
Ships	110
Shipyards	110
Shopping centers	110
Shows (Exhibitions)	111
Software, Computer	130[8]
Sound recording labels	110
Space vehicles	110
Sporting events	111
Stock exchanges	110
Stores, Retail	110
Studies (Research projects)	110
Synagogues	110
Telescopes	110
Television programs	130
Temples (in use; excludes temples in ruins)	110
Theater companies	110
Tournaments	111
Tribes (as legal entities only; U.S. only)	151
Truck stops	110
Undertakers	110
Universities	110
Utility districts	151
Water districts	151
Web sites	130
Works of art, Individual	100, 110, 130
Zoological gardens	110

H 405 Establishing Certain Entities in the Name or Subject Authority File

GROUP TWO - SUBJECT AUTHORITY GROUP HEADINGS: Named entities always established according to subject cataloging conventions with authority records that reside in either the name authority file or the subject authority file.

Category	*MARC tag*
Amusement parks	151
Apartment houses	110
Aqueducts	151
Arches	150
Arenas	110
Artists' groups[9]	150
Asian conglomorate corporations	110
Astronomical features (asteroids, comets, galaxies, planets, etc.)	151
Auditoriums	110
Awards	150
Bathhouses	110
Baths, Ancient	110
Bridges	151
Building details	150[10]
Buildings, Private	110
Buildings occupied by corporate bodies[11]	110
Bus terminals	110
Camps	151
Canals	151
Capitols	110
Castles	110
Celestial bodies	151
Cemetery sites, Archaeological[12]	151
Cities, Extinct (Pre-1500)	151
City halls	110
Civic centers	110
Clans	100
Club houses	110

GROUP TWO - SUBJECT AUTHORITY GROUP HEADINGS

Category	*MARC tag*
Coliseums	110
Collections, Public or Private	110
Collective farms	151
Community centers	110
Computer languages	150
Computer networks	150
Computer systems	150
Convention centers	110
Courthouses	110
Customhouses	110
Details, Building	150
Docks	151
Doors	150
Dwellings	110
Estates	151
Events[13]	150
Exhibition buildings	110
Expeditions, Military[14]	150
Fairgrounds	151
Families	100
Farms	151
Feasts	150
Ferry buildings	110
Fictitious characters (Groups)[19]	150
Fire stations	110
Forests (Geographic entities)[15]	151
Fortresses (Structures)	151
Fountains	150
Gardens	151
Gates	150
Gods (Groups)[25]	150
Golf courses	151
Grain elevators	110
Gymnasiums	110

GROUP TWO - SUBJECT AUTHORITY GROUP HEADINGS

Category	*MARC tag*
Hazardous waste sites	151
Highways	151
Historic sites (including historic districts not in cities)	151
Immigration stations	110
Islands, Nonjurisdictional	151
Land grants	151
Legendary characters (Groups)[20]	150
Lighthouses	110
Locks (Hydraulic engineering)	151
Locomotives	150
Manors	110
Mansions	110
Market buildings	110
Military installations (inactive pre-1900 installations)	151
Mine buildings	110
Mines	151
Mints	110
Monuments (Structures, statues, etc.)	150
Music halls	110
Mythological figures (Groups)[26]	150
Office buildings	110
Opera houses	110
Palaces	110
Parks (Geographic entities)[16]	151
Pavilions	110
Pipelines	151
Playgrounds	151
Plazas (Open spaces, squares, etc.)	151
Police stations	110
Pools, Public	110
Ports (Physical facilities)	151

GROUP TWO - SUBJECT AUTHORITY GROUP HEADINGS

Category	*MARC tag*
Post offices	110
Posthouses	110
Power plants	110
Presidential mansions	110
Public comfort stations	110
Racetracks	110
Railway stations	110
Ranches	151
Ranger stations	110
Recreation areas	151
Remote-controlled vehicles	150
Reservations, Indian	151
Reserves (Parks, forests, etc.)	151
Resorts	110
Roads	151
Rooms	150
Sanitary landfills	151
Satellites (i.e., moons)	151
Schools of artists	150
Shrines (*not* churches)	150
Spas	110
Sports arenas	110
Sports facilities	110
Stadiums	110
Stagecoach stations	110
Streets	151
Structures (Non-geographic, for example, towers)	150
Temples (In ruins)	110
Terminal buildings	110
Theater buildings	110
Theme parks	151

H 405 Establishing Certain Entities in the Name or Subject Authority File

GROUP TWO - SUBJECT AUTHORITY GROUP HEADINGS

Category	*MARC tag*
Tombs	150
Towers	150
Trails	151
Tribes (Ethnic groups)	150
Tunnels	151
Villas	110
Walls	150, 151[21]
Waterways	151
Wells	151

NOTES

[1]Headings in this category are for named cemeteries as corporate bodies. Headings for cemeteries that are archaeological sites include the term **Site** in the heading and are Group 2, established as subject headings, tagged 151, and qualified according to subject cataloging conventions.

[2]This category includes historic districts and special economic zones in cities.

[3]Although headings in this category are generally established under title and tagged 130, those that are established under personal or corporate names are tagged 100 or 110.

[4]Events that are formally convened, directed toward a common goal, capable of being reconvened, and that have a formal name. See H 1592 for a list of types of events to be established in the name authority file.

[5]Headings in this category are military expeditions that are not campaigns, battles, sieges, etc. Military expeditions that are campaigns, battles, sieges, etc., are Group 2 and established as subject headings tagged 150.

[6]Headings in this category are always qualified by the term **(Agency)**. Headings for forests as geographic entities are in Group 2, established as subject headings, tagged 151, and qualified according to subject cataloging conventions.

[7]Headings in this category are always qualified by the term **(Agency)**. Headings for parks as geographic entities are in Group 2, established as subject headings, tagged 151, and qualified according to subject cataloging conventions.

[8]Although headings in this category are generally established under title and tagged 130, those that are established under personal or corporate names are tagged 100 or 110.

[9]Headings in this category include artists' groups that are often informally organized, may not be self-named, and do not play a role in collectively promoting and marketing their work. Headings for artists' groups that are self-identified by a particular name and function as a business firm in creating, publishing, promoting, and marketing their works are established as corporate entities according to descriptive cataloging conventions.

[10]Although headings in this category are generally tagged 150, headings that belong to a different category on this list may be tagged 110 (e.g., Auditoriums).

[11]This category consists of buildings known by different names from the corporate bodies that occupy them. For buildings that are known by the same name as the bodies that occupy them, see H 1334, *Background* statement.

[12]Headings in this category include the term **Site** in the heading and are qualified according to subject cataloging conventions. Headings for named cemeteries as corporate bodies are in Group 1, established as name headings, tagged 110.

[13]Events that generally cannot be repeated and have no formal name but are commonly referred to by generic terms only. See H 1592 for a list of types of events to be established in the subject authority file.

[14]Headings in this category are military expeditions that are campaigns, battles, sieges, etc. Military expeditions that are not campaigns, battles, sieges, etc., are Group 1, established according to descriptive cataloging conventions, and tagged 111.

[15]Headings in this category are qualified according to subject cataloging conventions. Headings for forests as corporate bodies are in Group 1, established as name headings, tagged 110, and qualified by the term **(Agency)**.

[16]Headings in this category are qualified according to subject cataloging conventions. Headings for parks as corporate bodies are in Group 1, established as name headings, tagged 110, and qualified by the term **(Agency)**.

[17]Headings in this category are for individual fictitious characters. Headings for groups of fictitious characters are established as subject headings, tagged 150, and qualified by **(Fictitious characters)**.

[18]Headings in this category are for individual legendary characters. Headings for groups of legendary characters are established as subject headings, tagged 150, and qualified by **(Legendary characters)**.

[19]Headings in this category are for groups of fictitious characters and are qualified by **(Fictitious characters)**. Headings for individual fictitious characters are in Group 1, established as name headings, and tagged 100.

[20]Headings in this category are for groups of legendary characters and are qualified by **(Legendary characters)**. Headings for individual legendary characters are in Group 1, established as name headings, and tagged 100.

[21]Walls that were built as military installations (e.g., the Great Wall of China, Hadrian's Wall, individual city walls) are tagged 151. All other walls are tagged 150.

[22]Headings in this category are for areas of land that are devoted to institutions carrying out academic or industrial research. Geographic headings for parks intended for recreation, conservation, etc., are Group 2.

[23]Headings in this category are for individual gods. Headings for groups of gods are established as subject headings, tagged 150, and qualified by **(… deities)**.

[24]Headings in this category are for individual mythological figures. Headings for groups of mythological figures are established as subject headings, tagged 150, and qualified by **(… mythology)**.

[25]Headings in this category are for groups of gods and are qualified by **(… dieties)**. Headings for individual gods are in Group 1, established as name headings, and tagged 100.

[26]Headings in this category are for groups of mythological figures and are qualified by **(… mythology)**. Headings for individual mythological figures are in Group 1, established as name headings, and tagged 100.

Name Headings as Subjects H 430

***BACKGROUND**: Most RDA and AACR2 name headings are usable not only as main or added entries, but also as subject headings. There are some situations, however, where a valid name heading may not be assigned as a subject heading because there are overriding subject cataloging policies. Catalogers are responsible for being aware of, and being able to identify, those situations where a name heading is inappropriate for subject use. They are also responsible, in situations where a name heading **is** appropriate and required for use as a subject heading or subdivision, for determining that it is a currently valid RDA or AACR2 heading. Information regarding the current status of a name heading is available in the name authority record for that heading. This instruction sheet describes the techniques for determining whether a required name heading is authorized for use in RDA cataloging, and illustrates how to interpret the data found in displays of name authority records.*

1. Name headings used by descriptive catalogers. If a required name heading appears in the bibliographic record for a work being cataloged, either as the main entry or as an added entry, it may be assumed that it is a valid AACR2 or RDA heading. Use such headings as subject headings without further searching.

2. Searching name headings in the LC Database. If a name heading is required for use as a subject heading and does not appear in the bibliographic record or has not been provided by the descriptive cataloger, search the LC Database to determine whether it has been established and whether it is currently valid. If the required name heading is not found, establish it or request a descriptive cataloger to do so.

3. Determining whether a heading found in the LC Database may be assigned as a subject heading. In order to determine whether a heading found in the LC Database is valid for subject use, examine the heading and its authority record to determine whether it meets all of the following criteria:

- ***RDA and AACR2 coding.*** The heading must be coded as conforming to either RDA or AACR2. Authorized RDA headings are indicated by the presence of the value **z** in field 008/10. Authorized AACR2 headings are indicated by the presence of the value **c** in field 008/10.

3. Determining whether a heading found in the LC Database may be assigned as a subject heading.

- ***RDA and AACR2 coding.*** *(Continued)*

  *Note: In the LC ILS, field 008/10 corresponds with the box labeled **Descriptive cataloging rules** on the 008 input screen. To display this screen, click the 008 button on the authority record display. To return to the authority record display from the 008 input screen, click **Cancel**. When examining the 008 input screen, subject catalogers should take care not to inadvertently change any of the values that have been set. Clicking **Cancel** instead of **OK** to exit the screen ensures that any changes that may have accidentally been made are not saved.*

If the heading is not coded AACR2 or RDA, upgrade the heading to RDA form, or request a descriptive cataloger to do so.

- ***Subject heading usage coding.*** The value **a** must appear in field 008/15, indicating that the heading is valid for use as a subject .

  *Note: In the LC ILS the value **a** in field 008/15 corresponds with **a : Appropriate** beside the box labeled **Heading use-subject added entry (008/15)** on the 008 input screen. To display this screen, click the 008 button on the authority record display. To return to the authority record display from the 008 input screen, click **Cancel**.*

If the value **b** is present in field 008/15, there is normally a 667 **SUBJECT USAGE** field in the record describing what heading should be used instead (see illustration #2). If this field is not present, refer the matter to the Policy and Standards Division.

*Note: The value **b** in field 008/15 corresponds with **b : Not appropriate** beside the box labeled **Heading use-subject added entry (008/15)** on the 008 input screen. To display this screen, click the 008 button on the authority record display. To return to the authority record display from the 008 input screen, click **Cancel**.*

3. Determining whether a heading found in the LC Database may be assigned as a subject heading.

- ***RDA and AACR2 coding.*** *(Continued)*

  *All newly created name authority records are automatically assigned value **a** in field 008/15. The value is changed to **b** only when a proposal has been made and approved to have a 667 **SUBJECT USAGE** note added to the record to explicitly prohibit use of the heading as a subject (cf. H 432). Thus the presence of the value **a** in field 008/15 means only that no conscious decision has been made that the heading is inappropriate for use as a subject, and does not in itself mean that the heading **is** appropriate without regard to the other criteria listed in this section.*

- ***Name headings that conflict with subject cataloging policies.*** Use of the heading must not conflict with any established policies for the assignment of name headings as subjects or the construction of topical subject headings.

  Example #1: Even though the heading **California. Governor (1967-1975 : Reagan)** meets all other criteria for subject usage, it may still not be assigned as a subject heading, because it is subject cataloging policy to assign the personal name form, i.e., **Reagan, Ronald**, rather than the corporate form when assigning names of government officials as subjects.

  Example #2: Even though there is an authority record in the name authority file for the heading **Twain, Mark, 1835-1910. Adventures of Tom Sawyer. Ukrainian**, it may not be assigned in that form because it is subject cataloging policy to omit elements such as language when assigning uniform titles as subject headings to commentaries (cf. H 1435).

  Example #3: Even though the authority record for **Rampling, Anne, 1941-** meets the criteria for subject usage, it may not be assigned as a subject heading because it is subject cataloging policy for literary authors who write under various names and have more than one name heading to use the heading that serves as the "base heading" for the author, that is, the heading having the complete set of references for the author. In this case, that heading is **Rice, Ann, 1941-**.

3. Determining whether a heading found in the LC Database may be assigned as a subject heading.

- ***Name headings that conflict with subject cataloging policies.*** *(Continued)*

> *Example #4:* Many headings that represent the earlier names of current jurisdictions have **a : Appropriate** in the **Heading use-subject added entry** box on 008 input screen of the authority record. Such headings may not, however, be assigned as subject headings because it is subject cataloging policy to assign only the latest name of a jurisdiction. When a heading of this type is encountered, a proposal should be submitted, in accordance with H 708, to add a 667 field to its authority record. When the proposal is approved, the value is changed to **b : Not appropriate**.

If use of any heading would violate standard subject cataloging policy, follow the policy and do not use the heading.

Subdividing Corporate Name Headings by Place H 475

***BACKGROUND**: It is customary to divide by place certain categories of corporate name headings, primarily names of religions or religious orders, when they are assigned as subject headings. This authorization appears as the value **i** in field 008/06 (the box labeled **Direct/indirect geographic subdivision** on the 008 input screen in the LC ILS). This instruction sheet defines the types of corporate body headings that are appropriate for geographic subdivision and describes the procedures to determine whether a corporate body name has already been authorized for geographic subdivision or to add this authorization to an existing heading.*

1. Types of corporate body headings that may be divided by place. Geographic subdivision of a corporate body heading is used only to bring out the actual physical presence of the corporate body or its individual members in the place indicated by the geographic subdivision. Although this technique is used most frequently for religions and religious orders, there are occasionally other headings for which it is appropriate. *Examples:*

```
610 20 $a Catholic Church $z United States.
610 20 $a Jesuits $z France.
610 20 $a Peace Corps (U.S.) $z Ghana.
610 20 $a International Labour Organisation $z Switzerland.
```

LC practice:

2. Searching the LC Database. To determine whether geographic subdivision has already been authorized for a particular corporate body heading, retrieve the name authority record for the heading in the LC Database. If the code **i** appears in field 008/06, the heading may be divided geographically.

3. Proposals to divide corporate name headings geographically. If a new or existing heading has not been authorized to be divided by place and it is necessary to do so to catalog a current work, set the 008/06 data element in the name authority record to **i**.

> *Note: An automated validation program reports on a daily basis new name headings where the 008/06 has been set to **i** or existing name headings where the 008/06 has been changed to **i**. These reports are sent to the Policy and Standards Division for review. PSD either approves the 008/06 setting or, if the setting is not appropriate, changes it back to the default setting of **n** and notifies the individual who created or changed the record.*

12. Examples. *(Continued)*

```
151 ## $a Forth, Firth of (Scotland)
451 ## $a Bodotria (Scotland)
451 ## $a Firth of Forth (Scotland)
451 ## $a Forth Estuary (Scotland)
451 ## $a Forth, River, Estuary (Scotland)
550 ## $w g $a Estuaries $z Scotland
```

```
151 ## $a Fuji, Mount (Japan)
451 ## $a Fuji-san (Japan)
451 ## $a Fuji-yama (Japan)
451 ## $a Fujiyama (Japan)
451 ## $a Mount Fuji (Japan)
451 ## $a Suji Mountain (Japan)
550 ## $w g $a Mountains $z Japan
550 ## $w g $a Volcanoes $z Japan
```

```
151 ## $a Peipus, Lake (Estonia and Russia)
451 ## $a Chudskoe ozero (Estonia and Russia)
451 ## $a Chudskoye ozero (Estonia and Russia)
451 ## $a Lake Peipus (Estonia and Russia)
451 ## $a Peipsi järv (Estonia and Russia)
550 ## $w g $a Lakes $z Estonia
550 ## $w g $a Lakes $z Russia (Federation)
```

```
151 ## $a Rio de la Plata (Argentina and Uruguay)
451 ## $a Plate River (Argentina and Uruguay)
451 ## $a Plata, Rio de la (Argentina and Uruguay)
550 ## $w g $a Estuaries $z Argentina
550 ## $w g $a Estuaries $z Uruguay
```

```
151 ## $a Suiattle River (Wash.)
451 ## $a Miner's Creek (Snohomish County and Skagit County, Wash.)
550 ## $w g $a Rivers $z Washington (State)
```

12. Examples. *(Continued)*

```
151 ## $a Saint Gotthard Pass (Switzerland)
451 ## $a Gotthard Pass (Switzerland)
451 ## $a Pass of Saint Gotthard (Switzerland)
451 ## $a Passo del San Gottardo (Switzerland)
451 ## $a Saint Gothard Pass (Switzerland)
451 ## $a Sankt Gotthardpass (Switzerland)
451 ## $a St. Gotthard Pass (Switzerland)
550 ## $w g $a Mountain passes $z Switzerland
```

```
151 ## $a Sound, The (Denmark and Sweden)
451 ## $a Øresund (Denmark and Sweden)
451 ## $a Sundet (Denmark and Sweden)
451 ## $a The Sound (Denmark and Sweden)
550 ## $w g $a Sounds (Geomorphology) $z Denmark
550 ## $w g $a Sounds (Geomorphology) $z Sweden
```

```
151 ## $a Wye, River (Wales and England)
451 ## $a River Wye (Wales and England)
550 ## $w g $a Rivers $z England
550 ## $w g $a Rivers $z Wales
```

```
151 ## $a Yellow River (China)
451 ## $a Hoang Ho (China)
451 ## $a Huang He (China)
451 ## $a Huang Ho (China)
451 ## $a Hwang Ho (China)
550 ## $w g $a Rivers $z China
```

Linear Jurisdictional Name Changes in Name Authority Records H 708

***BACKGROUND**: It is subject cataloging policy to assign as a subject heading or as a geographic subdivision, only the latest name of a political jurisdiction that has had one or more earlier names, as long as the territorial identity remains essentially unchanged. For example, although both **Ceylon** and **Sri Lanka** are valid as name headings, only **Sri Lanka** is used in subject cataloging. When a particular heading for a jurisdiction is not valid for use as a subject heading because a later name is used, a statement to that effect should appear in a 667 field in the name authority record for the earlier heading. The 667 field is labeled **SUBJECT USAGE**. Example:*

```
151 #0 $a Ceylon
667 ## $a SUBJECT USAGE: This heading is not valid for use as a
          subject. Works about this place are entered under Sri
          Lanka.
```

1. Searching the name authority file. When in doubt as to whether a given geographic name heading is valid for use as a subject heading, first search the LC Database to determine whether a decision has already been made and recorded in a 667 **SUBJECT USAGE** field. If this field is found in the authority record for the heading in question, follow the instructions as presented in the record.

2. Adding usage decisions to name authority records. Add a 667 **SUBJECT USAGE** field to new and existing geographic name headings for former names of political jurisdictions. For instructions the use of former names of political jurisdictions as subject headings, see H 708 and H 710.

Extinct Cities H 715

***BACKGROUND**: Because ancient or medieval cities that went out of existence before the creation of modern states seldom produced official publications of their own, headings for these cities are only rarely assigned as descriptive access points. Therefore headings for all cities that ceased to exist before 1500 are established in the subject authority file, except for those that are established at the request of a descriptive cataloger for use as a main or added entry. The authority records for the latter reside in the name authority file (cf. H 405). Until 1991 these headings were established with the qualifier **(Ancient city)** or **(City)** depending on the time of existence. In 1991 both of these qualifiers were replaced by the qualifier **(Extinct city)**. This instruction sheet provides guidelines for establishing extinct cities as subject headings. For guidelines on establishing archaeological sites, see H 1225.*

1. Extinct cities established as subject headings. Generally, establish as a subject heading the name of any city, town, village, etc., that ceased to exist by the year 1500, unless it has already been established as a name heading.

> *Note: Treat cities of the Americas that ceased to exist by 1500 as archaeological sites rather than as early cities, following the provisions of H 1225.*

If it is necessary to assign as a subject heading the name of a city or town that existed beyond 1500, or that still exists, establish it as a name heading or request a descriptive cataloger to do so.

Since extinct cities that are needed as main or added entries are established in the name authority file, before establishing such a heading for subject cataloging purposes, search the name authority file to ascertain whether it already exists as a name heading. Then proceed as follows:

- *If the heading is in the name authority file and is coded AACR2 or RDA,* assign the heading as established.

- *If the heading is in the name authority file but is not coded AACR2 or RDA,* establish it as a subject heading. Notify the Policy and Standards Division of the existence of the invalid heading in the name authority file so that it can be cancelled.

- *If the heading is not in the name authority file,* establish it as a subject heading according to the guidelines presented in this instruction sheet.

H 715 Extinct Cities

2. Early versus modern name. Do not establish or assign as a subject heading the early name of a city if it is clear that the exact original site of the city in question has been continuously occupied until modern times. Instead, apply the general rule for a jurisdiction with name change, using only the latest form of the name established as a name heading. *Examples:*

London (England) [*not* Londinium]
Vienna (Austria) [*not* Vindobona]

Establish an extinct city as a subject heading, however, if a modern village is simply located near or over the extinct city, but has no direct connection with it except the incidental one of proximity.

3. Form of heading. Use the form of the name most commonly applied to the city in standard encyclopedias, gazetteers, etc. Justify this form in 670 fields in the subject authority record. It is not necessary to request the BGN decision.

Generally choose the form of name that is the *most common* ancient form. For example, establish **Larsa**, not **Tall Sankarah**, its modern name.

Add to each name the qualifier **(Extinct city)**.

Do not qualify by the name of the current larger jurisdiction in which the city would be located today unless it is necessary to resolve a conflict. For example, the heading **Soli (Cyprus : Extinct city)** includes **Cyprus** as part of the qualifier because there were two ancient cities named Soli, one in what is now Cyprus and one in what is now Turkey.

Do not add the word **Site** to the heading for the city.

4. References. Make the following references when establishing the heading:

```
451 #0 $a [alternate early name(s)] (Extinct city)
451 #0 $a [alternate modern name(s)] ([modern country])
550 #0 $w g $a Extinct cities $z [modern country]
551 #0 $w g $a [modern country] $x Antiquities
```

Note: For extinct cities in Great Britain the term ***[modern country]*** *in the above model refers to the appropriate constituent country.*

***BACKGROUND**: Before August 1996, headings for city sections were established in either the name authority file or the subject authority file depending upon whether or not they were needed for use as descriptive access points. Since July 1996, headings for city sections, including districts, designated historic districts, special economic zones, quarters, and neighborhoods, are established as geographic headings in the name authority file. Headings for city sections that currently exist in the subject authority file should be transferred to the name authority file as they are needed for use as subject headings in current cataloging. For a discussion of the change in policy on establishing headings for city sections and other ambiguous entities, see the background statement in H 405. This instruction sheet provides instructions on transferring headings for city sections from the subject authority file to the name authority file and guidelines for assigning names of city sections as subject headings.*

For instructions on the sections, boroughs, and counties of New York City, see H 990 sec. 4.

***1. General rule**.* Search both the name authority file and subject authority file to determine whether a heading for an individual city section, district, quarter, or neighborhood is already established. If a heading for the city section exists in the name authority file in RDA form, assign it as a subject heading. If a heading exists in the subject authority file, transfer the heading to the name authority file, or request a descriptive cataloger to do so. Submit a proposal to delete the subject authority record following the provisions of H 193, sec. 14 and H 193.5. If a heading does not exist in either file, establish the city section in the name authority file or request a descriptive cataloger to do so.

2. Features in cities. Establish headings for features in cities, including plazas, circles, squares, monuments, parks, gardens, and streets in the subject authority file according to the provisions in H 1334 for buildings and other structures, H 1925 for parks and gardens, and H 2098 for streets and roads.

If a city section is named after a city feature, establish a single heading in the subject authority file to be used for both the feature and the city section. In addition to any 451 fields added for variant names, add a 410 field from the name of the city with the feature as a subheading. *Example:*

```
151 ## $a Dupont Circle (Washington, D.C.)
410 1# $a Washington (D.C.). $b Dupont Circle
550 ## $w g $a Traffic circles $z Washington (D.C.)
```

H 720 City Sections

3. City sections and special topics. To works that discuss a special topic in conjunction with a city section, do not use the name of the city section as a geographic subdivision under a topical heading that is authorized for geographic subdivision. Instead, assign headings to bring out the topic in connection with the name of the city itself and an additional heading for the city section. *Example:*

Title: Boston's first neighborhood : the North End.

```
650 #0 $a Minorities $z Massachusetts $z Boston.
651 #0 $a North End (Boston, Mass.)
```

For topics expressed as subdivisions under names of places, including cities and city sections (cf. H 1140), assign headings for both the name of the city and the city section divided by the same subdivision. *Example:*

Title: Chinatown, San Jose, USA.

```
651 #0 $a Chinatown (San Jose, Calif.) $x Social life and
          customs.
651 #0 $a Chinatown (San Jose, Calif.) $x Social conditions.
651 #0 $a San Jose (Calif.) $x Social life and customs.
651 #0 $a San Jose (Calif.) $x Social conditions.
```

2. Islands in geographic subdivision practice.

a. Individual islands. *(Continued)*

If an individual island is part of an island group but is also located near its controlling jurisdiction, divide it through the controlling jurisdiction rather than through the island group. *Example:*

```
    650 #0 $a Plants $z Papua New Guinea $z Bougainville Island.
[not 650 #0 $a Plants $z Solomon Islands $z Bougainville Island.]
```

For special provisions applying to individual Caribbean islands, see sec. 2.c., below.

b. Island groups. As a general rule, follow the same provisions for island groups as for individual islands. Divide an island group that is controlled in its entirety by a single jurisdiction through the controlling jurisdiction or, if the group itself is an autonomous jurisdiction, assign it directly after topics. *Examples:*

```
650 #0 $a Fur trade $z Alaska $z Aleutian Islands.
650 #0 $a Political parties $z Spain $z Balearic Islands.
650 #0 $a Acculturation $z Papua New Guinea $z Admiralty
        Islands.
650 #0 $a Law $z Philippines.
650 #0 $a Prime ministers $z Vanuatu.
650 #0 $a Labor supply $z Kiribati.
```

If the group is located some distance away from its controlling jurisdiction, as described above, assign it directly after topics. *Examples:*

```
650 #0 $a Meteorology $z Falkland Islands.
650 #0 $a Shipwrecks $z Bermuda Islands.
650 #0 $a Mollusks $z Galapagos Islands.
```

2. Islands in geographic subdivision practice.

b. Island groups. *(Continued)*

If an island group is controlled by more than one jurisdiction or comprises in itself more than a single autonomous jurisdiction, assign it directly after topics. *Examples:*

```
650 #0 $a Earthquakes $z West Indies.
650 #0 $a Legends $z Melanesia.
```

c. Islands of the Caribbean. Treat islands of the Caribbean in the same manner as islands in other parts of the world. Assign islands or island groups that are independent countries or equivalents of countries directly. Divide individual islands that are part of a multi-island country or country equivalent indirectly through the appropriate controlling jurisdiction. *Examples:*

```
650 #0 $a Sea birds $z Aruba.
650 #0 $a Hurricanes $z Dominica.
650 #0 $a Nautical charts $z Bahamas $z Eleuthera Island.
650 #0 $a Plants $z British Virgin Islands $z Virgin Gorda
        Island.
650 #0 $a Lawyers $z United States Virgin Islands
        $z Saint John.
650 #0 $a Marine algae $z Bonaire.
650 #0 $a Ethnobotany $z Guadeloupe $z Marie-Galante.
```

Do not divide individual islands through larger geographic groupings, such as **West Indies**; **Leeward Islands (West Indies)**; **Windward Islands (West Indies)**. *Examples:*

```
    650 #0 $a Ethnology $z Grenada.
[not 650 #0 $a Ethnology $z West Indies $z Grenada.]

    650 #0 $a Natural history $z Saint Martin (West Indies)
[not 650 #0 $a Natural history $z West Indies $z Saint Martin.]
```

Qualification of Geographic Headings H 810

***BACKGROUND**: Geographic headings that do not represent potential descriptive access points, including headings for geographic features, regions, parks, etc., are generally established in the subject authority file. Since 1981 the rules used by subject catalogers in formulating these names have been essentially the same as those used for establishing jurisdictional headings, that is, the Anglo-American Cataloguing Rules (and, beginning in 2013, RDA). With the adoption of AACR2, subject cataloging practices were modified to conform with the new rules. The procedures described in this instruction sheet apply only to the choice and form of the qualifiers for geographic headings. For procedures for formulating the substantive portion of these headings, see H 690.*

1. General provisions.

***a. Level of qualification**.*

***(1) General rule**.* Qualify subject headings representing geographic entities by the name of the country or countries in which they are located, except for the following:

Country	*Level of Qualification*
Australia	state
Canada	province
Great Britain	constituent country
Malaysia	state
United States	state

Note: Serbia and Montenegro, the successor of Yugoslavia, is no longer an exception because it split into two separate countries in 2006.

For a list of the political divisions of these five exceptions, and the forms to be used as qualifiers, see pp. 8-11.

*Note: For entities on the continent of Antarctica or within the Antarctic regions, use **(Antarctica)** as the qualifier.*

***(2) Entities in cities**.* Qualify archaeological sites, parks and gardens, streets and roads, and other man-made geographic structures, by the name of the city; qualify natural features by the name of the larger jurisdiction (see sec. 2.c).

***(3) Headings for non-jurisdictional islands**.* See H 807.

H 810 Qualification of Geographic Headings

1. General provisions.

a. Level of qualification. *(Continued)*

(4) Entities on islands. Qualify by the name of the island or larger jurisdiction as described in sec. 2.d.

(5) Names of extinct cities. Use the qualifier **(Extinct city)** (see H 715).

(6) Rivers. See H 800.

(7) Undersea features. Generally do not qualify undersea features in international waters, for example, **East Pacific Rise** or **Aleutian Trench**. If it is necessary to resolve a conflict or remove ambiguity, add the body of water as a qualifier, for example, **Central Slope (Gulf of Mexico)**. For undersea features within territorial limits, qualify by the name of the appropriate jurisdiction, for example, **Old Orchard Shoal (N.Y.)** or **Grand Bahama Bank (Bahamas)**.

b. Latest name. Use, as a geographic qualifier, only the latest form of the name of a jurisdiction, for example, **(Zimbabwe)** [*not* **(Rhodesia, Southern)**].

c. Form of qualifier. Qualify a geographic heading by placing the name of the appropriate jurisdiction(s) within a single set of parentheses after the substantive portion of the heading. *Example:*

```
151 ## $a Hawaii Volcanoes National Park (Hawaii)
```

When using the names of two jurisdictions as a qualifier, place both names within a single set of parentheses, linking them with the word **and**. *Example:*

```
151 ## $a Chesapeake Bay (Md. and Va.)
```

1. General provisions.

c. Form of qualifier. *(Continued)*

When qualifying by the name of a city (or at any level lower than the level specified in sec. 1.a, above), use the established heading for the city or other entity, but reformulate it by placing it within a single set of parentheses, separating the basic name from the name of the larger qualifying jurisdiction with a comma, and omitting any additional information that is part of the established heading. *Examples:*

Form of heading for city: Chicago (Ill.)
Form when used as qualifier: (Chicago, Ill.)

Form of heading for city: Black Creek (Wis. : Village)
Form when used as qualifier: (Black Creek, Wis.)

Form of heading for city: Veracruz (Veracruz-Llave, Mexico)
Form when used as qualifier: (Veracruz, Veracruz-Llave, Mexico)

When the jurisdiction being used as a qualifier is itself qualified by a term designating the nature of the jurisdiction, omit the latter term, and if necessary, reformulate the resulting name in the same manner as described above for cities. *Examples:*

Form of heading for jurisdiction: Washington (State)
Form when used as qualifier: (Wash.)

Form of heading for jurisdiction: Micronesia (Federated States)
Form when used as qualifier: (Micronesia)

Form of heading for jurisdiction: Arequipa (Peru : Dept.)
Form when used as qualifier: (Arequipa, Peru)

Abbreviations. Use the abbreviations listed on pp. 8-11. Do not abbreviate any other place names when using them as qualifiers.

2. Entities wholly within one jurisdiction.

a. General rule. Qualify by the name of the jurisdiction in which the entity is located, formulating the qualifier in accordance with the general provisions above. *Examples:*

```
151 ## $a Columbia Dam (Tenn.)
151 ## $a Great Barrier Reef (Qld.)
151 ## $a Saint Helens, Mount (Wash.)
151 ## $a Taunus (Germany)
```

```
151 ## $a Diamond Mountains (Korea)
```

Note: Use ***Korea*** *to qualify all entities located in Korea, whether in North Korea, South Korea, or both.*

```
151 ## $a Valdai Hills (Russia)
151 ## $a Lake District (England)
151 ## $a Cairngorms (Scotland)
```

b. Conflicts. If there are two or more entities with the same name in the same jurisdiction, formulate a distinctive qualifier according to the following methods:

(1) Entities of the same type. Add to the qualifier the name of the next smaller jurisdiction (county, department, province, etc.). *Examples:*

```
151 ## $a Pelican Lake (Otter Tail County, Minn.)
151 ## $a Pelican Lake (Saint Louis County, Minn.)
```

```
151 ## $a Blackwater River (Essex, England)
151 ## $a Blackwater River (Hampshire and Berkshire,
        England)
```

2. Entities wholly within one jurisdiction.

b. Conflicts.

(1) Entities of the same type. *(Continued)*

Note: Do not differentiate among multiple features of the same type, with the same name, within a single county in the United States, except for features in cities (see sec. 2.c). Include a 667 field to indicate that the heading is not differentiated, using standard phrasing as follows.

```
667 ## $a Undifferentiated geographic heading. Covers all [type
         of feature] named [name of feature] in [county].
```

Example:

```
151 ## $a Lookout Mountain (Whatcom County, Wash.)
667 ## $a Undifferentiated geographic heading.  Covers
          all mountains named Lookout Mountain in Whatcom
          County, Wash.
```

(2) Entities of different types. Add to the qualifier a generic term, in English, designating the type of entity. Separate this term from the geographic term within the qualifier by a space, a colon, and another space. *Example:*

```
151 ## $a Cold Lake (Alta. : Lake)
```

*[This designation is necessary because there is also a city in Alberta with the name Cold Lake, for which the heading is **Cold Lake (Alta.)**]*

Note: Provide information about such conflicts in 670 fields in order to justify the addition of extra names or terms in qualifiers.

2. Entities wholly within one jurisdiction. *(Continued)*

c. Entities in cities.

Note: Do not use names of townships in the United States as qualifiers. Instead, qualify by the specific city, town, village, etc., within the township.

(1) Parks and gardens. Qualify by the name of the city, formulating the qualifier according to the general provisions above. *Example:*

```
151 ## $a Central Park (New York, N.Y.)
151 ## $a Jardin du Luxembourg (Paris, France)
```

(2) Streets and roads, and other man-made geographic structures. Qualify by the name of the city. See H 2098, sec. 2.b.

(3) Archaeological sites. Qualify by the name of the city.

(4) Natural features. Do not qualify lakes, hills, etc. within cities by the name of the city except to resolve conflicts. Qualify by the name of the larger jurisdiction, in accordance with the general rule for qualification of entities wholly within a single jurisdiction.

(5) Buildings and structures. See H 1334.

d. Entities on islands.

(1) Islands established as name headings without qualifiers. Qualify the entity on the island by the name of the island as established.

Island	*Entity on the Island*
Taiwan	Tan-shui River (Taiwan)
Greenland	Disko Bay (Greenland)

2. Entities wholly within one jurisdiction.

d. Entities on islands. *(Continued)*

(2) Islands established as name or subject headings with qualifiers for larger jurisdictions. Qualify the entity on the island by the name of the larger jurisdiction, not by the island name.

Island	*Entity on the Island*
Sicily (Italy)	Etna, Mount (Italy)
Crete (Greece)	Kommos Site (Greece)

Exception: Use the specific island name when necessary to resolve conflicts. *Example:*

```
151 ## $a Kailua Bay (Oahu, Hawaii)
151 ## $a Kailua Bay (Hawaii Island, Hawaii)
```

(3) Entities on islands that comprise more than one jurisdiction. Qualify the entity on the island by the name of the jurisdiction in which the entity is located. For example, use the qualifier **(Haiti)** rather than **(Hispaniola)** for an entity in Haiti.

3. Entities in two jurisdictions. Qualify by the names of both jurisdictions in which the entity is located, formulating the qualifier in accordance with the general provisions above.

As a general rule, put the names of the two jurisdictions in alphabetical order. However, if the entity is located primarily in one of the two, put the name of that jurisdiction first. For special provisions applicable to the qualification of rivers in two jurisdictions, see H 800.

Examples:

```
151 ## $a Somport Pass (France and Spain)
151 ## $a Chesapeake Bay (Md. and Va.)
151 ## $a Bull Shoals Lake (Ark. and Mo.)
151 ## $a White Mountains (N.H. and Me.)
```

4. Entities in more than two jurisdictions. Use no qualifier unless it is necessary to distinguish between two entities by the same name or to clarify an ambiguous term. *Examples:*

```
151 ## $a Euphrates River
151 ## $a Middle East
151 ## $a Mediterranean Sea
151 ## $a Atlas Mountains
151 ## $a Southern States
151 ## $a Hudson Bay
151 ## $a Great Dividing Range
151 ## $a West (U.S.)
```

Qualification of such entities to resolve conflicts occurs most frequently with rivers. For special provisions applicable to this situation, see H 800.

International bodies of water. Do not qualify bodies of water touching two or more countries and open to the sea except to resolve a conflict. In accordance with this rule, headings such as **English Channel** and **Bering Sea** are established without qualifiers.

Apply the standard provisions for geographic qualification, as presented in this instruction sheet and in H 800, to inland bodies of water such as lakes and rivers (associated watersheds, estuaries, etc.), as well as for bodies of water touching two or more jurisdictions below the country level.

First Order Political Divisions of the Exceptional Countries

First Order Division	*Form in Qualifier*
Australia	
Australian Capital Territory	(A.C.T.)
New South Wales	(N.S.W.)
Northern Territory	(N.T.)
Queensland	(Qld.)
South Australia	(S.A.)
Tasmania	(Tas.)
Victoria	(Vic.)
Western Australia	(W.A.)
Canada	
Alberta	(Alta.)
British Columbia	(B.C.)
Manitoba	(Man.)
New Brunswick	(N.B.)
Newfoundland and Labrador	(N.L.)
Northwest Territories	(N.W.T.)
Nova Scotia	(N.S.)
Nunavut	(Nunavut)
Ontario	(Ont.)
Prince Edward Island	(P.E.I.)
Québec (Province)	(Québec)
Saskatchewan	(Sask.)
Yukon	(Yukon)
Great Britain	
England	(England)
Northern Ireland	(Northern Ireland)
Scotland	(Scotland)
Wales	(Wales)

H 810 Qualification of Geographic Headings

First Order Political Divisions of the Exceptional Countries

First Order Division	*Form in Qualifier*
Malaysia	
Johor	(Johor, Malaysia)
Kedah	(Kedah, Malaysia)
Kelantan	(Kelantan, Malaysia)
Kuala Lumpur (Malaysia)	(Kuala Lumpur, Malaysia)
Labuan, Federal Territory of	(Labuan, Malaysia)
Malacca (State)	(Malacca, Malaysia)
Negeri Sembilan	(Negeri Sembilan, Malaysia)
Pahang	(Pahang, Malaysia)
Perak	(Perak, Malaysia)
Perlis	(Perlis, Malaysia)
Pinang	(Pinang, Malaysia)
Putrajaya	(Putrajaya, Malaysia)
Sabah	(Sabah, Malaysia)
Sarawak	(Sarawak, Malaysia)
Selangor	(Selangor, Malaysia)
Terengganu	(Terengganu, Malaysia)
United States	
Alabama	(Ala.)
Alaska	(Alaska)
Arizona	(Ariz.)
Arkansas	(Ark.)
California	(Calif.)
Colorado	(Colo.)
Connecticut	(Conn.)
Delaware	(Del.)
Florida	(Fla.)
Georgia	(Ga.)
Hawaii	(Hawaii)
Idaho	(Idaho)

First Order Political Divisions of the Exceptional Countries

First Order Division	*Form in Qualifier*
United States *(Continued)*	
Illinois	(Ill.)
Indiana	(Ind.)
Iowa	(Iowa)
Kansas	(Kan.)
Kentucky	(Ky.)
Louisiana	(La.)
Maine	(Me.)
Maryland	(Md.)
Massachusetts	(Mass.)
Michigan	(Mich.)
Minnesota	(Minn.)
Mississippi	(Miss.)
Missouri	(Mo.)
Montana	(Mont.)
Nebraska	(Neb.)
Nevada	(Nev.)
New Hampshire	(N.H.)
New Jersey	(N.J.)
New Mexico	(N.M.)
New York (State)	(N.Y.)
North Carolina	(N.C.)
North Dakota	(N.D.)
Ohio	(Ohio)
Oklahoma	(Okla.)
Oregon	(Or.)
Pennsylvania	(Pa.)
Rhode Island	(R.I.)
South Carolina	(S.C.)
South Dakota	(S.D.)
Tennessee	(Tenn.)
Texas	(Tex.)
Utah	(Utah)

First Order Political Divisions of the Exceptional Countries

First Order Division	*Form in Qualifier*
United States *(Continued)*	
Vermont	(Vt.)
Virginia	(Va.)
Washington (State)	(Wash.)
West Virginia	(W. Va.)
Wisconsin	(Wis.)
Wyoming	(Wyo.)

Other Jurisdictions That Are Abbreviated When Used as Qualifiers

Jurisdiction	*Form in Qualifier*
New Zealand	(N.Z.)
Puerto Rico	(P.R.)
United States	(U.S.)

Note: Until 2013, the British Virgin Islands and United States Virgin Islands were both abbreviated ***(V.I.)****. The full name is now used in qualifiers, i.e.,* ***(British Virgin Islands)****;* ***(United States Virgin Islands)****.*

Geographic Subdivision H 830

***BACKGROUND**: The term **(May Subd Geog)**, generated by the presence of the value **i** in field 008/06 in the subject authority record (the box labeled **Indirect/direct geographic subdivision** on the 008 input screen in the LC ILS), appears after many subject headings in **Library of Congress Subject Headings** to indicate that the heading may be subdivided geographically according to the rules and conventions provided in this instruction sheet. However, in the past, some phrase headings were established in the form **[topic] in [place]**, and geographic aspects of those topics were brought out by that method rather than by geographic subdivision. In 1981, that practice was discontinued, and headings of that type were converted to the form **[topic] (May Subd Geog)**. For example, **Slavery in Africa, [Brazil, Jamaica, etc.]** was converted to **Slavery (May Subd Geog)**.*

Geographic subdivisions appear in the MARC record as $z subfields of 6XX fields. In many cases, the name of a larger geographic entity is placed in one $z subfield followed by the name of a more specific locality in a second $z subfield, as in the heading

```
650 #0 $a Taxation $z California $z San Francisco
```

*This technique is sometimes described as assigning the place name **indirectly**, or **indirect subdivision**. In other cases, the geographic subdivision is assigned in a single $z subfield without interposing another $z subfield containing the name of a larger geographic entity, as in the heading*

```
650 #0 $a Taxation $z Washington (D.C.)
```

*This technique is sometimes described as assigning the place name **directly**, or **direct subdivision**. Prior to 1976, certain subject headings were designated as always being divided directly and others were designated as always being divided indirectly. In November 1976 this mixed practice was discontinued in favor of a standard system that applies to all subject headings that are authorized to be divided geographically.*

*The current practice evolved especially during the years 1974-1979 as follows: In 1975, it was decided that all newly created headings would be divided indirectly with the exception of legal headings and those headings established with a geographic qualifier equivalent to the name of a country, for example, **Art, French**. In 1976, it was decided to begin assigning indirectly the name of any region now wholly within a modern country, regardless of its past history, for example, assigning **Tuscany** indirectly through **Italy**. In 1976, after comments were invited from other libraries and an overwhelmingly favorable response was received, many anomalies in indirect subdivision practice, including the treatment of the first order divisions of Australia, Austria, France, Germany, Italy, and the Netherlands, were eliminated, and the former Soviet Union was added as a fourth country to receive special treatment in indirect subdivision*

***BACKGROUND**: (Continued)*

*practice in addition to Canada, Great Britain, and the United States. (With the dissolution of the Soviet Union in 1992, the list of countries receiving special treatment was reduced again to three.) Simultaneously, subject catalogers were instructed to begin dividing all subject headings indirectly, regardless of the coding of the headings in the then-current 8th edition of LCSH. In 1979, a computer program was run against the database that generates **Library of Congress Subject Headings** to change all headings coded **(Direct)** to **(Indirect)** to prepare for the publication of the 9th edition. When AACR2 came into effect in 1981, changes prescribed in the rules for qualification of certain headings, such as place names in England, Malaysia, etc., had no effect on indirect local subdivision practice. When the subject authority file was converted to the USMARC format in 1985, the notation **(May Subd Geog)** replaced the notation **(Indirect)**. This notation first appeared in LCSH in the 11th edition, published in 1988.*

No attempt has ever been made to update the Library of Congress bibliographic database systematically in order to eliminate instances of subject headings having been divided according to previous rules during the years before 1976. Bibliographic records are updated only on an individual basis if the subject headings are being reviewed for other reasons, for example, when a new heading is being assigned to an existing record, or a geographic name is being updated to RDA form.

In February 1999 the Library of Congress implemented the 781 field for recording the geographic subdivision form of geographic headings in authority records for geographic names. For instructions on including this field in new subject authority records, see H 836. For instructions on adding this field to existing name authority records for geographic headings, see H 835. For instructions on adding this field to existing subject authority records, see H 836.

1. General provision. When a heading is coded **(May Subd Geog)**, subdivide it directly by names of continents, regions larger than countries, countries, the provinces of Canada, the constituent countries of Great Britain, or the states of the United States. As a general rule, subdivide to subordinate localities located wholly within a country by interposing the name of the relevant country between the heading and the name of the subordinate locality. Subordinate localities include:

- subordinate political jurisdictions, such as provinces, districts, counties, cities, etc.
- historic kingdoms, principalities, etc.
- geographic features and regions, such as mountain ranges, bodies of water, lake regions, watersheds, metropolitan areas, etc.
- islands situated within the territorial limits of the country in question

6. Deletion of qualifiers.

Examples: (Continued)

Heading: Dayr Yāsīn (Palestine)
Subdivision usage: `650 #0 $a Israel-Arab War, 1948-1949 $z Israel $z Dayr Yāsīn (Palestine)`

Heading: Sibirskiĭ kraĭ (R.S.F.S.R.) *[a jurisdiction that existed only during the period of the Soviet Union]*
Subdivision usage: `650 #0 $a Minorities $z Russia (Federation) $z Sibirskiĭ kraĭ (R.S.F.S.R.)`

7. Headings that include the name of a place. Some subject headings include the name of a place as part of the heading, or are qualified by the adjectival form of a place name, for example, **Indians of Mexico**; **Coins, Greek**. Divide these headings in the normal manner to bring out places other than the one named in the heading. *Examples:*

```
650 #0 $a Coins, Greek $z United States.
650 #0 $a Coins, Greek $z France $z Paris.
```

Divide by the place named in the heading only if it is necessary to bring out a locality within that place as a further subdivision. *Examples:*

```
650 #0 $a Indians of Mexico $z Mexico $z Jalisco.
650 #0 $a Coins, Greek $z Greece $z Athens.
```

[*not* `650 #0 $a Indians of Mexico $z Mexico.`
`650 #0 $a Coins, Greek $z Greece.`]

8. Celestial bodies. Do not use names of celestial bodies as geographic subdivisions except where they are authorized as such in the subject authority file, for example, **Artificial satellites–Jupiter (Planet)**. To bring out a topic in connection with a celestial body, use established phrase headings or topical subdivisions under the name of the body. *Examples:*

```
    650 #0 $a Lunar petrology.
[not 650 #0 $a Rocks $z Moon.]

    651 #0 $a Mars (Planet) $x Geology.
[not 650 #0 $a Geology $z Mars (Planet)]
```

9. Ecclesiastical entities that are also names of places. Under RDA, individual ecclesiastical entities, such as dioceses, provinces, synods, etc., are established as corporate bodies. They are usually established as subheadings under the name of the main religious body, for example, **Catholic Church. Diocese of Basel (Switzerland)**, but some may be established directly, for example, **Constantinople (Ecumenical patriarchate)**. Do not treat such headings as geographic entities in subject heading practice. Do not use them as subdivisions, and do not subdivide them by subdivisions used under geographic headings. If it is necessary to designate a topical subject in conjunction with an ecclesiastical entity, assign multiple headings: the name heading for the ecclesiastical entity plus the topical heading subdivided by the closest equivalent geographic heading and/or the closest equivalent geographic heading subdivided by topical subdivision.

10. Content designation of geographic subdivisions. Names of places, when used as geographic subdivisions, are normally assigned the subfield code **z**, as illustrated in the examples above. When used as topical subdivisions after subject headings or subdivisions that are divided by topic rather than place, however, they are used in the form in which they are established as headings and are assigned the subfield code **x.** *Examples:*

```
600 10 $a Shakespeare, William, $d 1564-1616 $x Knowledge
        $x Greece.
```

LC practice:
11. Correction of existing records. When changing an existing bibliographic record in connection with a new subject heading proposal, updating a geographic name to RDA form, correcting an error in a record, etc., also review and change as necessary all headings in the record that have been divided according to former rules that differ from the rules in this instruction sheet.

Geographic Subdivision Information in Name Authority Records H 835

***BACKGROUND**: In February 1999, the Library of Congress began using the 781 field (Subdivision Heading Linking Entry–Geographic Subdivision) in name authority records for geographic name headings that may also be used as geographic subdivisions. This field is used to record the geographic subdivision form in a format this is both eye-readable and manipulable for purposes of machine validation.*

Prior to February 1999, subdivision treatment decisions for selected geographic name headings that fell outside the scope of the standard rules, or whose geographic status was ambiguous or not readily apparent, were recorded in 667 fields in the name authority records for those entities, as in the following examples:

```
151 ## $a Sabah
667 ## $a SUBJECT USAGE:  As a geographic subdivision, this
          heading is used indirectly through Malaysia.
```

```
151 ## $a Washington (D.C.)
667 ## $a SUBJECT USAGE:  As a geographic subdivision, this
          heading is used directly.
```

Since 1999, the 667 field is also used to record the fact that a geographic name heading is not appropriate for use as a geographic subdivision. Headings for geographic entities within cities that are qualified by the name of the city, such as city sections, districts, neighborhoods, etc., may not be used as geographic subdivisions. For such headings, a 667 field with standard text may be added, as in the following example:

```
151 ## $a Hollywood (Los Angeles, Calif.)
667 ## $a SUBJECT USAGE: This heading is not valid for use as a
          geographic subdivision.
```

H 835 Geographic Subdivision Information in Name Authority Records

According to instructions in Descriptive Cataloging Manual Z1, NACO and LC catalogers should include 781 fields in new geographic name authority records for jurisdictions that may be used as geographic subdivisions and 667 fields in new geographic name authority records for geographic headings that are not appropriate for use as geographic subdivisions. They may also add such fields to existing geographic name authority records. In revising an existing name authority record that contains a subject cataloging usage note in a 667 field indicating the proper geographic subdivision form, they may delete the 667 field and replace it with a 781 field.

For instructions on including the 667 and 781 fields in authority records for proposed new geographic subject headings, see H 836 and H 200, sec. 11. For instructions on determining the appropriate geographic subdivision form, see H 830. Catalogers should contact the Policy and Standards Division at policy@loc.gov for guidance on complicated or unusual situations.

The following are examples of geographic subdivision data in 781 fields in name authority records:

```
151 ## $a France
781 #0 $z France

151 ## $a Paris (France)
781 #0 $z France $z Paris

151 ## $a Lycia
781 #0 $z Turkey $z Lycia

151 ## $a Sydney (N.S.W.)
781 #0 $z Australia $z Sydney (N.S.W.)

151 ## $a Valencia (Spain : Region)
781 #0 $z Spain $z Valencia (Region)
```

1. Searching the LC Database. When in doubt as to how a given geographic name heading is to be used as a geographic subdivision, first search the LC Database to determine whether a decision has already been made and recorded in a 667 SUBJECT USAGE field or a 781 field. If either of these fields is found in the authority record for the heading in question, follow the instructions as presented in the record.

Place as a Theme in Art, Literature, Motion Pictures, etc. H 910

BACKGROUND: *In 1973, the practice of assigning headings of the type* ***[name of place]–Description and travel–Views*** *or* ***[name of place]–Description–Views*** *to works consisting of reproductions of art works having a particular place as a theme was discontinued in favor of the use of headings of the type* ***[name of place] in art*** *as either form or topical headings. In 1997 headings of this type were changed to* ***[name of place]–In art****. Phrase headings of the type* ***[name of place] in the Bible****, etc., continued to be used until 2013, when they were largely discontinued in favor of headings of the type* ***[name of place]—In the Bible****. They are assigned only as topical headings.*

1. [place]–In art. Use the free-floating subdivision **–In art** as a form subdivision coded $v for reproductions of art works with a specific place as a theme. *Example:*

Title: Manhattan observed : selections of drawings, prints, and paintings.

```
651 #0 $a New York (N.Y.) $v In art.
651 #0 $a Manhattan (New York, N.Y.) $v In art.
```

Exception: Assign to works that consist of photographs of a place, or of paintings made before the invention of photography merely to give views, the heading **[*place*]–Pictorial works.**

Use the free-floating subdivision **–In art** as a topical subdivision coded $x for works that discuss a specific place as a theme in art. *Example:*

Title: Michel Delacroix, eternal Paris.

```
600 10 $a Delacroix, Michel $x Themes, motives.
651 #0 $a Paris (France) $x In art.
```

Use of the free-floating phrase heading **[*name of place*] in art** was discontinued in January 1997.

2. [place]–In literature. Use the free-floating subdivision **–In literature** under names of places for works that discuss the treatment of a specific place in the various literary genres collectively, or in any individual literary genre. *Example:*

Title: The Paris of the novelists.

```
651 #0 $a Paris (France) $x In literature.
650 #0 $a Fiction $y 19th century $x History and criticism.
```

2. [place]–In literature. *(Continued)*

Note: The standard provisions for literary form headings apply to ***collections*** *of literature or* ***individual literary works*** *featuring a specific place as a theme, that is, the subdivisions* ***–Literary collections, –Fiction, –Drama,*** *or* ***–Poetry*** *are used under the place name.*

Use of the free-floating phrase heading ***[name of place] in literature*** *was discontinued in August 1993.*

3. [place]–In motion pictures. Use the free-floating subdivision **–In motion pictures** under names of places for works that discuss the treatment of a specific place in motion pictures. *Example:*

Title: Hollywood's Canada : the Americanization of our national image.

```
651 #0 $a Canada $x In motion pictures.
650 #0 $a Motion pictures $z United States $x History.
```

Use of phrase headings of the type **[*name of place*] in motion pictures** was discontinued in December 1997.

4. Places in sacred works. Submit proposals to editorially establish headings of the type **[*place*]–In the Bible**, **[*place*]--In the Vedas**, etc. as needed for works that discuss the treatment of a specific place in a sacred work.

Use of phrase headings of the type **[*name of place*] in the Bible** was discontinued in June 2013.

5. [place] in [. . .] headings. Submit proposals to establish editorially headings of the type **[*place*] in textbooks, [*place*] in the performing arts,** etc. Assign these as topical headings to works that discuss the treatment of the place in textbooks, the performing arts, etc. *Example:*

Title: Die Römerzeit im Selbstverständnis der Franzosen und Deutschen.

```
650 #0 $a Rome in textbooks.
```

Note: For instructions on assigning names of places as topics of musical works, see H 2075.

***BACKGROUND**: In descriptive cataloging practice the RDA jurisdictional heading **China** is used for all the governments that have controlled the mainland of China for all time periods, including the People's Republic of China. The use of the corporate heading **China (People's Republic, 1949-)** was discontinued when AACR2 was implemented. Thus, in corporate headings, **China** also designates the People's Republic of China, established in 1949. This coincides with subject cataloging policy concerning the use of **China** that has been in effect since 1973.*

*The corporate heading **China (Republic : 1949-)** is used in descriptive cataloging to designate the post-1948 Republic of China; the jurisdictional heading **Taiwan** designates the province of Taiwan that is part of the Republic of China. However, in subject cataloging practice, the jurisdictional heading **Taiwan** is used for both the post-1948 Republic of China and the island of Taiwan.*

*For instructions on Hong Kong and assignment of the heading **Hong Kong (China)**, see H 978.*

1. China. Use **China** as a heading or as a geographic subdivision for works discussing mainland China or the People's Republic of China, regardless of time period.

If it is necessary to designate a particular historical period, use the appropriate period subdivision. Period subdivisions after 1949 designate the People's Republic of China. *Examples:*

```
651 #0 $a China $x History $y Song dynasty, 960-1279.
650 #0 $a Education $z China $x History $y 1949-1976.
651 #0 $a China $x Politics and government $y 1937-1945.
```

2. Taiwan. Assign the heading **Taiwan** for works on the island of Taiwan, regardless of time period, and the post-1948 Republic of China. *Examples:*

```
651 #0 $a Taiwan $x History $y 1895-1945.
651 #0 $a Taiwan $x Foreign relations $z United States.
```

As a geographic subdivision, use **Taiwan** directly after topics. Divide indirectly through **Taiwan** for localities on Taiwan. *Examples:*

```
650 #0 $a Education $z Taiwan.
650 #0 $a Housing $z Taiwan $z Taipei.
```

H 925 China and Taiwan

***2. Taiwan**. (Continued)*

Do not use the corporate heading **China (Republic : 1949-)**. However, for names of individual government agencies used as subjects, assign corporate headings as established in the name authority file, even if they are formulated as subheadings of **China (Republic : 1949-)**. *Example:*

```
610 10 $a China (Republic : 1949-   ). $b Hai Jun.
```

Corporate headings formulated as subheadings of **Taiwan** designate corporate bodies of the provincial Taiwan government, regardless of time period, for example, **Taiwan. Min zheng ting**.

Do not assign **China** to a work issued by the Republic of China if the work deals only with Taiwan. Instead, assign **Taiwan**. For works that make a special effort to describe actual conditions on both Taiwan and mainland China, assign the headings **Taiwan** and **China** as appropriate.

Free-Floating Subdivisions H 1095

DEFINITION: The term **free-floating** refers to a form or topical subdivision that may be used under designated subjects without the usage being established editorially, and, as a consequence, without an authority record being created for each main heading/subdivision combination that might be needed.

CAUTION REGARDING USE: Free-floating status does not allow the assignment of a subdivision under any topic of interest without regard for appropriateness. All free-floating subdivisions may be assigned only in accordance with subject cataloging rules, policies, and practices. Most subdivisions are usable only under limited categories of headings in specifically defined situations.

TYPES OF FREE-FLOATING SUBDIVISIONS: Five types of free-floating subdivisions are in use: (1) Form and topical subdivisions of general application; (2) subdivisions used under classes of persons and ethnic groups; (3) subdivisions used under names of individual corporate bodies, persons, and families; (4) subdivisions used under place names; and (5) subdivisions controlled by pattern headings. It is also possible to add free-floating terms and phrases to existing headings. For instructions on those terms and phrases, see H 362.

(1) Form and topical subdivisions of general application. These subdivisions are listed with guidelines for their use beginning on p. 4 of this instruction sheet.

(2) Subdivisions used under classes of persons and ethnic groups. These subdivisions are given in two separate lists, H 1100 and H 1103.

(3) Subdivisions used under names of individual corporate bodies, persons, and families. There are three separate lists of these subdivisions. Subdivisions used under names of corporate bodies are listed in H 1105. Subdivisions used under names of persons are listed in H 1110. Subdivisions used under family names are included in H 1120.

(4) Subdivisions used under place names. There are two separate lists for these subdivisions. Subdivisions used under names of regions, countries, cities, etc., are listed in H 1140. Subdivisions used under names of bodies of water are listed in H 1145.5.

(5) Subdivisions controlled by pattern headings. Separate lists of these subdivisions are given in the appropriate instruction sheet for each pattern heading (H 1147 - H 1200). General instructions for their use may be found in H 1146.

H 1095 Free-Floating Subdivisions

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

PROCEDURES FOR ASSIGNING FREE-FLOATING SUBDIVISIONS:

1. Authorized usage. Before using any free-floating subdivision, determine that it is being used in accordance with subject cataloging policy, as stated in the *Subject Headings Manual*, the subject authority file, etc. Information about the authorized usage of free-floating subdivisions may be found in:

- The *Subject Headings Manual* -- the lists of free-floating subdivisions in H 1095 – H 1200) as well as in separate instruction sheets that explain the use of many individual subdivisions.

- Subject authority records -- subdivision authority records in which free-floating subdivisions appear in 18X fields, codes identifying their controlling instruction sheet numbers (H 1095-H 1200) appear in 073 fields, and usage statements and instructions appear in 680 and 667 fields; scope notes in 680 fields of subject heading authority records (cf. H 400); general see also references in 360 fields of authority records for generic headings (cf. H 371); and general see references in 260 fields of reference records (cf. H 374) when no generic headings exist.

- *LC Subject Headings Tentative List, Summary of Decisions* -- announcements of new free-floating subdivisions and changes to existing ones.

  Note: Free-floating subdivisions: An Alphabetical Index was published annually from 1989-2011. Because existing copies are out of date, they are not reliable guides to instructions on currently-authorized free-floating subdivisions.

2. Conflicts. Determine if the use under consideration conflicts with any previously established subject headings. The conflict most frequently encountered is the subdivision vs. phrase heading conflict, for example, **Sports−Fiction** vs. **Sports stories**; **Schools−Management** vs. **School management and organization**. Use the established heading in each case unless a policy is in place to revise a particular type of heading. For example, in the 1980s, a decision was made to cancel all headings of the type **... as a profession** in favor of the free-floating subdivision **−Vocational guidance**. For subdivisions controlled by pattern headings, generally bring usage into conformity with the pattern lists unless there is a good reason to maintain an exceptional heading.

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

PROCEDURES FOR ASSIGNING FREE-FLOATING SUBDIVISIONS:

3. Topics not implied in headings. Use a free-floating subdivision under a topical heading only when the topic of the subdivision is *not* already implied in the heading itself. For example, the subdivision **–Government policy** is not used under headings that are inherently governmental in nature (cf. H 1642). The subdivision **–Psychological aspects** should not be used under headings for psychological concepts, such as **Emotions**.

4. Order of subdivisions. Combine subdivisions with main headings in the prescribed order to create meaningful subject heading strings. For a discussion of the two basic orders of subject heading strings, see H 1075 sec. 2.

5. Geographic subdivision. Free-floating subdivisions that are authorized for further geographic subdivision have the notation *(May Subd Geog)* on the lists of free-floating subdivisions. See H 860 for instructions on subdivisions further subdivided by place and H 870 for instructions on interposition of geographic subdivisions.

6. Subfield coding. On the individual free-floating subdivision and pattern heading lists, subfield coding is provided for each subdivision listed. Most form subdivisions coded $v on the lists may also be used as topical subdivisions coded $x when assigned to works *about* the form (see H 1075, sec. 1.d.).

LC practice:
7. Updating of LC records. When assigning a particular subdivision for the first time under a particular heading, check the existing entries in the LC Database under the unsubdivided heading in order to locate those records with headings that require updating.

> *Example:* When assigning the subdivision **–Social aspects** *(May Subd Geog)* for the first time under the heading **Hunting**, examine the other records that have been assigned the heading **Hunting** to determine those records, if any, that should receive this new subdivision (with geographic subdivision, if appropriate).

8. New usage. To use a free-floating subdivision in a new situation, or in a situation not authorized in the written guidelines here or in the individual free-floating or pattern heading lists, establish the new usage editorially according to the normal procedures in H 200, submitting a note of explanation at the same time.

H 1095 Free-Floating Subdivisions

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

Listed below are general free-floating form subdivisions and those topical subdivisions having general application, or an application not covered by the pattern and other lists of free-floating subdivisions outlined on p. 1. For subdivisions having applications governed solely by the other lists, consult the appropriate list(s). On this list, statements are given of the types of headings under which each subdivision may be used along with definitions of use in some cases. For subdivisions that may be used under all types of headings – geographic, personal, corporate, title, and topical – the statement reads, "Use under subjects." Subdivisions authorized for use under topical headings may be used under appropriate headings tagged 150 as well as under headings with other tags that are divided by topical subdivisions. For subdivisions of general application that also appear on other special lists, all uses are enumerated here. See also references are provided between related subdivisions on this list. See also references to closely related subdivisions on other special lists are also given. Appearing with each subdivision are references to instruction sheets in the *Subject Cataloging Manual* which explain or mention its use.

> *Note: Most form subdivisions coded $v in this list may also be used as topical subdivisions coded $x when assigned to works* ***about*** *the form (see H 1075, sec. 1.d.).*

$x **Abbreviations**
Use under topical headings for works about abbreviations pertaining to those topics.
See also **–Acronyms**

$x **Abbreviations** *$v* **Dictionaries**
Use under topical headings for lists of abbreviations pertaining to those topics.

$v **Abbreviations of titles**
Use under types of periodicals, for example, **English periodicals–Abbreviations of titles.**
See also **–Periodicals–Abbreviations of titles**

$x **Ability testing** *(May Subd Geog) (H 2186)*
Use under topical headings.
See also **–Testing** under phrase headings for types of ability.

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

$x **Abstracting and indexing** *(May Subd Geog) (H 1205; H 1670)*
Use under names of countries, cities, etc., classes of persons, ethnic groups, and uniform titles of sacred works, and under topical headings for works on how to prepare abstracts or indexes of publications about the subject. Also use under types of publications for works on preparing abstracts or indexes of those types of publications.

$v **Abstracts** *(H 1205)*
Use under names of countries, cities, etc., and under topical headings for works that list publications on the subject and provide full bibliographical information together with substantive summaries or condensations of the facts, ideas, or opinions presented in each publication listed. Use under names of individual persons and corporate bodies for abstracts of works by or about the person or corporate body. Also use under types of publications for works that summarize the contents of those publications.
See also **–Digests** under legal topics.

$x **Access control** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under types of archives, records, computers, computer networks, and statistical and data-gathering services.

*$***Accidents** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under names of individual space vehicles, types of industries, and other topical headings. Do not subdivide geographically under names of individual space vehicles.
See also **–Wounds and injuries** under classes of persons, ethnic groups, individual animals and groups of animals, individual plants and groups of plants, and individual organs and regions of the body.

*$x***Accidents** *$x* **Investigation** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under topical headings.

$x **Accounting** *(H 1624)*
Use under names of individual corporate bodies and under types of corporate bodies and industries, military services, and topical headings.

H 1095 Free-Floating Subdivisions

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

$x **Accreditation** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under names of individual corporate bodies, especially institutions, educational institutions, and services, and under types of institutions, educational institutions, and services. Do not subdivide geographically under names of corporate bodies.
See also **–Study and teaching** under subjects for the accreditation of programs of study in those subjects.
See also **–Certification**; **–Licenses**

$x **Acronyms** *(H 1206.5)*
Use under individual languages other than English, groups of languages, and topical headings for works about acronyms in those languages or pertaining to those topics.

$x **Acronyms** *$v* **Dictionaries** *(H 1206.5)*
Use under individual languages other than English, groups of languages, and topical headings for lists of acronyms in those languages or pertaining to those topics.

$x **Administration**
Use under names of individual libraries, schools, and institutions in the spheres of health and social services, under types of such institutions, and under types of education and programs in the field of education.
See also **–Colonies–Administration** under names of countries, cities, etc.
See also **–Management**
See also **–Politics and government** under names of countries, cities, etc., and under ethnic groups.

$v **Aerial photographs** *(H 1210.5)*
Use under names of countries, cities, etc., and under topical headings for collections or discussions of aerial photographs, including collections of reproductions, of a place or topic.

$x **Air conditioning** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under types of buildings, vehicles, and other constructions.

$x **Air conditioning** *$x* **Control** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under types of buildings, vehicles, and other constructions.

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

$v **Amateurs' manuals** *(H 1943.5)*
Use under technical topics for works of instruction for nonprofessionals on how to acquire a skill or perform an operation.

$x **Analysis**
Use under substances and chemicals for works on methods of analyzing those items or analyzing a sample to determine the presence or quantity of the items, and for works presenting the results of analyses of substances not produced naturally.
See also **–Composition**

$v **Anecdotes**
Use under names of countries, cities, etc., names of individual persons, families, and corporate bodies, uniform titles of sacred works, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, and topical headings.

$x **Anniversaries, etc.**
Use under names of countries, cities, etc., names of individual persons and corporate bodies, and under historic and social movements, individual Christian denominations, events, classes of persons, and ethnic groups for works on anniversary celebrations or commemorations of significant events. Do not use for works merely published on the occasion of an anniversary.
See also **–Centennial celebrations, etc.**

$x **Archival resources** *(H 1230)*
Use under names of countries, cities, etc., and under topical headings for descriptions of the types of documents and historical records about a particular place or topic available in an institution or institutions.

$v **Archives** *(H 1230)*
Use under names of individual persons, families, and corporate bodies, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, types of corporate bodies and educational institutions, and military services for collections of documents or historical records, including notes, correspondence, minutes, photographs, legal papers, etc.

$x **Archives** *$v* **Microform catalogs** *(H 1361)*

H 1095 Free-Floating Subdivisions

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

$v **Art** *(H 1250)*

Use under names of individual persons who lived before 1400, names of deities and mythological or legendary figures, individual fictitious characters and groups of fictitious characters, and under headings of the type **[*topic*]–[*subdivision*]**.

See also **–Portraits** under names of individual persons who lived after 1400 and individual families, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, and individual wars.

See also headings of the type **[*topic*] in art** and the subdivision **–In art** under names of countries, cities, etc., under names of individual corporate bodies, and under Christian denominations.

$v **Atlases** *(H 1935)*

Use under scientific and technical topics for works consisting of comprehensive, often systematically arranged collections of illustrative plates, charts, etc., usually with explanatory captions.

$x **Audio-visual aids** *(H 2110)*

Use under topical headings for works on audiovisual materials not specifically designed for educational purposes.

See also **–Study and teaching–Audio-visual aids**

$x **Audio-visual aids** *$v* **Catalogs** *(H 1361)*

Use under topical headings for catalogs of audiovisual materials.

$v **Audiocassette catalogs** *(H 1361)*

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., names of individual persons and corporate bodies, and under ethnic groups, topical headings, and forms and types of musical compositions, for lists or catalogs of sound recordings on audiocassettes.

$v **Audiotape catalogs** *(H 1361)*

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., names of individual persons and corporate bodies, and under ethnic groups, topical headings, and forms and types of musical compositions, for lists or catalogs of sound recordings on audiotapes.

$x **Auditing** *(H 1624)*

Use under names of individual corporate bodies and under types of corporate bodies and industries and topical headings.

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

$x **Authorship**
Use under names of individual persons and individual works entered under title, under disciplines, and under literary, motion picture, radio, television, and video forms and genres.

$x **Authorship** *$v* **Style manuals**
Use under disciplines

$x **Automatic control**
Use under individual technical processes and equipment.

$x **Automation**
Use under names of individual corporate bodies and under types of corporate bodies, industries, buildings, processes, and systems.
See also **–Effect of automation on** under occupational groups and types of employees.

$x **Autonomous communities** *(H 713)*
Use under headings of the type **[*topic*]–Spain** for works discussing collectively the autonomous communities of Spain in relation to the topic, for example, **Law–Spain–Autonomous communities**.

$x **Autonomous regions** *(H 713)*
Use under headings of the type **[*topic*]–China** for works discussing collectively the autonomous regions of China in relation to the topic, for example, **Minorities–China–Autonomous regions**.

$x **Awards** *(May Subd Geog)* *(H 1265)*
Use under names of individual persons, corporate bodies, and military services, and under topical headings. This subdivision may be further subdivided by place only under topical headings.

$x **Barrier-free design** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under types of buildings, structures, and facilities.

$x **Biblical teaching** *(H 1295)*
Use under religious or secular topics for works on the theological and/or ethical teachings of the Bible, or its individual parts, on that topic.

H 1095 Free-Floating Subdivisions

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

$v **Bibliography** *(H 1205; H 1322; H 1325; H 1670)*
Use under subjects.
See also **–Imprints** under names of countries, cities, etc.

$v **Bibliography** *$v* **Catalogs** *(H 1361)*
Use under subjects.

$v **Bibliography** *$v* **Early** *(H 1576)*
Use under subjects for bibliographies issued before 1800.

$v **Bibliography** *$v* **Exhibitions** *(H 1593)*
Use under subjects.

$x **Bibliography** *$x* **Methodology**
Use under subjects.

$v **Bibliography** *$v* **Microform catalogs** *(H 1361; H 1965)*
Use under subjects for catalogs that list works stored in microform editions.
See also **–Microform catalogs**

$v **Bibliography** *$v* **Union lists** *(H 1361)*
Use under subjects for catalogs of materials on those subjects held by two or more libraries.
See also **–Union lists**

$v **Bibliography of bibliographies** *(H 1325)*
Use under subjects.

$v **Bio-bibliography** *(H 1328)*
Use under names of countries, cities, etc., individual Christian denominations and monastic and religious orders, and under ethnic groups, literatures, and topical headings.

$v **Bio-bibliography** *$v* **Dictionaries** *(H 1328)*

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

$v **Biography** *(H 1330; H 1720; H 1845)*
Use under names of countries, cities, etc., names of individual corporate bodies, uniform titles of sacred works, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, individual and groups of animals, and historic events.

$v **Biography** *$v* **Dictionaries**
Use under names of countries, cities, etc., names of individual corporate bodies, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, and historic events.

$v **Biography** *$v* **Dictionaries** *$x* **French, [Italian, etc.]**

$x **Biography** *$x* **History and criticism**
Use under names of countries, cities, etc., names of individual corporate bodies, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, and historic events.

$v **Blogs**
Use under names of individual persons, classes of persons, ethnic groups, and topical headings for blogs by those persons, or about those persons, groups, or topics.

$v **Book reviews** *(H 2021)*
Use under names of countries, cities, etc., and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, and topical headings for collections of appraisals of books on those places or topics.
See also **–Reviews**

$x **Buildings**
Use under names of individual corporate bodies and exhibitions for works that discuss collectively the buildings of those corporate bodies or exhibitions.
See also **–Buildings, structures, etc.** under names of cities.

$v **By-laws**
Use under names of individual corporate bodies and under types of corporate bodies.

$x **By-products**
Use under types of industries and processes.

H 1095 Free-Floating Subdivisions

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

$v **Calendars**

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., and individual corporate bodies, and under topical headings for works that list recurring, coming, or past events occurring in those places, associated with those organizations, or relating to those topics, and under names of individual persons for calendars that include information on events associated with the person or quotations from the person.

$x **Calibration** *(May Subd Geog)*

Use under types of scientific and technical instruments and equipment.

$x **Cantons** *(H 713)*

Use under headings of the type **[*topic*]–[*country*]** for works discussing collectively the cantons of a country in relation to the topic, for example, **Transportation–Switzerland–Cantons**.

$v **Caricatures and cartoons**

Use under names of individual persons, families, and corporate bodies, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, individual wars, and topical headings for collections or discussions of caricatures or pictorial humor about those subjects.

$v **Case studies** *(H 1350)*

Use under names of individual corporate bodies and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, and topical headings.

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

$v **Catalogs** *(H 1360; H 1361)*

Use under types of objects, including types of merchandise, art objects, products, publications, collectors' items, technical equipment, etc., for listings of those objects that have been produced, that are available or located at particular places, or that occur on a particular market, often systematically arranged with descriptive details, prices, etc., accompanying each entry. Use **–Catalogs** under the heading **Excavations (Archaeology)** as well as under headings for individual archaeological sites for works listing objects found. Use **–Catalogs** under names of individual corporate bodies and types of organizations for works listing objects, art works, products, etc., produced by, located in, or available from those organizations. Also use **–Catalogs** under names of individual artists, craftspersons, families of artists or craftspersons, and corporate bodies for works listing their art works or crafts which are available or located in particular institutions or places. Also use under persons or families doing business as sellers under their own names.

See also **–Audiocassette catalogs**; **–Audiotape catalogs**; **–CD-ROM catalogs**; **–Compact disc catalogs**; **–Data tape catalogs**; **–Discography**; **–Exhibitions**; **–Film catalogs**; **–Microform catalogs**

$v **Catalogs and collections** *(May Subd Geog) (H 1360; H 1427)*

Use under types of natural objects and musical instruments.

$v **CD-ROM catalogs**

Use under subjects.

$x **Censorship** *(May Subd Geog)*

Use under names of individual persons and under individual literatures, wars, and topical headings, especially forms of communication.

$x **Centennial celebrations, etc.**

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., and individual corporate bodies, and under historic events.

$x **Certification** *(May Subd Geog)*

Use under types of products and industries, occupational groups, and types of employees for works on official confirmation that standards have been met.

See also **–Accreditation**; **–Licenses**

H 1095 Free-Floating Subdivisions

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

$x **Charitable contributions** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under classes of persons, ethnic groups, and types of organizations.

$v **Charts, diagrams, etc.**
Use under topical headings for works consisting of miscellaneous charts or diagrams illustrating those topics.

$v **Chronology** *(H 1367)*
Use under names of individual persons, uniform titles of sacred works, headings not divided by **–History**, such as art, music, and literature headings, and headings for wars, and under topical headings that are inherently historical.
See also **–History–Chronology**

$x **Circulation**
Use under types of serial publications.

$x **Citizen participation** *(H 1942)*
Use under topical headings for works on the participation of citizens in carrying out an activity.

$v **Classification**
Use under classes of persons and topical headings.

$x **Cleaning** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under topical headings.

$v **Code numbers**
Use under topical headings for works consisting of lists of code numbers.

$v **Code words**
Use under topical headings for works consisting of lists of code words.

$x **Cold weather conditions**
Use under types of installations, construction activities, and technical processes for works on procedures to be followed during cold weather conditions.

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

$x **Collectibles** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under names of individual persons, corporate bodies, titles of works, and fictitious and legendary characters, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, events, and topical headings, for works on objects depicting or related to those subjects.

$x **Collection and preservation** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under types of natural objects, including plants, animals, rocks, and minerals, for works on methods of collecting and preserving those objects.
See also **–Antiquities–Collection and preservation** under names of countries, cities, etc., and ethnic groups

$x **Collectors and collecting** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under types of objects, excluding natural objects, for works on collectors and methods of assembling and maintaining collections of those objects.

$x **Colonies** *(H 1149.5)*
Use under headings of the type **[*topic*]–[*place*]** for works discussing collectively the colonies of a place in relation to the topic, for example, **Education–Great Britain–Colonies.** Also use under names of countries, cities, etc., for works discussing collectively the colonies ruled by the country or city.

$v **Comic books, strips, etc.**
Use under names of individual persons, uniform titles of sacred works, under names of deities and mythological or legendary figures, individual and groups of fictitious and legendary characters, and under topical headings.

$x **Communication systems**
Use under names of individual corporate bodies and under types of industries, institutions, installations, military services, and disciplines.

$v **Compact disc catalogs** *(H 1361)*
Use under names of countries, cities, etc., names of individual persons and corporate bodies, and topical headings.

$x **Comparative method**
Use under disciplines for works on methods of comparing data relevant to the field.

H 1095 Free-Floating Subdivisions

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

$v **Comparative studies**
Use under uniform titles of sacred works, individual Christian denominations, and religious topics.

$x **Competitions** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under topical headings.

$x **Composition**
Use under natural substances of unfixed composition, including soils, plants, animals, farm products, etc., for the results of chemical analyses of those substances.
See also **–Analysis**

$x **Computer-aided design** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under topical headings.

$x **Computer-assisted instruction**
Use under topical headings for works on an automated method of instruction in which a student interacts directly with instructional materials stored in a computer.

$v **Computer games**
Use under subjects.

$x **Computer network resources**
Use under subjects for works on computer network resources available for research in various fields.

$x **Computer networks** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under subjects.

$x **Computer networks** *$x* **Security measures** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under subjects.

$x **Computer programs** *(H 2070)*
Use under topical headings for works on computer programs, whether or not lists of machine instructions are included.
See also **–Software**

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

$x **Computer simulation** *(H 2040)*
Use under topical headings.

$v **Concordances** *(H 1670)*
Use under names of individual persons, individual works (author-title or title entries), and uniform titles of sacred works, and under individual literatures and literary forms.

$v **Congresses** *(H 1460)*
Use under subjects.

$x **Congresses** *$x* **Attendance** *(H 1460)*
Use under subjects.

$x **Conservation and restoration** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under types of art objects, library materials, types of architecture, types of buildings, etc., for works on preserving and restoring those items.
See also **–Buildings, structures, etc.–Conservation and restoration** under names of cities and city sections

$x **Control** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under individual and groups of animals, plants and crops, and pests.

$v **Conversion tables** *(H 2160)*
Use under topical headings.

$x **Cooling** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under topical headings.

$x **Corrosion** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under individual metals and metal compounds, individual materials and types of materials, and types of engineering structures, equipment, and vehicles.

$x **Corrupt practices** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under names of individual corporate bodies, and under types of organizations, activities, and industries. This subdivision may be further divided by place only under types of organizations, activities, and industries.

H 1095 Free-Floating Subdivisions

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

$x **Cost control**
Use under topical headings.

$x **Cost effectiveness**
Use under topical headings.

$x **Cost of operation**
Use under topical headings.

$x **Costs**
Use under topical headings.

$v **Cross-cultural studies** *(H 1510)*
Use under topical headings for works which report the results of cross-cultural studies on those topics or discuss the methods and techniques of conducting such studies.

$x **Cult** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under individual deities, divine persons, saints, and persons worshipped for works on systems of beliefs or rituals associated with them.

$x **Curricula** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under names of individual educational institutions and under types of education and educational institutions for works about courses offered at those institutions or in those fields.
Do not subdivide geographically under names of individual educational institutions.

$x **Customer services** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under names of individual corporate bodies and under types of organizations and industries. This subdivision may be further divided by place only under types of organizations and industries.

$x **Data processing**
Use under names of individual corporate bodies and under topical headings.

$v **Data tape catalogs**
Use under subjects.

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

$v **Databases** *(H 1520)*
Use under subjects as a form subdivision for actual databases or as a topical subdivision for works on databases on those subjects.

$x **Dating**
Use under types of objects for the techniques of fixing the date of their origination.

$x **Decision making**
Use under topical headings for works on the process of arriving at decisions for action, including attempts to formulate a general theory based on mathematical analysis and psychological experiment.

$x **Defects** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under types of materials, equipment, structures, products, etc., in which defects may exist.

$x **Defects** *$x* **Reporting** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under types of materials, equipment, structures, products, etc.

$x **Defense measures** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under types of industries, utilities, installations, etc., for measures undertaken for their protection during times of conflict.

$x **Departments** *(H 713)*
Use under headings of the type **[*topic*]–[*country*]** for works discussing collectively the departments of a country in relation to the topic, for example, **Budget–France– Departments**.

$x **Design** *(H 1532)*
Use under topical headings where **–Design and construction** would not be appropriate.

$x **Design and construction** *(H 1532)*
Use under individual examinations and types of examinations; also use under types of structures, machines, equipment, etc., for works discussing their engineering and/or construction.

H 1095 Free-Floating Subdivisions

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

$v **Designs and plans** *(H 1532)*
Use under architectural headings, including types of buildings and rooms, and under landscape headings, including types of gardens and parks, for works containing architectural drawings.

$x **Deterioration** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under types of substances, materials, products, etc.

$v **Dictionaries** *(H 1540)*
Use under subjects.
See also **–Encyclopedias**

$v **Dictionaries** *$x* **French, [Italian, etc.]** *(H 1540)*
Use under subjects.

$v **Dictionaries** *$x* **Polyglot** *(H 1540)*
Use under subjects.

$v **Dictionaries, Juvenile** *(H 1690)*
Use under subjects.

$x **Digitization** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under types of library materials.

$v **Directories** *(H 1558)*
Use under names of countries, cities, etc., individual corporate bodies and families, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, Christian denominations, types of organizations, and topical headings for individual directories containing names, addresses, and other identifying data.
See also **–Registers**; **–Telephone directories**

$x **Discipline**
Use under names of individual corporate bodies and under types of corporate bodies, classes of persons, individual religions, and Christian denominations for the enforcement of rules affecting conduct or action.

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

$v **Discography** *(H 1361)*
Use under names of individual persons and under topical headings for lists or catalogs of sound recordings.
See also **–Audiotape catalogs**; **–Songs and music–Discography**

$x **Documentation** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under topical headings for works on the processes by which documents on those topics are made available.

$v **Drama** *(H 1780)*
Use under names of countries, cities, etc., names of individual persons, families, and corporate bodies, under classes of persons, ethnic groups, under names of deities and mythological or legendary figures, individual and groups of fictitious and legendary characters, and topical headings for plays or musical dramatic works on those subjects.

$v **Drawings**
Use as a form subdivision under technical topics for collections of drawings, plans, etc., and as a topical subdivision for the technique of making such drawings, unless a separate heading for the technique has been provided.

$x **Drying** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under individual materials, products, and objects dried.

$x **Dust control** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under types of industries, industrial plants, and processes.

$v **Early works to 1800** *(H 1576)*
Use under names of countries, cities, etc., and appropriate topical headings to designate individual works written or issued before 1800.

$x **Earthquake effects** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under types of buildings, structures, facilities, and equipment.

$x **Econometric models** *(H 2040)*
Use under topical headings for works that employ mathematical or statistical models used to test or measure economic phenomena.

H 1095 Free-Floating Subdivisions

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

$x **Economic aspects** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under individual wars and topical headings. Do not use under topics that are inherently economic (e.g., **Bank accounts**; **Depressions**; **Copper industry and trade**)
See also **–Economic conditions** under names of countries, cities, etc., and under classes of persons and ethnic groups, including occupational groups, for works discussing the economic history or economic conditions in general of a place, class of persons, or ethnic group.

$x **Electromechanical analogies** *(H 2040)*
Use under scientific and technical topics.

$v **Electronic discussion groups**
Use under subjects.

$x **Electronic information resources**
Use under subjects.

$x **Electronic publishing** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under types of published materials and headings for literature on particular topics.

$x **Employees**
Use under names of individual nongovernmental corporate bodies and under types of industries, services, establishments, and institutions.
See also **–Officials and employees**

$v **Encyclopedias** *(H 1540)*
Use under subjects.

$v **Encyclopedias, Juvenile** *(H 1540)*
Use under subjects.

$x **Endowments**
Use under names of individual corporate bodies and under types of corporate bodies and disciplines.

$x **Energy conservation** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under types of industries, facilities, etc.

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

$x **Energy consumption** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under types of industries, military services, and topical headings.

$x **Environmental aspects** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under individual military services, events, and wars, individual chemicals and groups of chemicals, individual materials and types of materials, and under types of industries, processes, machines, facilities, constructions, educational institutions, and events for environmental issues associated with their operation, creation, use, or planning and execution. Also use under individual diseases for environmental aspects of their causation or development.
See also **–Environmental conditions** under names of countries, cities, etc.

$x **Equipment and supplies**
Use under names of individual corporate bodies and under types of industries, processes, services, activities, institutions, disciplines, animals, plants and crops, vehicles, and wars.
See also **–Instruments**; **–Safety appliances**

$x **Estimates** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under types of engineering, technical processes, industries, etc., for estimates of the cost of construction, installation, etc., or the carrying out of a task to completion.

$x **Evaluation** *(H 1591)*
Use under names of individual corporate bodies and under types of institutions, products, services, equipment, activities, projects, and programs for works on methods of assessing or appraising those subjects, or for works on both the methods and results of assessing them.
See also **–Testing**
See also **–Rating of** under classes of persons.

$x **Examinations**
Use under names of individual corporate bodies, educational institutions, and military services and under types of educational institutions for works discussing examinations given by those organizations; under classes of persons for works discussing examinations for those groups; and under names of individual persons and titles of works and under topical headings for works discussing examinations given about those persons, titles, or topics.

H 1095 Free-Floating Subdivisions

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

$x **Examinations** *$v* **Study guides**

$v **Examinations, questions, etc.**
Use under classes of persons for compilations of questions and answers for examinations for those groups; and under names of individual persons and titles of works and under topical headings for compilations of questions and answers for examinations about those persons, titles, or topics.
See also **–Problems, exercises, etc.**

$v **Excerpts**
Use under motion picture forms and genres and under forms and types of musical compositions.

$v **Exhibitions** *(H 1593)*
Use under subjects.
See also **–Bibliography–Exhibitions**

$x **Experiments**
Use under scientific and technical topics for discussions about experiments and instructions for carrying them out.

$x **Expertising** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under headings for art forms and under types of art objects, types of architecture, and types of buildings.

$v **Facsimiles** *(H 1595)*
Use under headings or subdivisions designating types of printed or written materials, documents, etc.
See also **–Manuscripts–Facsimiles; –Maps–Facsimiles**

$v **Fiction** *(H 1720; H 1790)*
Use under names of countries, cities, etc., names of individual persons, families, and corporate bodies, under classes of persons, ethnic groups, names of deities and mythological or legendary figures, individual and groups of fictitious and legendary characters, and topical headings for collections of stories or novels on those topics. Also use under names of individual persons and historic events for individual works of biographical or historical fiction, and under animals for individual stories about animals.

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

$x **Fieldwork** *(May Subd Geog) (H 1645)*
Use under disciplines for discussions of the techniques of carrying out work in the field to gain practical experience through firsthand observation and to collect data.

$v **Film catalogs** *(H 1361)*
Use under subjects.

$x **Finance** *(H 1624)*
Use under names of individual nongovernmental corporate bodies and under types of industries, corporate bodies, services, technical operations, etc., for works on the raising and expenditure of funds. Use under names of individual government bodies only for works on their management of nonappropriated funds. Use under ethnic groups for the financial affairs of the group as a whole.
See also **–Appropriations and expenditures** under names of countries, cities, etc., and individual government agencies.
See also **–Finance, Personal** under names of individual persons and under classes of persons and ethnic groups.

$x **Fires and fire prevention** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under types of institutions, buildings, industries, and vehicles.

$v **Folklore** *(H 1627; H 1720)*
Use under names of countries, cities, etc., and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, uniform titles of sacred works, and topical headings for works discussing those topics as themes in folklore and for collections of folklore texts on those subjects.

$x **Food service** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under names of individual legislative bodies and types of institutions, organized activities, etc., for provisions for meals and food in those enterprises. Do not subdivide geographically under legislative bodies.

$x **Forecasting** *(H 1628)*
Use under names of countries, cities, etc., and under topical headings.

$z **Foreign countries** *(H 1919.5)*
Use under ethnic groups, individual languages, individual literatures, military services, and types of publications qualified by language or nationality.

H 1095 Free-Floating Subdivisions

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

$x **Foreign influences** *(H 1675)*
Use under headings for civilizations of places, or particular aspects of those civilizations, including art forms, literary forms, philosophies, intellectual life, etc., under ethnic groups, and under disciplines when further subdivided by place for works discussing general outside cultural influences on those civilizations, groups, or disciplines.

$x **Forgeries** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under names of individual persons and under types of art objects, documents, etc.

$v **Forms**
Use under names of individual corporate bodies, and under topical headings for works consisting of, or containing, substantial numbers of blank forms.

$v **Formulae, receipts, prescriptions**
Use under branches and systems of medicine.
See also **–Medicine–Formulae, receipts, prescriptions** under ethnic groups.

$x **Fuel systems**
Use under types of equipment and vehicles.

$x **Fume control** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under types of industries, industrial plants, and processes.

$x **Geographic information systems** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under subjects.

$x **Government policy** *(May Subd Geog)* *(H 1642)*
Use under classes of persons, ethnic groups, and topical headings not inherently governmental.
See also headings of the type **[*topic*] and state** and **[*topic*] policy**.

$x **Grading** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under individual animals and groups of animals, individual plants and groups of plants, and individual commodities.

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

$x **Graphic methods**
Use under disciplines, types of technical processes, scientific phenomena, etc., for the technique of solving problems by means of graphs.

$v **Guidebooks** *(H 1645)*
Use under names of countries, cities, etc., individual corporate bodies and parks, etc., and certain topical headings.
See also **–Tours** under names of countries, cities, etc.

$v **Handbooks, manuals, etc.** *(H 1646)*
Use under subjects.
See also **–Amateurs' manuals**; **–Laboratory manuals**; **–Observers' manuals**

$x **Health aspects** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under topical headings. Do not use under topics that are inherently health-related (e.g., **Colonoscopy**; **Diseases**)

$x **Heating and ventilation** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under types of buildings, vehicles, and other constructions.

$x **Heating and ventilation** *$x* **Control** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under types of buildings, vehicles, and other constructions.

$x **Heraldry**
Use under names of individual corporate bodies, types of industries, and topical headings for the devising, granting, and use of armorial insignia.

$x **Historiography**
Use under names of countries, cities, etc., and individual corporate bodies, uniform titles of sacred works and treaties, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, individual wars, and topical headings.

$x **History** *(H 1647; H 1845)*
Use under names of countries, cities, etc., and individual corporate bodies, uniform titles of sacred works, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, and topical headings.

H 1095 Free-Floating Subdivisions

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

$x **History** *$y* **To 1500** *(H 1647)*
Use under topical headings.

$x **History** *$y* **16th century** *(H 1647)*
Use under names of countries, cities, etc., individual corporate bodies, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, and topical headings.

$x **History** *$y* **17th century** *(H 1647)*
Use under names of countries, cities, etc., individual corporate bodies, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, and topical headings.

$x **History** *$y* **18th century** *(H 1647)*
Use under names of countries, cities, etc., individual corporate bodies, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, and topical headings.

$x **History** *$y* **19th century** *(H 1647)*
Use under names of countries, cities, etc., individual corporate bodies, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, and topical headings.

$x **History** *$y* **20th century** *(H 1647)*
Use under names of countries, cities, etc., individual corporate bodies, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, and topical headings.

$x **History** *$y* **21st century** *(H 1647)*
Use under names of countries, cities, etc., individual corporate bodies, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, and topical headings.

$x **History** *$v* **Chronology** *(H 1367)*
Use under names of countries, cities, etc., and individual corporate bodies, and under ethnic groups, and topical headings not inherently historical.
See also **–Chronology**

$x **History** *$x* **Philosophy**
Use under names of countries, cities, etc., and under topical headings.

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

$x **History** *$v* **Sources** *(H 1647; H 2080)*
Use under names of countries, cities, etc., and individual corporate bodies, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, and topical headings not inherently historical for collections or discussions of source materials of all types, such as legal documents, letters, diaries, family papers, visual and moving image materials, assembled at a later time to serve as source materials for use by students, scholars, etc., in their research on the subject.
See also **–Sources**

$x **History and criticism** *(H 1647)*
Use under literary, music, film, television, and video recording form headings.

$x **History of doctrines**
Use under religious topics.

$x **History of doctrines** *$y* **Early church, ca. 30-600**
Use under religious topics.

$x **History of doctrines** *$y* **Middle Ages, 600-1500**
Use under religious topics.

$x **History of doctrines** *$y* **16th century**
Use under religious topics.

$x **History of doctrines** *$y* **17th century**
Use under religious topics.

$x **History of doctrines** *$y* **18th century**
Use under religious topics.

$x **History of doctrines** *$y* **19th century**
Use under religious topics.

$x **History of doctrines** *$y* **20th century**
Use under religious topics.

$x **History of doctrines** *$y* **21st century**
Use under religious topics.

H 1095 Free-Floating Subdivisions

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

$x **Hot weather conditions** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under topical headings for works on procedures to be followed during hot weather conditions.
See also **–Tropical conditions**

$v **Humor**
Use under names of countries, cities, etc., names of individual persons and corporate bodies, uniform titles of sacred works, and under topical headings.

$x **Hurricane effects** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under types of buildings, structures, facilities, and equipment.

$x **Identification**
Use under classes of persons and topical headings. Also use under groups of animals and plants and types of objects as a topical or form subdivision for works presenting the characteristics of a group for the purpose of determining the names of its members.

$v **Illustrations** *(H 1659)*
Use under names of individual persons, individual works (author-title or title entries), uniform titles of sacred works, and under individual literatures, literary forms, and types of published materials.

$v **In art** *(H 362; H 910; H 1250; H 1935)*
Use under names of countries, cities, etc., individual corporate bodies, and individual Christian denominations, and under uniform titles, for their representation as physical objects in artistic works. Use as a form subdivision for works consisting of reproductions of artistic works that depict the place, body, etc. Use as a topical subdivision for works that discuss the place, body, etc., as a theme in art.

$v **In literature** *(H 1105; H 1110; H 1120; H 1140; H 1187; H 1188)*
Use under names of individual persons, families, corporate bodies, and countries, cities etc., Christian denominations and uniform titles of sacred works, and under names of deities, mythological or legendary figures, and fictitious characters, for works on those persons, organizations, and places in literature.

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

$v **In mass media** *(H 1105; H 1110; H 1120; H 1140)*
Use under names of individual persons, families, corporate bodies, and countries, cities etc., and under names of deities, mythological or legendary figures, and fictitious characters, for works on those persons, organizations, and places in mass media.

$v **Indexes** *(H 1670)*
Use under subjects.
See also **–Concordances**

$x **Industrial applications** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under scientific topics, individual chemicals, and individual plants and groups of plants.

$x **Influence** *(H 1675)*
Use under names of individual persons and corporate bodies, uniform titles of literary, artistic, and sacred works, and under forms and movements in the literary and visual arts, types of organizations, religions, and individual wars for works discussing their influence.

$x **Information resources**
Use under subjects.
See also **–Electronic information resources**

$x **Information resources management** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under names of individual corporate bodies and types of industries and organizations.

$x **Information services** *(H 1675.5)*
Use under names of countries, cities, etc., names of individual persons, corporate bodies, and military services, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, and topical headings.

$x **Information technology** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under disciplines, types of industries, services, and organizations.

$x **Insignia**
Use under names of individual corporate bodies and military services and under types of corporate bodies.

H 1095 Free-Floating Subdivisions

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

$x **Inspection** *(May Subd Geog) (H 1676.5)*
Use under names of individual military services, and under types of merchandise, products, equipment, engineering structures, and buildings, and individual and groups of animals and plants.

$x **Installation** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under types of equipment.

$x **Instruments**
Use under scientific and technical disciplines for discussions of the instruments employed in those fields.

$v **Interactive multimedia**
Use under subjects.

$x **International cooperation**
Use under topical headings.

$x **Internet marketing** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under types of commodities, products, and services.

$x **Interpretation**
Use under individual tests and types of tests.

$v **Inventories**
Use under types of industries, institutions, and topical headings for lists or discussions of raw materials, supplies, work in process, finished goods, etc., on hand at a particular time.

$x **Inventory control** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under names of individual corporate bodies and military services and under types of industries, organizations, and facilities. This subdivision may be further subdivided by place only under types of industries, organizations, and facilities.

$v **Job descriptions** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under names of individual corporate bodies and military services, and under occupational groups. This subdivision may be further subdivided by place only under occupational groups.

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

$v **Juvenile drama** *(H 1690)*
Use under names of countries, cities, etc., names of individual persons and corporate bodies, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, and topical headings.

$v **Juvenile fiction** *(H 1690)*
Use under names of countries, cities, etc., names of individual persons and corporate bodies, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, and topical headings.

$v **Juvenile films** *(H 1690)*
Use under subjects.

$v **Juvenile humor** *(H 1690)*
Use under names of countries, cities, etc., names of individual persons and corporate bodies, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, and topical headings.

$v **Juvenile literature** *(H 1690)*
Use under subjects.

$v **Juvenile poetry** *(H 1690)*
Use under names of countries, cities, etc., names of individual persons and corporate bodies, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, and topical headings.

$v **Juvenile software** *(H 2070)*
Use under topical headings for actual software items, that is, machine-readable editions.

$v **Juvenile sound recordings** *(H 1690)*
Use under subjects.

$x **Labeling** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under types of products.

$x **Labor productivity** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under types of industries, occupations, and processes.

$v **Laboratory manuals** *(H 1646)*
Use under scientific and technical topics for workbooks containing concise background information and directions for performing work, including experiments, in the laboratory.

H 1095 Free-Floating Subdivisions

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

$x **Landscape architecture** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under types of buildings, institutions, and facilities.

$x **Language**
Use under names of individual persons and corporate bodies, individual works entered under title, and under classes of persons, disciplines, types of newspapers, and individual wars.
See also **–Languages** under names of countries, cities, etc., and under ethnic groups.
See also **–Slang** under individual languages and groups of languages and under topical headings.

$v **Legends** *(H 1627; H 1795)*
Use under names of individual persons and legendary characters and uniform titles of sacred works, and under religious topics for collected or individual literary versions of legendary tales about those persons, characters, or topics.
See also **–Romances**

$x **Library resources**
Use under names of countries, cities, etc., names of individual persons and corporate bodies, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, and topical headings for works describing the resources and special collections available on those subjects.

$x **Licenses** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under occupational groups and types of employees, under types of industries, facilities, and institutions, and under individual land vehicles.
See also **–Accreditation**; **–Certification**

$x **Licenses** *$x* **Fees** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under occupational groups and types of employees, under types of industries, facilities, and institutions, and under individual land vehicles.

$x **Lighting** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under types of vehicles, structures, buildings, rooms, installations, etc.

$x **Linear programming**
Use under topical headings.

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

$v **Literary collections**
Use under names of countries, cities, etc., names of individual persons, families, and corporate bodies, under classes of persons, ethnic groups, individual wars, names of deities and mythological or legendary figures, and under individual and groups of fictitious and legendary characters, and topical headings for collections including several literary forms.

$x **Liturgy**
Use under individual Jewish and Christian sects and rites; under names of individual Christian monastic and religious orders; and under individual Jewish and Christian ceremonies, rituals, holidays, etc.

$x **Liturgy** *$v* **Texts** *(H 2190)*

$x **Location** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under types of industries, business entities, government agencies, and facilities, and under individual plants and groups of plants.

$v **Longitudinal studies** *(H 1848)*
Use under classes of persons, ethnic groups, and topical headings.

$x **Maintenance and repair**
Use under types of objects, including machinery, vehicles, structures, etc., requiring maintenance and repair.
See also **–Repairing**

$x **Management**
Use under names of individual corporate bodies, including government agencies, galleries, museums, parks, etc., and under types of industries, industrial plants and processes, special activities, resources, etc.
See also **–Administration**

$x **Manuscripts** *(H 1855)*
Use under names of individual persons and families, individual works entered under title, uniform titles of sacred works, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, groups of authors, literatures, and topical headings.

H 1095 Free-Floating Subdivisions

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

$x **Manuscripts** *$v* **Catalogs** *(H 1855)*

$v **Manuscripts** *$v* **Facsimiles** *(H 1595; H 1855)*
Use under names of individual composers and literary authors and under individual works entered under title.

$x **Manuscripts** *$v* **Indexes**

$x **Manuscripts** *$v* **Microform catalogs** *(H 1361)*

$v **Maps** *(H 1865)*
Use under names of countries, cities, etc., individual celestial bodies, individual corporate bodies, and under topical headings for individual maps or collections of maps.
See also **–Aerial views** under names of countries, cities, etc., and individual educational institutions.

$x **Maps** *$v* **Bibliography**
Use under names of countries, cities, etc., and individual corporate bodies, and under topical headings.

$v **Maps** *$v* **Early works to 1800** *(H 1576)*
Use under names of countries, cities, etc., and under topical headings.

$v **Maps** *$v* **Facsimiles** *(H 1595)*
Use under names of countries, cities, etc., and under topical headings

$x **Maps** *$x* **Symbols**
Use under topical headings.

$x **Marketing** *(H 1870)*
Use under types of commodities, products, services, and institutions providing products or services.

$x **Materials** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under scientific and technical disciplines and under types of equipment and construction.

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

$x **Mathematical models** *(H 2040)*
Use under topical headings.

$x **Mathematics**
Use under topical headings for works on the mathematics employed in those fields.

$x **Measurement**
Use under scientific and technical topics for works on the technique of making measurements.

$x **Medals** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under names of individual persons and corporate bodies other than military services, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, individual wars, and topical headings, for works on commemorative or honorary medals issued or awarded in relation to the subject. This subdivision may be further subdivided by place only under classes of persons, ethnic groups, individual wars, and topical headings. Use **–Medals, badges, decorations, etc.** under military services.

$x **Medical examinations** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under names of individual military services and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, and topical headings for which medical examinations are needed, such as insurance.

$v **Meditations**
Use under names of individual persons, uniform titles of sacred works, and under religious topics for works containing collections of thoughts or reflections on the spiritual significance of the person or topic.

$x **Membership**
Use under names of individual corporate bodies and types of corporate bodies for works on the conditions of belonging to those organizations.

$x **Methodology**
Use under disciplines and other topical headings for works on both the theory and practice of procedures to be followed.
See also **–Technique**

H 1095 Free-Floating Subdivisions

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

$v **Microform catalogs** *(H 1361; H 1965)*
Use under names of individual institutions and collections for catalogs that list works stored in those institutions or collections in microform editions.
See also **–Archives–Microform catalogs**; **–Bibliography–Microform catalogs**

$v **Miscellanea** *(H 1910)*
Use under subjects.

$x **Models** *(May Subd Geog)* *(H 2040)*
Use under types of objects and organs and regions of the body for works on physical or working models of those objects or body parts.

$x **Moisture** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under types of farm produce, objects, materials, technical equipment, etc., for works on their moisture content.

$x **Moral and ethical aspects** *(May Subd Geog)* *(H 1998)*
Use under non-religious or non-ethical topics for works that discuss moral and/or ethical questions regarding the topic.
See also **–Professional ethics** under occupational groups and types of employees.

$x **Museums** *(May Subd Geog)* *(H 1916)*
Use under names of individual persons, families, and corporate bodies, and under ethnic groups, individual wars, and topical headings for which phrase headings for the type of museum have not been established. This subdivision may be further subdivided by place only under headings for names of individual persons and families, and ethnic groups, individual wars, and topical headings.

$x **Mythology** *(May Subd Geog)* *(H 1998)*
Use under topical headings. Do not use under topics that are inherently mythological (e.g., **Animals, Mythical**; **Wind gods**; headings for individual gods)

$x **Name** *(H 1919)*
Use under names of countries, cities, etc., names of individual persons, deities, Christian denominations, and corporate bodies, and under ethnic groups and individual wars, events, etc., for works on the name's origin, history, spelling, validity, etc.

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

$x **Names** *(H 1919)*
Use under types of objects, animals, events, organizations, and educational institutions for the rules, customs, etc., in the naming of those items.

$v **Newspapers** *(H 1920)*
Use under subjects.

$x **Noise**
Use under topical headings.

$v **Nomenclature**
Use under scientific and technical disciplines and types of substances, plants, and animals for systematically derived lists of names or designations that have been formally adopted or sanctioned, or for discussions of the principles involved in the creation and application of such names.

$v **Nomograms**
Use under topical headings.

$v **Notation**
Use under scientific and technical topics for works containing the symbols, formulae, or signs employed in the field.

$v **Observations**
Use under scientific topics for works consisting of numerical data obtained by the observation of natural phenomena or for discussions on the processing and use of those data.

$v **Observers' manuals** *(H 1646)*
Use under scientific topics for instruction books on making observations of natural phenomena.

H 1095 Free-Floating Subdivisions

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

$x **Officials and employees**

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., and individual international and governmental agencies, and under types of government agencies and types of labor unions. This subdivision may be further subdivided by place only when used under names of countries, cities, etc.

See also **–Employees**

$x **On postage stamps** *(H 1945)*

Use under names of individual persons and corporate bodies, under titles of works and under names of countries, cities, etc., for works on the portrayal of those entities on postage stamps.

$v **Online chat groups**

Use under subjects.

$x **Orbit**

Use under names of individual artificial satellites.

$v **Outlines, syllabi, etc.**

Use under names of individual persons, uniform titles of sacred works, classes of persons, ethnic groups, and topical headings for brief statements of the principal elements of a subject to be studied, usually arranged by headings and subheadings.

$x **Packaging** *(May Subd Geog)*

Use under types of products and merchandise for the techniques of wrapping, sealing, and labeling those items for marketing.

$x **Packing** *(May Subd Geog)*

Use under types of products and commodities for the techniques of preparing those items for storage or shipment.

$v **Pamphlets**

Use under 16th, 17th, and 18th century period subdivisions of European and American history and under individual wars, for short, separately published, usually polemical, essays or treatises regarding controversial issues of contemporary interest, especially political or religious matters.

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

$v **Papal documents**
Use under topical headings for collections of documents and other papal pronouncements on the topic.

$v **Parodies, imitations, etc.**
Use under names of individual persons, individual works entered under title, and motion picture, television, and video forms and genres.

$v **Passenger lists**
Use under names of individual ships.

$v **Patents**
Use under disciplines and under types of articles and processes patented.

$v **Periodicals** *(H 1927)*
Use under subjects.

$x **Periodicals** *$v* **Abbreviations of titles**
Use under subjects.

$x **Periodicals** *$v* **Bibliography**
Use under subjects for lists of serials or periodicals on a subject.

$x **Periodicals** *$v* **Bibliography** *$v* **Catalogs** *(H 1361)*
Use under subjects for lists of serials or periodicals held by one organization or library, assembled as a private collection, or issued by an individual publisher.

$x **Periodicals** *$v* **Bibliography** *$v* **Union lists** *(H 1361)*
Use under subjects for catalogs of serials or periodicals on those subjects held by two or more libraries.

$x **Periodicals** *$v* **Indexes** *(H 1670)*
Use under subjects.*$v* **Personal narratives** *(H 1928)*
Use under names of events and wars.

$x **Personal narratives** *$x* **History and criticism**

H 1095 Free-Floating Subdivisions

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

$x **Personnel management**

Use under names of individual corporate bodies and under types of industries and organizations.

$x **Philosophy** *(H 1929)*

Use under names of individual persons who are not philosophers, and under groups of literary authors, uniform titles of sacred works, and topical headings. Do not use under topics that are inherently philosophical (e.g., **Atheism**; **Ideology**; **War (Philosophy)**).

$v **Photographs** *(H 1935)*

Use under subjects for works that consist of actual photographs, that is, photographic prints or digital photographs, rather than reproductions of photographs.

$v **Photographs from space** *(1210.5)*

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., and under topical headings for collections of photographs taken from outer space. Do not use for cartographic materials.

$x **Physiological aspects**

Use under types of activities and mental conditions for works on the relationship between an individual's activity, mental state, etc., and his physiology.

See also **–Physiology** under classes of persons, ethnic groups, individual and groups of animals and plants, and individual organs and regions of the body.

$x **Physiological effect** *(May Subd Geog)*

Use under individual chemicals, materials, individual plants and groups of plants, and environmental phenomena or conditions for works on their effect on the functions of living organisms.

$v **Pictorial works** *(H 1935)*

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., individual persons, families, and corporate bodies, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, individual wars, and topical headings. Also use under literary works entered under author for works consisting of pictures pertaining to the work as a physical object or, in the case of dramatic works, to productions of the work.

See also **–Portraits** under names of individual persons who lived after 1400, individual families, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, and individual wars.

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

$x **Planning**

Use under names of individual corporate bodies and under types of activities, facilities, industries, services, undertakings, etc., for works that describe or discuss the planning process.

$v **Poetry** *(H 1800)*

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., names of individual persons, families, and corporate bodies, under classes of persons, ethnic groups, names of deities and mythological or legendary figures, and under individual and groups of fictitious and legendary characters, and topical headings for collections of poetry and individual poems on those subjects.

$x **Political activity** *(May Subd Geog)* *(H 1942)*

Use under names of individual persons, families, corporate bodies, and military services, and under classes of persons, individual Christian denominations, and types of corporate bodies for works on the political participation of those persons or organizations.

See also **–Politics and government** under ethnic groups

See also **–Political and social views** under individual persons and groups of literary authors.

$x **Political aspects** *(May Subd Geog)* *(H 1942)*

Use under individual religious sects and denominations and topical headings for works on the political dimensions or implications of nonpolitical topics.

See also **–Politics and government** under names of countries, cities, etc., and under ethnic groups.

$v **Popular works** *(H 1943.5)*

Use under scientific, technical, and legal headings, etc., for works written for the layperson; and under medical disciplines, individual diseases, and under headings of the type **[*part of the body*]–Diseases** for materials written for the layperson.

$v **Posters** *(H 1945.5)*

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., individual persons and corporate bodies, classes of persons, ethnic groups, individual wars, and topical headings for individual posters and collections and/or discussions of posters about those subjects.

H 1095 Free-Floating Subdivisions

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

$x **Power supply** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under types of buildings, installations, equipment, industries, etc.

$x **Practice** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under types of professions.

$v **Prayers and devotions**
Use under names of individual religious and monastic orders and under individual religions, Christian denominations, classes of persons and ethnic groups for whose use the prayers are intended; under names of individual saints, deities, etc., to whom the devotions are directed; and under topical headings for prayers and devotions on those topics.

$x **Prayers and devotions** *$x* **History and criticism**

$x **Preservation** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under individual organs, and types of perishable products, including food, drugs, textiles, etc.

$x **Press coverage** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under names of countries, cities, etc, and individual corporate bodies, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, individual events, and topical headings.

$x **Prevention**
Use under individual or types of diseases and medical conditions, and under situations to be avoided.

$x **Prices** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under types of products, objects, etc., and under industries where one general heading for the products of that industry is lacking.

$x **Prices** *$x* **Government policy** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under types of products, objects, etc., and under industries where one general heading for the products of that industry is lacking.

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

$x **Private collections** *(May Subd Geog) (H 1427)*
Use under types of objects, including art and antiquities and excluding natural objects and musical instruments, for works on privately owned collections of those objects.

$x **Privileges and immunities**
Use under names of individual international agencies and legislative bodies and under types of organizations and educational institutions.

$v **Problems, exercises, etc.**
Use under topical headings for compilations of practice problems or exercises pertinent to the study of the topic.
See also **–Examinations, questions, etc.**

$x **Production and direction** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under forms and types of musical compositions, under individual art forms performed on stage or screen, under motion picture forms and genres, and under types of programming for the broadcast media.

$x **Production control** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under types of industries, industrial plants, and processes.

$x **Production standards** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under types of industries and processes.

$v **Programmed instruction**
Use under topical headings for works discussing presequenced instruction in which the learner is able to govern the pacing of the process, sometimes with a teaching machine, or for programmed texts on those topics.

$x **Programming** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under individual and types of computers, microprocessors, and programmable calculators.

$x **Prophecies**
Use under names of individual persons and deities, uniform titles of sacred works, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, and individual wars.
See also **–History–Prophecies** under names of countries, cities, etc.

H 1095 Free-Floating Subdivisions

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

$x **Protection** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under types of equipment, structures, individual and groups of plants and crops, organs and regions of the body, and under classes of persons for works on preserving these items or persons from physical damage or harm.

$x **Provinces** *(H 713)*
Use under headings of the type **[*topic*]–[*country*]** for works discussing collectively the provinces of a country in relation to the topic, for example, **Economic forecasting–Canada–Provinces.**

$x **Psychological aspects**
Use under topical headings other than psychological or religious topics for works on the influence of conditions, activities, objects, etc., on the mental condition or personality of individuals.

$x **Psychology**
Use under uniform titles of sacred works, religions, and religious topics for the psychological aspects of those works or topics. Use under names of individual persons for discussions or interpretations of the person's psychological traits, personality, character, etc. Also use under classes of persons, ethnic groups, and individual and groups of animals for the mental processes or characteristics of those persons or animals.

$x **Public opinion** *(H 1955)*
Use under names of individual persons and corporate bodies, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, individual wars, and topical headings for works on public opinion on those persons or topics.

$x **Public relations** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under names of individual corporate bodies, military services, and topical headings.

$x **Publishing** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under names of individual corporate bodies, individual Christian denominations, and types of corporate bodies, and under types of published materials and headings for literature on particular topics.
See also **–Publication and distribution** under uniform titles of sacred works.

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

$x **Purchasing** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under individual animals and groups of animals and under types of products and services.

$x **Quality control**
Use under types of industries, industrial plants, and processes.

$v **Quotations, maxims, etc.** *(H 1969)*
Use under names of countries, cities, etc., and under topical headings.
See also **–Quotations** under names of individual persons and families, uniform titles of sacred works, and under classes of persons and ethnic groups.

$x **Qur'anic teaching**
Use under Islamic topics for works on the theological and/or ethical teachings of the Qur'an on that topic, for example, **Islamic education—Qur'anic teaching**; **War—Religious aspects—Islam—Qur'anic teaching**.

$x **Rates** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under types of services, utilities, transportation systems, etc., for prices charged for services provided or items sold according to a specific ratio, scale, or standard.

$v **Readings with music**
Use under topical headings.

$v **Records and correspondence**
Use under names of individual corporate bodies and types of industries, organizations, etc.

$x **Recreational use** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under types of bodies of water, types of land, types of geographic features, and types of buildings with other functions.

$x **Reference books** *(H 1980)*
Use under subjects.

$x **Regional disparities**
Use under topical headings.
See also **–Economic conditions–Regional disparities** under names of countries, etc.

H 1095 Free-Floating Subdivisions

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

$x **Regions** *(H 713)*
Use under headings of the type **[*topic*]–[*country*]** for works discussing collectively the regions of a country in relation to a topic, for example, **Law–Italy–Regions**. Use only under countries whose legally designated first order divisions are called regions.

$v **Registers** *(H 1558)*
Use under names of countries, cities, etc., individual corporate bodies, and families, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, individual wars, and topical headings for lists of names of persons, organizations, or objects, etc., without addresses or other identifying data.
See also **–Directories**

$x **Reliability**
Use under types of equipment, machinery, technical systems, industrial plants, etc.

$x **Remodeling** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under types of buildings and rooms.

$x **Remodeling for other use** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under types of buildings and structures.

$x **Remote sensing**
Use under topical headings.

$x **Repairing** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under types of objects not requiring maintenance.
See also **–Maintenance and repair**

$x **Republics** *(H 713)*
Use under headings of the type **[*topic*]–[*country*]** for works discussing collectively the republics of a country in relation to the topic, for example, **Civil law–Soviet Union–Republics**.

$x **Research** *(May Subd Geog)* *(H 2020)*
Use under names of countries, cities, etc., individual corporate bodies, and classes of persons, ethnic groups, and topical headings.

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

$x **Research grants** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under names of individual corporate bodies and under topical headings. This subdivision may be further subdivided by place only under topical headings.

$v **Reviews** *(H 2021)*
Use under the heading **Books** and headings for types of books for collections of descriptive and evaluative accounts of books on many subjects. Use under headings for nonbook materials for collections of descriptive and evaluative accounts of those materials. Also use under headings for mass media and the performing arts for collections of critical writings about programs, performances, etc.

$x **Risk assessment** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under topical headings with which physical risk is associated.

$v **Romances** *(H 1795)*
Use under names of individual persons and legendary characters for texts of medieval (that is, pre-1501) European tales based chiefly on legends of chivalric love and adventure in which those persons or characters are the dominant character.
See also **–Legends**

$v **Rules**
Use under names of individual religious and monastic orders, contests, and sports events and under types of games and activities.

$v **Rules and practice**
Use under types of and names of individual courts, legislative bodies, constitutional conventions, and administrative or regulatory agencies, for works containing the rules and practice of those bodies.
See also **–Regulations** under names of individual educational institutions and military services.

$x **Safety appliances** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under types of machines, vehicles, industrial plants, occupations, etc.

$x **Safety measures**
Use under names of individual corporate bodies, military services, and topical headings.

H 1095 Free-Floating Subdivisions

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

$x **Safety regulations** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under topical headings.

$x **Sanitation** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under names of individual corporate bodies, types of industries, and topical headings. Do not subdivide geographically under corporate bodies.

$x **Scholarships, fellowships, etc.** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under classes of persons, ethnic groups, and fields of study.

$x **Scientific applications** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under types of technical devices or processes used to further scientific advancement.

$x **Security measures** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under names of individual corporate bodies and under individual computers, networks, and systems, and under types of buildings, installations, and industries. This subdivision may be further subdivided by place only under individual computers, networks, and systems, and under types of buildings, installations, and industries.
See also **–Computer networks–Security measures**.

$v **Sermons** *(H 2032)*
Use under names of individual persons and under sects of individual religions, Christian denominations, types of educational institutions, uniform titles of sacred works, individual wars, and topical headings.

$x **Sermons** *$x* **History and criticism** *(H 2032)*

$x **Sex differences** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under topical headings.

$x **Signers**
Use under uniform titles of historic documents.

$x **Simulation games**
Use under topical headings.

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

$x **Simulation methods** *(H 2040)*
Use under topical headings.

$x **Slang**
Use under individual languages and groups of languages, and under topical headings.

$v **Slides**
Use under names of countries, cities, etc., and individual persons and under topical headings.

$x **Social aspects** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under topical headings for works that discuss the effect of the item, activity, discipline, etc., and society on each other. Do not use under sociological topics (e.g., **Culture**; **Equality**; **Social ethics**; **Sociology, Military**)
See also **–Social conditions** under names of countries, cities, etc., and under classes of persons and ethnic groups for works on the social history or sociology of the place or group.
See also **–Social life and customs** under names of countries, cities, etc., and under classes of persons and ethnic groups.

$x **Societies, etc.** *(H 2060)*
Use under names of individual persons, families, and corporate bodies, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, uniform titles of sacred works, and topical headings for works discussing two or more societies or institutions related to those subjects.
See also **–Societies and clubs** under age and sex groups.

$x **Sociological aspects** *(H 2055)*
Use under types of institutions for works discussing the impact of the inherent nature of the institution in question on group interaction within the institution and vice versa.

$v **Software** *(H 2070)*
Use under topical headings as a form subdivision for actual computer programs that are tools to perform tasks, for example, systems software, utilities, or applications programs. Do not use for computer files or electronic resources that are *about* a given topic, or to indicate only that the item is machine-readable.
See also **–Computer games**; **–Computer programs**; **–Databases**.

H 1095 Free-Floating Subdivisions

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

$v **Songs and music** *(H 2075)*
Use under names of individual persons and corporate bodies, and under ethnic groups, individual wars, and topical headings.
See also **–Music** under ethnic groups.

$x **Songs and music** *$v* **Discography**

$x **Songs and music** *$x* **History and criticism** *(H 2075)*

$v **Songs and music** *$v* **Texts** *(H 2190)*

$x **Soundproofing** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under types of buildings, structures, facilities, and equipment.

$v **Sources** *(H 1647; H 2080)*
Use under individual works (author-title or title entries), historical topics, and headings for systems of law, for collections or discussions of source materials of all types compiled for scholars. Also use under names of individual persons for collections of materials that served as the person's sources of ideas or inspiration for his or her endeavors or creative works, and for discussions of those source materials. Also use under types of literatures for works about sources of ideas or inspiration for those literary works.
See also **–History–Sources**

$v **Specifications** *(May Subd Geog)* *(H 2083)*
Use under types of engineering, construction, industries, products, and merchandise.

$v **Specimens**
Use under types of publications, printed matter, etc., as a form subdivision for actual specimens of the material. Also use under individual typefaces or groups of typefaces as a form subdivision for works consisting primarily or entirely of samples of printed matter using those typefaces and intended to illustrate their appearance.

$x **Spectra**
Use under individual chemicals, materials, elementary particles, and celestial bodies.

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

$v **Speeches in Congress**
Use under topical headings for single speeches or compilations of speeches on those topics.

$x **Stability**
Use under types of equipment, individual chemicals and groups of chemicals, and individual land vehicles and types of land vehicles.

$x **Standards** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under topical headings for descriptions of the example or model set up and established by authority as the measure of quantity, quality, value, extent, weight, etc., to be followed.
See also **–Production standards**

$x **State supervision** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under topical headings.

$x **States** *(H 713)*
Use under headings of the type **[*topic*]–[*country*]** for works discussing collectively the states of a country in relation to the topic, for example, **Income tax–United States–States.**

$x **Statistical methods** *(H 2095)*
Use under topical headings for discussions of the methods of solving problems on those topics through the use of statistics.

$x **Statistical services** *(H 2095)*
Use under names of countries, cities, etc., and under topical headings for works on services that collect numerical data located in those places or about those topics.

$v **Statistics** *(H 2095)*
Use under names of countries, cities, etc., names of individual corporate bodies, classes of persons, ethnic groups, and topical headings for works consisting of or discussing statistics about those subjects.
See also **–Statistics, Medical** under names of countries, cities, etc.
See also **–Statistics, Vital** under names of countries, cities, etc., and under ethnic groups for compilations of birth, marriage, and death statistics.

H 1095 Free-Floating Subdivisions

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

$x **Storage** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under types of commodities, foods, materials, industrial products, etc., for their safe-keeping in a warehouse or other depository.

$x **Study and teaching** *(May Subd Geog)* *(H 2110)*
Use under subjects for works on methods of study and teaching on those subjects.
See also **–Education** under names of individual religious and monastic orders, classes of persons, ethnic groups, and Christian denominations.
See also **–Instruction and study** under music headings.
See also **–Training of** under occupational groups and types of employees.

$x **Study and teaching** *$x* **Activity programs** *(May Subd Geog)* *(H 2110)*
Use under subjects.

$x **Study and teaching** *$x* **Audio-visual aids** *(H 2110)*
Use under subjects for works on the use of audiovisual aids in the learning and teaching of those subjects.

$x **Study and teaching** *$x* **Simulation methods** *(H 2110)*
Use under subjects.

$x **Study and teaching** *$x* **Supervision** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under topical headings.

$x **Study and teaching (Continuing education)** *(May Subd Geog)* *(H 2110)*
Use under subjects.

$x **Study and teaching (Continuing education)** *$x* **Audio-visual aids**
Use under subjects.

$x **Study and teaching (Early childhood)** *(May Subd Geog)* *(H 2110)*
Use under subjects.

$x **Study and teaching (Early childhood)** *$x* **Activity programs** *(May Subd Geog)* *(H 2110)*
Use under subjects.

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

$x **Study and teaching (Early childhood)** *$x* **Audio-visual aids** *(H 2110)*
Use under subjects.

$x **Study and teaching (Elementary)** *(May Subd Geog)* *(H 2110)*
Use under subjects.

$x **Study and teaching (Elementary)** *$x* **Activity programs** *(May Subd Geog)* *(H 2110)*
Use under subjects.

$x **Study and teaching (Elementary)** *$x* **Audio-visual aids** *(H 2110)*
Use under subjects.

$x **Study and teaching (Elementary)** *$x* **Simulation methods** *(H 2110)*
Use under subjects.

$x **Study and teaching (Graduate)** *(May Subd Geog)* *(H 2110)*
Use under subjects.

$x **Study and teaching (Higher)** *(May Subd Geog)* *(H 2110)*
Use under subjects.

$x **Study and teaching (Higher)** *$x* **Activity programs** *(May Subd Geog)* *(H 2110)*
Use under subjects.

$x **Study and teaching (Higher)** *$x* **Audio-visual aids** *(H 2110)*
Use under subjects.

$x **Study and teaching (Higher)** *$x* **Simulation methods** *(H 2110)*
Use under subjects.

$x **Study and teaching (Internship)** *(May Subd Geog)* *(H 2110)*
Use under subjects.

$x **Study and teaching (Middle school)** *(May Subd Geog)* *(H 2110)*
Use under subjects.

H 1095 Free-Floating Subdivisions

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

$x **Study and teaching (Middle school)** *$x* **Activity programs** *(May Subd Geog)* *(H 2110)*
Use under subjects.

$x **Study and teaching (Middle school)** *$x* **Audio-visual aids** *(H 2110)*
Use under subjects.

$x **Study and teaching (Preschool)** *(May Subd Geog)* *(H 2110)*
Use under subjects.

$x **Study and teaching (Preschool)** *$x* **Activity programs** *(May Subd Geog)* *(H 2110)*
Use under subjects.

$x **Study and teaching (Preschool)** *$x* **Audio-visual aids** *(H 2110)*
Use under subjects.

$x **Study and teaching (Primary)** *(May Subd Geog)* *(H 2110)*
Use under subjects.

$x **Study and teaching (Primary)** *$x* **Activity programs** *(May Subd Geog)* *(H 2110)*
Use under subjects.

$x **Study and teaching (Primary)** *$x* **Audio-visual aids** *(H 2110)*
Use under subjects.

$x **Study and teaching (Residency)** *(May Subd Geog)* *(H 2110)*
Use under topical headings.

$x **Study and teaching (Secondary)** *(May Subd Geog)* *(H 2110)*
Use under subjects.

$x **Study and teaching (Secondary)** *$x* **Activity programs** *(May Subd Geog)* *(H 2110)*
Use under subjects.

$x **Study and teaching (Secondary)** *$x* **Audio-visual aids** *(H 2110)*
Use under subjects.

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

$x **Study and teaching (Secondary)** *$x* **Simulation methods** *(H 2110)*
Use under subjects.

$v **Study guides**
Use under individual examinations and types of examinations and tests for guides for preparation for those examinations.

$v **Tables** *(H 2160)*
Use under topical headings.

$v **Tables of contents**
Use under individual works (author-title or title entries) and types of publications.

$x **Taxation** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under topical headings for works on the taxes levied on income-producing activities or articles of value; and under classes of persons and ethnic groups for taxes levied on those groups.

$x **Taxation** *$x* **Law and legislation** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under topical headings, classes of persons, and ethnic groups.

$x **Technique**
Use under disciplines, especially those involving laboratory routines, for nontheoretical works describing steps to be followed in performing required tasks. Use under names of individual literary authors and under literary form headings for works on writing technique. Also use under individual art forms and headings for national or ethnic art for works on artistic technique.
See also **–Methodology**

$x **Technological innovations** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under topical headings for works on fundamental technological improvements or changes in materials, production methods, processes, organization, or management which increase efficiency or production.

$v **Telephone directories** *(H 1558)*
Use under names of countries, cities, etc., individual corporate bodies, classes of persons, ethnic groups, and types of organizations and industries.

H 1095 Free-Floating Subdivisions

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

$v **Terminology** *(H 2184)*
Use under uniform titles of sacred works, and under classes of persons, individual Christian denominations, and topical headings for works that list or discuss words and expressions found in those works or used in those fields.
See also **–Terms and phrases** under individual languages and groups of languages.

$x **Terminology** *$x* **Pronunciation**
Use under individual sacred works and topical headings.

$x **Territories and possessions**
Use under headings of the type **[*topic*]–[*country*]** for works discussing collectively the territories and territorial possessions of a country in relation to the topic, for example, **Postmarks–United States–Territories and possessions**. Also use under names of regions and countries for works discussing collectively the territorial possessions of the region or country.

$x **Testing** *(H 2186)*
Use under topical headings for works on the construction, application, and results of testing pertaining to those topics. Also use under **Drugs** and individual drugs for works on testing their effectiveness and/or safety, and under types of materials, instruments, equipment, products, chemicals, animals, etc., for works on testing of those items and/or the results of testing.
See also **–Ability testing**; **–Evaluation**

$v **Textbooks** *(H 1690; H 2187)*
Use under topical headings for textbooks on those topics.

$v **Texts** *(H 2190)*
Use under individual lesser-known languages, dialects, early periods of languages, liturgy headings, and headings for vocal music for individual texts or collections of texts.
See also **–Liturgy–Texts**; **–Songs and music–Texts**

$x **Themes, motives**
Use under names of individual persons and individual literary and art forms.

$x **Therapeutic use** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under topical headings for works on their use in treating disease.

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

$x **Tombs** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under names of individual families, royal houses, dynasties, etc., and under classes of persons.
See also **–Tomb** under names of individual persons.

$x **Toxicology** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under individual chemicals and other substances for works on their poisonous effects on human beings or animals.

$v **Trademarks**
Use under individual industries and under products and articles that may be trademarked.

$x **Translating** *(May Subd Geog) (H 2219)*
Use under uniform titles of sacred works, and under individual languages and groups of languages and topical headings.

$v **Translations** *(H 2220)*
Use under names of individual literary authors, individual literary works entered under title, individual literatures, types of publications, and topical headings, for collections of translated works.

$v **Translations into [*name of language*]** *(H 2220)*

$x **Transportation** *(May Subd Geog) (H 2225)*
Use under names of individual military services, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, types of objects, merchandise, animals, and individual wars for works on transportation of or applied to those topics. This heading may be further subdivided by place only when used under classes of persons, ethnic groups, types of objects, merchandise, animals, and individual wars.

$x **Tropical conditions**
Use under topical headings for works on methods or procedures employed when working in a tropical climate.
See also **–Hot weather conditions**

H 1095 Free-Floating Subdivisions

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

$v **Union lists** *(H 1361)*
Use under types of printed or nonbook materials for catalogs of those materials held by two or more libraries.
See also **–Bibliography–Union lists**

$x **Union territories** *(H 713)*
Use under headings of the type **[*topic*]–India** for works discussing collectively the union territories of India in relation to the topic, e.g. **Land use–India–Union territories.**

$v **Use studies**
Use under types of information resources, information services, library resources, and publications.

$x **Validity** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under individual tests and types of tests.

$x **Valuation** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under types of property, businesses, structures, etc., for works on the values set upon those topics or their estimated or determined market value.

$x **Vibration** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under types of equipment, structures, and vehicles.

Video catalogs , see **–Film catalogs**

$x **Vocational guidance** *(May Subd Geog)* *(H 2232)*
Use under names of individual corporate bodies and military services, and under occupations, fields of endeavor, and types of industries, trades, etc., for works describing careers in those organizations or fields and/or offering advice on how to prepare for, enter, and succeed in those careers. Use under classes of persons or occupational groups only if the heading for the corresponding field or activity does not exist or cannot be established.

$x **Voivodeships** *(H 713)*
Use under headings of the type **[*topic*]–Poland** for works discussing collectively the voivodeships of Poland in relation to the topic.

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

$x **Waste disposal** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under types of industries, industrial processes, facilities, and institutions.

$x **Waste minimization** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under types of industries, industrial processes, facilities, and institutions.

$x **Water-supply**
Use under topical headings.

$x **Web-based instruction** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use under topical headings.

$x **Weight**
Use under types of objects, substances, individual animals and groups of animals, and organs and regions of the body for works on the techniques of making weight measurements of those items, or for the results of such measurements.

$x **Weights and measures**
Use under types of commodities and merchandise for systems of weights and measures established for those items.

Free-Floating Subdivisions: Names of Persons H 1110

***BACKGROUND**: In the past, sets of form and topical subdivisions evolved for use under personal name headings belonging to a few broad categories of persons: rulers and statesmen, musicians, philosophers, founders of religions, and literary authors. These subdivisions were established and printed in **Library of Congress Subject Headings** under representative pattern personal name headings in order to reduce and keep to a minimum the number of personal names included in **Library of Congress Subject Headings**. Separate lists of the subdivisions were issued and maintained for each category. General subdivisions usable under any personal name heading were included in the list of most commonly used subdivisions (H 1095). This present list is a consolidation and revision of the general subdivisions that could be used under any personal name and the subdivisions used under personal names belonging to the special categories. The separate subdivision list for literary authors (H 1155.4) was discontinued in 1998.*

TYPES OF HEADINGS COVERED: The subdivisions listed below may be used, within the limitations of the usage notes, as free-floating subdivisions under names of individual persons established as headings in the name authority file. The category includes all personal names established in the name authority file except names of individual fictitious and legendary characters, individual gods and mythological figures, and individually named animals (e.g., **Fletcher, Jessica**; **Ywain**; **Dionysus**; **Heracles**; **Brown, Sneaky Pie, 1982-**). Subdivisions that are listed below and needed for use under an individual heading of those types may be editorially established under the specific heading.

***GENERAL PRINCIPLE**:* When assigning a name heading for a person, subdivide the name on a free-floating basis by the appropriate form and topical subdivisions listed below. If a topical subdivision is assigned which represents an important approach to the work, also provide direct subject access to that topic by assigning an additional heading to the work.

1. Personal name headings. Assign an unsubdivided personal name heading for the complete biography of a person, including autobiography, or for general discussion or criticism of the person's life and/or work. Also use unsubdivided personal name headings for works on more than three separate aspects of an individual's life or work, or discussing one or more specific topics not covered by subdivisions on this list. Consult H 1330 for guidelines and instructions on assigning subject headings to biographical works.

H 1110 Free-Floating Subdivisions: Names of Persons

2. Free-floating subdivisions. As needed, subdivide personal name headings by appropriate form and topical subdivisions from the list below on a free-floating basis. General form and topical subdivisions listed in H 1095 with the statement "Use under subjects" are also available for use under personal name headings. Assign the subdivisions according to the guidelines and scope notes provided. References to instruction sheets that mention or may contain more information about a specific subdivision are included. If a specific subdivision is applicable to the topic of the work being cataloged, use it without regard to the size of the file already accumulated or anticipated about the person in the database.

3. Conflicts. Varying or conflicting and additional subdivisions have been established under a few unique and highly significant individuals, for example, **Gautama Buddha**; **Muhammad, Prophet, d. 632**; **Jesus Christ**; and **Shakespeare, William, 1564-1616**. In those cases, the established subdivisions take precedence over this list and should continue to be used.

4. New subdivisions. Propose as additions to this list only new subdivisions having a wide range of potential application. For specific topics applying only to unique or highly significant persons, establish the subdivision under the name of the pertinent person for inclusion in the subject authority file, for example, **Mary, Blessed Virgin, Saint–Annunciation**. Do not establish specific topics as subdivisions under the names of persons who are not prominent or well known. Instead assign the closest subdivision from the list as described in sec. 5 below or use the unsubdivided personal name heading with additional headings to bring out the particular topic.

5. Subtopics. For works discussing subtopics or aspects of topical subdivisions on the list that are too specific to be separately established, assign the broader subdivision under which the topic is subsumed. Make an additional entry under the specific topic. *Examples:*

Title: The professional ethics of Dr. John Smith, surgeon.

```
600 10 $a Smith, John $x Ethics.
650 #0 $a Surgeons $x Professional ethics.
```

Title: The murder trial of Wilbur Jackson.

```
600 10 $a Jackson, Wilbur $x Trials, litigation, etc.
650 #0 $a Trials (Murder) $z Pennsylvania $z Pittsburgh.
```

6. Persons with multifaceted careers.

a. General rule. Treat persons with multifaceted careers according to the emphasis of the work at hand unless a direct conflict exists between subdivisions on this list. For example, if a person such as **Luce, Clare Boothe, 1903-1987**, is discussed as a diplomat and politician, assign subdivisions from this list that are appropriate for use with that type of person. If another work deals with her as a playwright, assign subdivisions from this list that are specifically designated for use under literary authors.

b. Direct conflicts between subdivisions for use under literary authors and subdivisions used under other types of people. In situations where there is a direct conflict between general subdivisions on this list and subdivisions specifically designated for use only under literary authors, assign subdivisions pertinent to the field in which the person is better known. For example, the subdivision **−Literary art** is used only under names of people who are not primarily known as literary authors. This subdivision would not be used under the name of an author such as **Fitzgerald, F. Scott (Francis Scott), 1896-1940**.

Once it has been determined that a person is better known in a particular field and a subdivision appropriate for that field has been assigned under that person, continue to use that subdivision for the concept in question. Do not assign a conflicting subdivision even if the work in hand focuses on another field of activity.

7. Relation to specific disciplines, fields, or topics. Two subdivisions on this list relate the person to specific disciplines, fields, or topics: **−Career in [*specific field or discipline*]** and **−Knowledge− [*specific topic*]**. Guidelines for the use of each are given below. Complete these subdivisions on a free-floating basis with either a running phrase or a subdivision for the specific field or topic. In formulating the phrases, express the topic or field in uninverted form as clearly and succinctly as possible, for example, **−Career in costume design**; **−Career in higher education**. Further subdivisions following **−Knowledge** may be in inverted form if the basic heading is inverted, for example, **−Knowledge−Philosophy, Indic**. Assign an additional heading for the specific field or topic.

7. ***Relation to specific disciplines, fields, or topics***. *(Continued)*

a. –Career in [specific field or discipline]. Use for works limited to describing events in the person's occupational life or participation in a profession or vocation, for example, **Washington, George, 1732-1799–Career in surveying**.

b. –Knowledge–[specific topic]. The subdivision **–Knowledge** may be further subdivided by any relevant topic. Use this subdivision for works discussing the person's knowledge of a particular topic, whether explicitly stated by the person or inferred from his or her life and works, for example, **Debussy, Claude, 1862-1918– Knowledge–Literature**. Also, use for discussions of the person's educational background in a specific topic.

Note: In September 2004, two subdivisions relating individual persons to specific fields or topics were discontinued with no replacements: **–Contributions in [*specific field or topic*]** *and* **–Views on [*specific topic*]**. *For works discussing the person's actual substantive contributions or accomplishments in a specific field or topic, whether made as a result of a vocation or an avocation, assign the name of the person in combination with a heading for the specific topic, etc. Also assign a heading for the specific topic along with the name of the person for works discussing the person's philosophy or system of thought on a particular topic that he or she propounded or imparted to others. For works discussing the person's opinions or attitudes on a specific topic, whether explicitly stated by the person or inferred from his or her life and works, assign the name of the person and a heading for the topic. Although the subdivision* **–Views on [*specific topic*]** *is no longer authorized as a free-floating subdivision under names of individual persons in general, the subdivision may continue to be used under headings for names of persons where it has been specifically established, for example, under* **Jesus Christ** and **Lincoln, Abraham, 1809-1865**.

8. Assignment of additional headings. Bring out by means of an additional heading the topic of a subdivision representing an important aspect by which the work should be retrieved.

Many subdivisions are not important topics in their own right, for example, some form subdivisions such as **–Pictorial works** and topical subdivisions such as **–Childhood and youth**, which express personal aspects of an individual's life. Other subdivisions, however, do represent significant concepts which should be brought out by both a topical subdivision under the person's name and a subject heading for the topic itself. Situations requiring such additional headings are noted in the list. *Examples:*

8. Assignment of additional headings.

Examples: (Continued)

Title: Lincoln and Black freedom : a study in presidential leadership.

```
600 10 $a Lincoln, Abraham, $d 1809-1865 $x Relations with
        African Americans.
650 #0 $a African Americans $x History $y To 1863.
650 #0 $a African Americans $x History $y 1863-1877.
```

Title: Voyage to China.

```
651 #0 $a China $x Description and travel.
600 10 $a Smith, John $x Travel $z China.
```

Note: Assign additional headings to biographical works and related material such as anecdotes, correspondence, diaries, interviews, portraits, etc., according to the instructions in H 1330, H 1480, H 1538, H 1678, etc.

LC practice:

9. Implementation. The procedures in this instruction sheet apply mainly to new materials being cataloged. Do not attempt to revise systematically the subject headings assigned to existing records in the LC database. Re-evaluate and revise as necessary those existing records encountered during the course of normal cataloging activities. When assigning a new subdivision from this list for the first time under the name of a person, correct records using a conflicting subdivision under that person in the LC database.

H 1110 Free-Floating Subdivisions: Names of Persons

Note: Most form subdivisions coded $v in this list may also be used as topical subdivisions coded $x when assigned to works ***about*** *the form (see H 1075, sec. 1.d.).*

$x **Abdication, [*date*]** *(H 1078)*
$v **Abstracts** *(H 1205)*
Acting, see **–Dramatic production**; **–Stage history**
$v **Adaptations**
Use under individuals such as literary authors, artists, or composers for collections of adaptations by others of their creative works or for discussions of adaptations. For collections or discussions of an individual's adaptations of themes from others, see **–Sources**.
$x **Adversaries**
Use for discussions of contemporaries who opposed the person's point of view or work.
$x **Aesthetics**
Use for discussions of the individual's philosophy of art or beauty, whether explicitly stated or inferred from his creative works. For the person's knowledge of the aesthetics of others, see **–Knowledge–Aesthetics**.
$x **Alcohol use**
Use for works about the person's use or abuse of alcohol.
See also **–Drug use**
Allegory, see **–Symbolism**
$x **Allusions**
Use for contemporary (person's life span) and early brief references to the person.
See also **–Anecdotes**; **–Quotations**
Ancestry, see **–Family**
$v **Anecdotes**
Use for collections of brief narratives of true incidents from the individual's life.
See also **–Allusions**
Anecdotes, facetiae, satire, etc., see **–Anecdotes**; **–Humor**
$x **Anniversaries, etc.**
Use for works about the anniversary celebration itself. Do not use for works merely published on the occasion of an anniversary.
$x **Anonyms and pseudonyms**

$x **Appreciation** *(May Subd Geog)*

Use under persons active in the fine arts, literature, music, and performing arts for works on public response and reception, praise, etc., of the person's artistic or literary works. For works consisting of critical analysis or interpretation of artistic or literary works without biographical details, see **–Criticism and interpretation**. For works on public opinion about the person, see **–Public opinion**. For works on the person's impact on other persons, groups, movements, or national literatures, see **–Influence**. For works on systems of beliefs and rituals connected with divine persons or saints, see **–Cult**.

$x **Archaeological collections** *(H 1427)*

Use for works about the person's collections of archaeological items or artifacts.

$v **Archives** *(H 1230)*

Use for collections or discussions of documentary materials or records relating to the person's public or private activities, including manuscripts, diaries, correspondence, photographs, or other items of historical interest.

See also **–Correspondence**; **–Diaries**; **–Manuscripts**; **–Notebooks, sketchbooks, etc.**

$v **Art**

Use under persons living before 1400 A.D. for works consisting of reproductions of works of art depicting the person, or works discussing such art. For persons living after 1400, see **–Portraits**. For pictorial representations of the person's written works, see **–Illustrations**.

$x **Art collections** *(H 1427)*

Use for works about the person's own art collection.

$x **Art patronage**

Use for works about the person's support and patronage of the arts.

$x **Assassination**

$x **Assassination attempt, [*date*]** *(H 1078)*

$x **Assassination attempts**

Associates, see **–Friends and associates**

$v **Audio adaptations**

Use for discussions or collections of audio adaptations of the person's creative works.

$v **Audiocassette catalogs** *(H 1361)*

$v **Audiotape catalogs** *(H 1361)*

$x **Authorship**

Use for discussions on the attribution of authorship of works to the person. For discussions of a non-literary person's literary ability and accomplishments, see **–Literary art**.

See also **–Spurious and doubtful works**.

H 1110 Free-Floating Subdivisions: Names of Persons

$x **Authorship** $x **Collaboration**
Autobiography, use **[*name of person*]**
$v **Autographs**
Use for collections or discussions of the person's autographs or handwriting. *Autographs, Spurious*, see **–Forgeries**
$x **Awards**
$v **Bibliography** *(H 1322)*
Use for lists of publications by or about the person.
Biography, use **[*name of person*]**
$x **Birth**
Use for works discussing the events of an individual's birth, including birthdays, the date or year of the person's birth, etc.
See also **–Birthplace**
Birthday books, see **–Calendars**
$x **Birthplace**
$v **Blogs**
Use for blogs by or about the person.
Bones, see **–Relics**; **–Tomb**
$x **Bonsai collections** *(H 1427)*
Use for works about the person's collection of bonsai.
$x **Books and reading** *(H 1333)*
Use for works about written material known to have been read by the person, his or her reading habits and interests, books borrowed from friends or libraries, etc.
See also **–Library**
Burial, see **–Death and burial**
$v **Calendars**
See also **–Quotations**
Canon, see **–Authorship**; **–Chronology**; **–Criticism, Textual**
$x **Captivity, [*dates*]** *(H 1078)*
Use for works discussing periods in which the person was held captive in bondage or confinement, especially under house arrest, as a hostage, or in battle. For works discussing periods in which the person was actually imprisoned in a correctional institution or prisoner of war camp, see **–Imprisonment.**
See also **–Exile**; **–Kidnapping, [*date*]**

$x **Career in [*specific field or discipline*]**

Use for works limited to describing events in the person's occupational life or participation in a profession or vocation. Assign an additional heading for the field. For works discussing the person's actual substantive contributions or accomplishments in a specific field or topic, whether made as a result of a vocation or an avocation, assign a heading for the field or topic and a heading for the person.

See also **–Resignation from office**

Career in politics, see **–Political activity**

$v **Caricatures and cartoons**

Use for collections or discussions of caricatures or pictorial humor about the person.

See also **–Comic books, strips, etc.**

Cartoons, satire, etc., see **–Caricatures and cartoons**; **–Humor**

$v **Catalogs** *(H 1360)*

Use under artists and craftspersons for works listing their art works or crafts which are available or located in particular institutions or places. Also use under persons doing business as sellers under their own names.

See also **–Audiocassette catalogs**; **–Audiotape catalogs**; **–Catalogues raisonnés**; **–Compact disc catalogs**; **–Correspondence–Microform catalogs**; **–Discography**; **–Library–Microform catalogs**; **–Thematic catalogs**

$v **Catalogues raisonnés**

Use for comprehensive listings of an artist's or craftperson's works in one medium or all media, usually chronologically or systematically arranged, and accompanied by descriptive or critical notes.

$x **Censorship** *(May Subd Geog)*

$x **Censures**

Centennial celebrations, etc., see **–Anniversaries, etc.**

Character, see **–Ethics**; **–Psychology**; **–Religion**

$x **Characters**

Use for general works about the characters of a literary author.

$x **Characters** $x **Children, [Jews, Physicians, etc.]**

Use for works about specific groups or categories of characters of a literary author. Assign an additional heading of the type **[*group or category*] in literature**.

H 1110 Free-Floating Subdivisions: Names of Persons

$x **Characters** *$x* **[*name of individual character*]**

Use for works about specific named characters of a literary author. Use the name of the character in uninverted form, for example, **–Characters–Julius Caesar**. If the character is a historical person, assign an additional heading of type **[*name of person*]–In literature**, using the name as established in the authority file. If the character is fictitious, assign an additional heading for the character, as established in accordance with H 1610.

$x **Childhood and youth**

$v **Chronology** *(H 1367)*

Use for works that list by date the events in the life of the person or the person's works, as well as discussions of the chronology of such events or works.

$x **Cipher**

$x **Claims vs. ...**

Use for works about the legal claims filed by the person. Complete the subdivision with the name of the jurisdiction against which the claim was brought.

$x **Clothing***$x* **Coin collections** *(H 1427)*

Use for works about the person's coin collections.

$x **Collectibles** *(May Subd Geog)*

Use for works about items of interest to collectors that are related to the person or portray him or topics associated with him.

See also **–Autographs**; **–Numismatics**; **–Portraits**; **–Posters**

$x **Comedies**

Use for criticism of comedies by a literary author. Do not use under dramatists who write principally comedies.

$v **Comic books, strips, etc.**

Commentaries, see **–Criticism and interpretation**

$v **Compact disc catalogs** *(H 1361)*

Companions, see **–Friends and associates**

$v **Concordances** *(H 1670)*

Use as a form subdivision for indexes to the principal words found in the writings of the person.

$x **Contemporaries**

Use for works about other persons flourishing during the person's life, but not necessarily in close contact with the person

See also **–Adversaries**; **–Friends and associates**

Free-Floating Subdivisions: Names of Places H 1140

***BACKGROUND**: Until 1985, the **Subject Cataloging Manual** and **Library of Congress Subject Headings** provided two separate lists of subdivisions used under places, one for cities (H 1135) and one for regions, countries, etc. (H 1145). When the "city flip" was discontinued (cf. H 832), it was possible to resolve the few remaining discrepancies between the two lists and to consolidate them into a single list of subdivisions used, as applicable, under regions, countries, cities, etc. This instruction sheet superseded and replaced H 1135 and H 1145.*

***TYPES OF HEADINGS COVERED**:* The subdivisions listed below may be used, within the limitations of the usage notes, as free-floating subdivisions under headings for geographic place names including continents; regions; islands; countries; states, provinces, and equivalent jurisdictions; counties and other local jurisdictions larger than cities; and headings for metropolitan areas, suburban areas, and regions based on names of cities. They may also be used, except as noted, under names of cities established as valid RDA name headings, under names of extinct cities established as subject headings (in accordance with the provisions of H 715), and under names of city sections, districts, or quarters (in accordance with the provisions of H 720). Appropriate subdivisions may also be used under headings for geographic features and designated areas, including parks, reserves, gardens, streets and roads, refugee camps, etc., or regions based on geographic features following the guidelines for the assignment of such headings given in H 760. Appropriate subdivisions may also be used under names of bodies of water. For additional subdivisions used only under names of bodies of water, streams, etc., see H 1145.5. This list also covers the jurisdictional name headings established to represent the governments of tribes recognized by the United States government, for example, **Spokane Tribe of the Spokane Reservation, Washington**. This list does not cover names of celestial bodies and other astronomical features. This list also does not cover international organizations and corporate bodies that are not jurisdictions, for example, **Commonwealth of Independent States**, nor the corporate name headings that represent government agencies that control parks, etc., for example, **Yosemite National Park (Agency : U.S.)**.

CHRONOLOGICAL SUBDIVISIONS: In 1997 restrictions were lifted on use of subdivisions of the type **−16th, [17th, 18th, 19th, 20th, 21st] century** under **−Civilization** and **−Intellectual life**, thereby allowing their use under geographic headings at any level. At the same time, subdivisions of the type **−16th [17th, 18th, 19th, 20th, 21st] century** were added under the subdivisions **−Economic conditions**; **−History**; **−History, Military**; **−History, Naval**; **−Politics and government**; **−Social conditions**; and **−Social life and customs**. These subdivisions were added to facilitate subject access by time period, primarily by authorizing their free-floating use under places smaller than countries, where chronological subdivisions were previously not established or used. These free-floating century subdivisions should be used with caution under names of countries and other geographic entities where chronological subdivisions for specific time periods have been established. Assign these century subdivisions only where there is no conflict with chronological subdivisions established in the subject authority file.

H 1140 Free-Floating Subdivisions: Names of Places

Note: Most form subdivisions coded $v in this list may also be used as topical subdivisions coded $x when assigned to works ***about*** *the form (see H 1075, sec. 1.d.).*

$x **Abstracting and indexing** *(May Subd Geog)* *(H 1205; H 1670)*
$v **Abstracts** *(H 1205)*
$x **Administrative and political divisions**
$x **Aerial exploration**
Do not use under cities.
$v **Aerial film and video footage**
$v **Aerial photographs** *(H 1210.5)*
$v **Aerial views** *(H 1210.5)*
$x **Altitudes**
Do not use under cities.
$v **Anecdotes**
$x **Annexation to [. . .]**
Do not use under cities.
$x **Anniversaries, etc.**
$x **Antiquities** *(H 1225; H 1845)*
Do not use under names of extinct cities.
$x **Antiquities** *$x* **Collection and preservation** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use for methods of collection.
Do not use under names of extinct cities.
$x **Antiquities** *$x* **Collectors and collecting** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use for collectors of antiquities and history of collecting.
Do not use under names of extinct cities.
$x **Antiquities, Byzantine** *(H 1225)*
Do not use under names of extinct cities.
$x **Antiquities, Celtic** *(H 1225)*
Do not use under names of extinct cities.
$x **Antiquities, Germanic** *(H 1225)*
Do not use under names of extinct cities.
$x **Antiquities, Phoenician** *(H 1225)*
Do not use under names of extinct cities.
$x **Antiquities, Roman** *(H 1225)*
Do not use under names of extinct cities.
$x **Antiquities, Slavic** *(H 1225)*
Do not use under names of extinct cities.
$x **Antiquities, Turkish** *(H 1225)*
Do not use under names of extinct cities.
$x **Appropriations and expenditures** *(H 1624)*

$x **Appropriations and expenditures** *$x* **Effect of inflation on** *(H 1580)*
$x **Archival resources** *(H 1230)*
$x **Area**
Use for descriptions of the physical area of a place as well as for works on measurement of the area of a place.
$x **Armed Forces** *(May Subd Geog)*
Use only under countries and under regions larger than countries.
See H 1159 for further subdivisions used under military services.
$v **Audiocassette catalogs** *(H 1361)*
$v **Audiotape catalogs** *(H 1361)*
$v **Bio-bibliography** *(H 1328)*
$v **Biography** *(H 1330; H 1845)*
See also **–History–[*period subdivision*]–Biography**
$v **Biography** *$v* **Anecdotes**
$v **Biography** *$v* **Caricatures and cartoons**
$v **Biography** *$v* **Dictionaries**
$v **Biography** *$v* **Dictionaries** *$x* **French, [Italian, etc.]**
$x **Biography** *$x* **History and criticism**
$v **Biography** *$v* **Humor**
$v **Biography** *$v* **Pictorial works** *(H 1935)*
$v **Biography** *$v* **Portraits** *(H 1935)*
$x **Biography** *$v* **Sources**
$v **Book reviews** *(H 2021)*
$x **Boundaries** *(May Subd Geog)* *(H 1333.5)*
$x **Buildings, structures, etc.** *(H 1334; H 1334.5)*
Use only under cities and city sections.
$x **Buildings, structures, etc.–Conservation and restoration**
Use only under cities and city sections.
$v **Calendars**
$x **Capital and capitol**
Do not use under cities.
$v **Census** *(H 1366)*
$x **Census** *$x* **Law and legislation** *(H 1705)*
$v **Census, [*date*]** *(H 1366)*
$x **Centennial celebrations, etc.**
$v **Charters**
Use only under states, counties, cities, etc., of the United States and under indigenous jurisdictions of the United States.
$v **Charters, grants, privileges**
Use only under countries, etc., other than the United States, and under cities other than

those of the United States.

$x **Church history** *(H 1845)*
$x **Church history** *$y* **16th century**
$x **Church history** *$y* **17th century**
$x **Church history** *$y* **18th century**
$x **Church history** *$y* **19th century**
$x **Church history** *$y* **20th century**
$x **Church history** *$y* **21st century**
$x **Civilization** *(H 1370)*
$x **Civilization** *$y* **16th century** *(H 1370)*
$x **Civilization** *$y* **17th century** *(H 1370)*
$x **Civilization** *$y* **18th century** *(H 1370)*
$x **Civilization** *$y* **19th century** *(H 1370)*
$x **Civilization** *$y* **20th century** *(H 1370)*
$x **Civilization** *$y* **21st century** *(H 1370)*
$x **Civilization** *$x* **Foreign influences** *(H 1370)*
$x **Civilization** *$x* **Philosophy**
$x **Claims**
$x **Claims vs.** ...
$x **Climate**
$x **Climate** *$v* **Observations**
$x **Colonial influence**
$x **Colonies**

[name of country]–Colonies may also be used under topical headings, for example, **Education–Great Britain–Colonies**.

See H 1149.5 for further subdivisions.

$x **Colonization**
$x **Commerce** *(May Subd Geog)*

Use for works on foreign or domestic trade of the place. For works on reciprocal trade between countries, cities, etc., assign a combination of headings:
[***place A***]**–Commerce–**[***place B***]; [***place B***]**–Commerce–**[***place A***].

$x **Commercial policy**

Use only under countries and regions larger than countries.

$v Nomenclature (Popular) *$x* French, [Italian, etc.][16]
$x Nutrition *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Nutrition *$x* Requirements *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Odor *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Orientation *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Origin
$x Parasites *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Parasites *$x* Biological control *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Parasites *$x* Control *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Parasites *$x* Control *$x* Environmental aspects *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Parasites *$v* Identification
$x Parasites *$x* Life cycles *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Parasites *$x* Life cycles *$x* Climatic factors *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Parasites *$x* Molecular aspects
$x Parturition *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Pathogens *(May Subd Geog)*
$v Pedigrees
$v Performance records
$x Photographic identification *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Phylogeny
$x Phylogeny *$x* Molecular aspects
$x Physiology *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Population viability analysis *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Predators of *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Predators of *$x* Control *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Predators of *$x* Ecology *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Pregnancy *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Processing *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Productivity *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Psychic aspects *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Psychological aspects[17]
$x Psychological testing *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Psychology[18]
$x Purchasing *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Quality *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Quarantine *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Racial analysis *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Radio tracking *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Radioactive contamination *(May Subd Geog)*

H 1147 Pattern Headings: Animals

$x Recolonization *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Reintroduction *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Religious aspects
$x Religious aspects *$x* Buddhism, [Christianity, etc.]
$x Reproduction[19]
$x Reproduction *$x* Climatic factors *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Reproduction *$x* Effect of altitude on *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Reproduction *$x* Effect of light on *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Reproduction *$x* Endocrine aspects
$x Reproduction *$x* Regulation
$x Respiration *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Respiratory organs
$x Schooling *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Seasonal distribution *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Seasonal variations *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Selection *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Sense organs
$x Services for *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Sex ratio *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Sexing *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Sexual behavior *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Showing *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Size *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Spawning *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Speciation *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Speed
$x Spermatozoa
$x Spermatozoa *$x* Abnormalities *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Spermatozoa *$x* Morphology
$x Spermatozoa *$x* Motility
$x Stranding *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Summering *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Surgery *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Surgery *$x* Complications *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Surgery *$x* Nursing *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Symbolic aspects *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Technological innovations *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Territoriality *(May Subd Geog)*

Pattern Headings: Individual Educational Institutions H 1151

PATTERN: **Harvard University**

TYPES OF HEADINGS COVERED BY THE PATTERN: Headings for names of individual educational institutions at all levels and of all types, including systems, which are established as corporate bodies in the name authority file. *Examples:* **Anne Arundel Community College**; **Muleshoe Junior High School**; **Medical University of South Carolina**; **Union Theological Seminary (New York, N.Y.)**; **University of California (System)**. The category does not include headings for types of educational institutions, which are covered by H 1151.5.

RELATION TO H 1105: Subdivisions on the list of free-floating subdivisions used under names of individual corporate bodies, H 1105, are also free-floating under individual educational institutions where there is no conflict. This list contains additional subdivisions appropriate for educational institutions.

CONFLICTS: Any subdivision listed here can be used as a free-floating subdivision under any heading belonging to this category if it is appropriate and no conflict exists in the subject authority file. Subject authority records may exist for headings employing variant phrases or subdivisions equivalent to subdivisions on this list.

LC practice:
If an exceptional variant form is to be retained, make a UF reference from the equivalent free-floating subdivision form following the procedures in H 195 if the reference does not yet exist. Otherwise, submit a proposal to change the variant form along with all bibliographic records requiring correction following the procedures in H 193.

> *Note: Most form subdivisions coded $v in this list may also be used as topical subdivisions coded $x when assigned to works* ***about*** *the form (see H 1075, sec. 1.d.).*

$x Administration
$x Admission
$v Aerial views
$x Alumni and alumnae[1] *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Bands
$x Baseball

H 1151 Pattern Headings: Individual Educational Institutions

$x Basketball
$x Benefactors[1]
$x Buildings
$x Buildings *$x* Barrier-free design
$x Buildings *$x* Remodeling for other use
$x Choral organizations
$x Curricula
$x Curricula *$v* Catalogs
$x Degrees
$x Dissertations
$x Dissertations *$v* Style manuals
$x Employees[1]
$x Entrance examinations
$x Entrance requirements
$x Entrance requirements *$x* [*subject*]
$x Examinations
$x Examinations *$x* [*subject*]
$x Faculty[1]
$x Faculty housing
$x Finance
$x Football
$x Foreign students[1]
$x Freshmen[1]
$x Funds and scholarships
$x Golf
$x Graduate students[1]
$x Graduate work
$x Gymnastics
$x Hockey
$x Honor system
$x Lacrosse
$x Language
$x Mascots
$x Open admission
$x Orchestras
$x Parking
$x Professional staff[1]

$x Public services
$v Regulations
$x Riot, [*date*][2]
$x Riots
$x Rowing
$x Rugby football
$x Sanitary affairs
$x Soccer
$x Softball
$x Sports
$x Student housing
$x Student strike, [*date*][2]
$x Students[1]
$x Students $v Yearbooks
$x Swimming
$x Tennis
$x Track and field
$x Tuition
$x Undergraduates
$x Volleyball
$x Wrestling

NOTES

[1]See H 1100 for further subdivisions used under classes of persons.

[2]See H 1078 for instructions on dates in subdivisions for specific events.

$x Apposition
$x Archaisms
$x Article
$x Aspect
$x Aspiration
$x Asyndeton
$x Augmentatives
$x Auxiliary verbs
$x Business English[2]
$x Capitalization
$x Case
$x Case grammar
$x Cataphora
$x Categorial grammar
$x Causative
$v Classification[3]
$x Classifiers
$x Clauses
$x Clitics
$x Cognate words
$x Cognate words $x Dutch, [German, etc.]
$x Collective nouns
$x Comparative clauses
$x Comparison
$x Complement
$x Composition and exercises
$x Compound words
$x Computer-assisted instruction
$x Computer-assisted instruction for foreign speakers
$x Computer-assisted instruction for French, [Spanish, etc.] speakers
$x Concessive clauses
$x Conditionals
$x Conjunctions
$x Connectives
$x Consonants
$x Context
$x Contraction
$v Conversation and phrase books
$v Conversation and phrase books $x English[1]

H 1154 Pattern Headings: Languages

$v Conversation and phrase books $x French, [Italian, etc.]
$v Conversation and phrase books $x Polyglot
$v Conversation and phrase books (for accountants)
$v Conversation and phrase books (for air pilots)
$v Conversation and phrase books (for animal specialists)
$v Conversation and phrase books (for bank employees)
$v Conversation and phrase books (for beauty operators)
$v Conversation and phrase books (for businesspeople)
$v Conversation and phrase books (for caregivers)
$v Conversation and phrase books (for clergy, etc.)
$v Conversation and phrase books (for computer industry employees)
$v Conversation and phrase books (for construction industry employees)
$v Conversation and phrase books (for correctional personnel)
$v Conversation and phrase books (for dental personnel)
$v Conversation and phrase books (for diplomats)
$v Conversation and phrase books (for domestics)
$v Conversation and phrase books (for farmers)
$v Conversation and phrase books (for fire fighters)
$v Conversation and phrase books (for first responders)
$v Conversation and phrase books (for fishers)
$v Conversation and phrase books (for flight attendants)
$v Conversation and phrase books (for gardeners)
$v Conversation and phrase books (for geologists)
$v Conversation and phrase books (for gourmets)
$v Conversation and phrase books (for homowners)
$v Conversation and phrase books (for landscaping industry employees)
$v Conversation and phrase books (for lawyers)
$v Conversation and phrase books (for library employees)
$v Conversation and phrase books (for mathematicians)
$v Conversation and phrase books (for medical personnel)
$v Conversation and phrase books (for merchants)
$v Conversation and phrase books (for meteorologists)
$v Conversation and phrase books (for museum employees)
$v Conversation and phrase books (for musicians, musicologists, etc.)
$v Conversation and phrase books (for nutritionists)
$v Conversation and phrase books (for personnel department employees)
$v Conversation and phrase books (for petroleum workers)
$v Conversation and phrase books (for police)
$v Conversation and phrase books (for professionals)

$v Conversation and phrase books (for restaurant and hotel personnel)
$v Conversation and phrase books (for sailors)
$v Conversation and phrase books (for school employees)
$v Conversation and phrase books (for secretaries)
$v Conversation and phrase books (for social workers)
$v Conversation and phrase books (for soldiers, etc.)
$v Conversation and phrase books (for tourism industry employees)
$x Coordinate constructions
$x Declension
$x Definiteness
$x Deixis
$x Deletion
$x Demonstratives
$x Denominatives
$x Dependency grammar
$x Determiners
$x Diacritics[1]
$x Dialectology
$x Dialects *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Dialects *$v* Conversation and phrase books
$x Dialects *$v* Glossaries, vocabularies, etc.
$x Dialects *$x* Grammar
$x Dialects *$x* Lexicology
$x Dialects *$x* Morphology
$x Dialects *$x* Mutual intelligibility
$x Dialects *$x* Phonetics
$x Dialects *$x* Phonology
$x Dialects *$x* Research *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Dialects *$x* Research *$x* Law and legislation[4] *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Dialects *$x* Syntax
$x Dialects *$v* Texts
$x Diction
$v Dictionaries[5]
$v Dictionaries *$v* Early works to 1700
$v Dictionaries *$x* French, [Italian, etc.]
$v Dictionaries *$x* Polyglot
$v Dictionaries, Juvenile[5]
$v Dictionaries, Juvenile *$x* Hebrew, [Italian, etc.]
$x Diminutives

H 1154 Pattern Headings: Languages

$x Diphthongs
$x Direct object
$x Discourse analysis
$x Dissimilation
$x Elision
$x Ellipsis
$x Emphasis
$x Enclitics
$x Epithets[1]
$x Eponyms
$x Ergative constructions
$x Errors of usage
$x Etymology
$x Etymology $x Names
$x Euphemism
$x Exclamations
$v Exercises for dictation
$x Existential constructions
$x Figures of speech[1]
$v Films for foreign speakers
$v Films for French, [Spanish, etc.] speakers
$z Foreign countries
$x Foreign elements
$x Foreign elements $x French, [Greek, Latin, etc.]
$x Foreign words and phrases
$x Foreign words and phrases $x Arabic, [Italian, etc.]
$x Function words
$x Gallicisms
$x Gemination
$x Gender
$x Gerund
$x Gerundive
$x Globalization
$v Glossaries, vocabularies, etc.[5]
$v Glossaries, vocabularies, etc. $x Polyglot
$x Government
$x Government jargon
$x Gradation
$x Grammar

$x Grammar $x Theory, etc.
$x Grammar, Comparative
$x Grammar, Comparative $x French, [Latin, etc.]
$x Grammar, Generative
$x Grammar, Historical
$x Grammatical categories
$x Grammaticalization
$x Graphemics
$x Haplology
$x Heteronyms
$x Hiatus
$x History[6]
$x Homonyms
$x Honorific
$x Ideophone
$x Idioms
$x Imperative
$x Indeclinable words
$x Indicative
$x Indirect discourse
$x Indirect object
$x Infinitival constructions
$x Infinitive
$x Infixes
$x Inflection
$x Influence on foreign languages
$x Influence on French, [Italian, etc.]
$x Intensification
$x Interjections
$x Interrogative
$x Intonation
$x Jargon
$x Labiality
$x Lexicography
$x Lexicology[1]
$x Lexicology, Historical[1]
$x Locative constructions
$x Machine translating *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Markedness

H 1154 Pattern Headings: Languages

$x Medical English[2]
$x Metonyms
$x Metrics and rhythmics[7]
$x Mimetic words
$x Modality
$x Monosyllables
$x Mood
$x Morphemics
$x Morphology
$x Morphophonemics
$x Morphosyntax
$x Mutation
$x Mutual intelligibility[3]
$x Nasality
$x Negatives
$x Neutralization
$x New words
$x Nominals
$x Noun
$x Noun phrase
$x Null subject
$x Number
$x Numerals
$x Obscene words
$x Obsolete words
$x Onomatopoeic words
$x Orthography and spelling
$x Palatalization
$x Paragraphs
$x Parallelism
$x Paraphrase
$x Parenthetical constructions
$x Paronyms
$x Parsing
$x Participle
$x Particles
$x Partitives
$x Parts of speech
$x Passive voice

$x Pejoration
$x Person
$x Phonemics
$v Phonetic transcriptions
$x Phonetics
$x Phonology
$x Phonology, Comparative
$x Phonology, Comparative *$x* French, [German, etc.]
$x Phonology, Historical
$x Phraseology
$x Polysemy
$x Possessives
$x Postpositions
$x Prepositional phrases
$x Prepositions
$x Pronominals
$x Pronoun
$x Pronunciation
$x Pronunciation by foreign speakers
$x Prosodic analysis
$x Provincialisms *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Punctuation
$x Quantifiers
$x Quantity
$v Readers[1] *(H 1975)*
$v Readers *$v* [*form*][1] *(H 1975)*
$v Readers *$x* [*topic*][1] *(H 1975)*
$v Readers for new literates[1]
$x Reduplication
$x Reference
$x Reflexives
$x Reform
$x Relational grammar
$x Relative clauses
$x Religious aspects
$x Religious aspects *$x* Baptists, [Catholic Church, etc.]
$x Religious aspects *$x* Buddhism, [Christianity, etc.]
$x Remedial teaching *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Resultative constructions

H 1154 Pattern Headings: Languages

$v Reverse indexes[5]
$x Revival
$x Rhetoric
$x Rhyme
$x Rhythm[8]
$x Roots
$v Self-instruction
$x Semantics
$x Semantics, Historical
$x Sentences
$x Sex differences *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Slang
$x Social aspects[9] *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Sonorants
$v Sound recordings for foreign speakers
$v Sound recordings for French, [Spanish, etc.] speakers
$x Spectral analysis
$x Spoken English *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Spoken French, [Japanese, etc.][1] *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Standardization
$x Study and teaching *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Study and teaching *$x* African American students
$x Study and teaching *$x* Bilingual method
$x Study and teaching *$x* Foreign speakers
$x Study and teaching *$x* Foreign speakers *$x* Audio-visual aids
$x Study and teaching *$x* French, [Spanish, etc.] speakers
$x Study and teaching *$x* Immersion method
$x Study and teaching (Continuing education) *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Study and teaching (Continuing education) *$x* Foreign speakers
$x Study and teaching (Continuing education) *$x* French, [Spanish, etc.] speakers
$x Study and teaching (Early childhood) *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Study and teaching (Early childhood) *$x* Foreign speakers
$x Study and teaching (Early childhood) *$x* French, [Spanish, etc.] speakers
$x Study and teaching (Elementary) *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Study and teaching (Elementary) *$x* Foreign speakers
$x Study and teaching (Elementary) *$x* French, [Spanish, etc.] speakers
$x Study and teaching (Higher) *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Study and teaching (Higher) *$x* Foreign speakers
$x Study and teaching (Higher) *$x* French, [Spanish, etc.] speakers

$x Study and teaching (Preschool) *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Study and teaching (Preschool) *$x* Foreign speakers
$x Study and teaching (Preschool) *$x* French, [Spanish, etc.] speakers
$x Study and teaching (Primary) *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Study and teaching (Primary) *$x* Foreign speakers
$x Study and teaching (Primary) *$x* French, [Spanish, etc.] speakers
$x Study and teaching (Secondary) *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Study and teaching (Secondary) *$x* Foreign speakers
$x Study and teaching (Secondary) *$x* French, [Spanish, etc.] speakers
$x Style
$x Subjectless constructions
$x Subjunctive
$x Subordinate constructions
$x Substitution
$x Suffixes and prefixes
$x Suppletion
$x Switch-reference
$x Syllabication
$x Synonyms and antonyms
$x Syntax
$x Technical English[2]
$x Technical English *$x* Translating into French, [German, etc.]
$x Tempo
$x Temporal clauses
$x Temporal constructions
$x Tense
$v Terms and phrases[5]
$v Textbooks
$v Textbooks for English, [French, etc.] speakers[10]
$v Textbooks for foreign speakers
$v Textbooks for foreign speakers *$x* English[1]
$v Textbooks for foreign speakers *$x* German, [Italian, etc.]
$v Texts[11]
$x Texts *$x* Dating[11]
$x Topic and comment
$x Transcription *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Transitivity
$x Translating *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Translating into French, [German, etc.]

H 1154 Pattern Headings: Languages

$x Transliteration
$x Transliteration into Korean, [Russian, etc.]
$x Transmutation
$x Usage
$x Variation *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Verb
$x Verb phrase
$x Verbals
$x Versification[8]
Video recordings for foreign speakers, see **--Films for foreign speakers**
Video recordings for French, [Spanish, etc.] speakers, see **--Films for French, [Spanish, etc.] speakers**
$x Vocabulary[1]
$x Vocalization[12]
$x Vocational guidance *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Voice
$x Vowel gradation
$x Vowel reduction
$x Vowels[13]
$x Word formation
$x Word frequency
$x Word order
$x Writing
$x Written English[2] *(May Subd Geog)*

NOTES

[1]Use only under languages other than English.

[2]Not a free-floating subdivision. Establish headings for **[...] language−Business [...]**; **[...] language−Medical [...]**; **[...] language−Technical [...]**; and **[...] language−Written [...]** as needed.

[3]Use only under groups of languages.

[4]See H 1154.5 for further subdivisions used under legal topics.

Pattern Headings: Literary Works Entered Under Title H 1155.8

PATTERN: **Beowulf**

TYPES OF HEADINGS COVERED BY THE PATTERN: Headings for literary works entered directly under uniform title. *Examples:* **Arabian nights**; **Chanson de Roland**; **Charlemagne (Play)**; **Guillaume (Chanson de geste)**. The subject cataloging of anonymous sacred classics, for example, **Bible**; **Qur'an**; **Vedas**, differs substantially and should not be confused with the treatment of the literary works discussed here. For free-floating subdivisions used under the uniform titles of sacred works, see H 1188. For subdivisions used under literary works entered under author, see H 1155.6.

CONFLICTS: Any subdivision listed here can be used as a free-floating subdivision under any heading belonging to the category if it is appropriate and no conflict exists in the subject authority file. Subject authority records may exist for headings employing variant phrases or subdivisions equivalent to subdivisions on this list.

LC practice:
If an exceptional variant form is to be retained, make a UF reference from the equivalent free-floating subdivision form following the procedures in H 195 if the reference does not yet exist. Otherwise, submit a proposal to change the variant form along with all bibliographic records requiring correction following the procecures in H 193.

SPECIAL PROVISIONS: The subdivisions listed in H 1095 as authorized for use under subjects in general, for example, **–Bibliography** or **–Exhibitions**, or under individual works (author-title or title entries), for example, **–Concordances** or **–Sources**, are also free-floating under literary works. The additional subdivisions listed below follow the usage given in the individual literary authors list (H 1110). Do not use the subdivision **–Criticism and interpretation** under entries for literary works. For a work of *general criticism and interpretation* or a discussion combining the approaches of several subdivisions, assign as a subject heading the uniform title of the literary work *without* subdivision.

H 1155.8 Pattern Headings: Literary Works Entered Under Title

Note: Most form subdivisions coded $v in this list may also be used as topical subdivisions coded $x when assigned to works ***about*** *the form (see H 1075, sec. 1.d.).*

$v Adaptations
$x Appreciation *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Authorship
$x Characters
$x Criticism, Textual
$x Dramatic production
$v Film adaptations
Film and video adaptations, see **--Film adaptations**
$v Illustrations
$x Influence
$x Language
$x Language *$v* Glossaries, etc.
$x Manuscripts
$v Manuscripts *$v* Facsimiles
$v Parodies, imitations, etc.
$x Style
$v Television adaptations
$v Translations
$x Translations *$x* History and criticism
$v Translations into French, [German, etc.]
$x Translations into French, [German, etc.] *$x* History and criticism
$x Versification

$x Expansion and contraction *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Extrusion *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Fatigue *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Finishing *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Finishing $x Waste disposal *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Finishing $x Waste minimization *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Fire testing *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Fires and fire prevention *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Flammability *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Fluid dynamics
$x Formability
$x Fracture *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Galvanomagnetic properties *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Hardenability *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Heat treatment *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Heating *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Helium content *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Hot working *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Hydrogen content *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Hydrogen embrittlement
$x Imaging *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Impact testing *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Inclusions *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Law and legislation[2] *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Machinability
$x Magnetic properties *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Mechanical properties
$x Metallography[3]
$x Metallurgy[3]
$x Microbiology *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Microscopy[4] *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Microstructure
$x Mixing *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Moisture *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Nitrogen content *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Nondestructive testing *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Optical properties
$x Oxygen content *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Painting *(May Subd Geog)*

H 1158 Pattern Headings: Materials

$x Penetration resistance
$x Permeability
$x Physiological effect *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Pickling *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Pickling *$x* By-products
$x Pickling *$x* Waste disposal *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Plastic properties
$x Prices *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Pump placing *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Quality control
$x Quenching *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Radiography *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Rapid solidification processing *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Recycling *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Refining *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Religious aspects
$x Religious aspects *$x* Buddhism, [Christianity, etc.]
$x Sampling *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Service life *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Skid resistance *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Solubility *(May Subd Geog)*
$v Specifications *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Spectra
$x Stress corrosion *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Surfaces
$x Surfaces *$x* Defects *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Surfaces *$x* Optical properties
$x Testing
$x Texture *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Thermal conductivity *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Thermal fatigue *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Thermal properties *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Thermomechanical properties
$x Thermomechanical treatment *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Toxicology *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Transport properties *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Transportation *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Transportation *$x* Law and legislation[2] *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Tritium content *(May Subd Geog)*

$x Viscosity *(May Subd Geog)*
$x War use *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Weldability *(May Subd Geog)*

NOTES

[1]Not valid under the heading **Metals**.

[2]See H 1154.5 for further subdivisions used under legal topics.

[3]Not valid under the heading **Metals**. Use only under individual metals and groups of metals.

[4]Not valid under the heading **Metals**. Use under individual materials and groups of materials other than metals. Use **–Metallography** under individual metals and groups of metals.

PATTERN: **Bible**

TYPES OF HEADINGS COVERED BY THE PATTERN: Headings for the uniform titles of individual sacred works or scriptures from all religions, including their individual parts. Also included are uniform titles for apocryphal works. *Examples:* **Book of Mormon**; **Qur'an; Talmud**; **Tripitaka**; **Vedas**; **Bible. Apocrypha. Wisdom of Solomon**; **Bible. Gospels**; **Sermon on the mount**; **Beatitudes**; **Epistle of Barnabas**. The category does not include headings for individual non-sacred liturgical or theological works, nor form headings for collections of sacred or religious works. For subdivisions used under the uniform titles of secular classics, see H 1155.8.

CONFLICTS: Any subdivision listed here can be used as a free-floating subdivision under any heading belonging to the category if it is appropriate and no conflict exists in the subject authority file. Subject authority records may exist for headings employing variant phrases or subdivisions equivalent to subdivisions on this list.

LC practice:
If an exceptional variant form is to be retained, make a UF reference from the equivalent free-floating subdivision form following the procedures in H 195 if the reference does not yet exist. Otherwise, submit a proposal to change the variant form along with all bibliographic records requiring correction following the procedures in H 193.

> *Note: Most form subdivisions coded $v in this list may also be used as topical subdivisions coded $x when assigned to works* ***about*** *the form (see H 1075, sec. 1.d.).*

$v Abridgments
$x Abstracting and indexing *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Accents and accentuation[1]
$x Allegorical interpretations
$v Anecdotes
$x Antiquities
$x Appreciation *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Authorship
$x Authorship *$x* Date of authorship
$x Bahai interpretations
$v Biography
$v Biography *$v* Sermons

H 1188 Pattern Headings: Sacred Works

$x Black interpretations
$x Buddhist interpretations
$x Canon
$x Canonical criticism
$v Caricatures and cartoons
$v Children's sermons
$x Children's use *(May Subd Geog)*
$v Chronology
$v Comic books, strips, etc.
$v Commentaries
$x Commentaries *$x* History and criticism
$v Comparative studies
$v Concordances
$v Concordances, English
$v Condordances, English *$x* Authorized, [Living Bible, Revised Standard, etc.]
$v Concordances, French, [German, etc.]
$v Controversial literature
$x Controversial literature *$x* History and criticism
$x Copies, Curious
$x Criticism, Form
$x Criticism, interpretation, etc. *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Criticism, interpretation, etc. *$x* History
$x Criticism, interpretation, etc. *$x* History *$y* Early church, ca. 30-600
$x Criticism, interpretation, etc. *$x* History *$y* Middle Ages, 600-1500
$x Criticism, interpretation, etc. *$x* History *$y* Modern period, 1500-
$x Criticism, interpretation, etc. *$x* History *$y* 16th century
$x Criticism, interpretation, etc. *$x* History *$y* 17th century
$x Criticism, interpretation, etc. *$x* History *$y* 18th century
$x Criticism, interpretation, etc. *$x* History *$y* 19th century
$x Criticism, interpretation, etc. *$x* History *$y* 20th century
$x Criticism, interpretation, etc. *$x* History *$y* 21st century
$x Criticism, interpretation, etc., Jewish[1]
$x Criticism, Narrative
$x Criticism, Redaction
$x Criticism, Textual
$v Cross references
$v Devotional literature
$x Devotional use
$x Editions, Curious
$x Evidences, authority, etc.

$v Examinations, questions, etc.
$x Extra-canonical parallels
$x Feminist criticism *(May Subd Geog)*
$v Folklore
$x Gay interpretations
$x Geography
$v Harmonies
$x Harmonies *$x* History and criticism
$v Harmonies, English, [French, German, etc.]
$x Harmonies, English, [French, German, etc.] *$x* History and criticism
$x Hermeneutics
$x Hindu interpretations
$x Historiography
$x History
$x History of Biblical events
$x History of Biblical events *$v* Art
$x History of contemporary events
$x Homiletical use
$v Humor
$v Illustrations
$x In literature
$x Influence
$x Influence *$x* Medieval civilization
$x Influence *$x* Modern civilization
$x Influence *$x* Slavic civilization
$x Influence *$x* Western civilization
$x Inspiration
$v Interlinear translations
$v Interlinear translations, English, [French, etc.]
$v Introductions
$x Islamic interpretations
$v Juvenile humor
$x Language, style
$v Legends
$v Liturgical lessons, Dutch, [English, etc.]
$x Liturgical use *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Manuscripts
$x Manuscripts *$x* Paragraphs
$x Manuscripts, English, [Latin, Aramaic, etc.]

H 1188 Pattern Headings: Sacred Works

$x Manuscripts (Papyri)
$v Marginal readings
$v Meditations
$x Memorizing
$x Mnemonic devices
$x Numerical division
$v Outlines, syllabi, etc.
$x Parables
$x Paragraphs
$v Parallel versions, English, [French, etc.]
$v Paraphrases
$x Paraphrases *$x* History and criticism
$v Paraphrases, English, [French, German, etc.]
$x Paraphrases, English, [French, German, etc.] *$x* History and criticism
$v Parodies, imitations, etc.
$x Philosophy
$v Picture Bibles
$v Postcolonial criticism *(May Subd Geog)*
$v Prayers
$x Prayers *$x* History and criticism
$v Prefaces
$x Prophecies
$x Prophecies *$v* Chronology
$x Prophecies *$x* [*subject of prophecy*]
$x Psychology
$x Publication and distribution *(May Subd Geog)*
$v Quotations
$v Quotations, Early
$v Quotations in rabbinical literature[1]
$v Quotations in the New Testament[1]
$x Reader-response criticism
$x Reading *(May Subd Geog)*
$v Reference editions
$x Relation to Matthew, [Jeremiah, etc.][2]
$x Relation to the Old Testament[3]
$v Sermons
$x Sermons *$v* Outlines, syllabi, etc.
$x Social scientific criticism *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Societies, etc.
$x Socio-rhetorical criticism *(May Subd Geog)*

$x Structuralist criticism *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Study and teaching *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Study and teaching *$x* Baptists, [Catholic Church, etc.]
$x Teenagers' use *(May Subd Geog)*
$v Terminology
$x Terminology *$x* Pronunciation
$v Textbooks
$x Theology
$x Titles of books
$x Translating *(May Subd Geog)*
$x Use
$x Use in hymns
$x Versions[4]
$x Versions *$x* Authorized, [Living Bible, Revised Standard, etc.]
$x Versions, African, [Indic, Slavic, etc.][5]
$x Versions, Baptist
$x Versions, Catholic
$x Versions, Catholic vs. Protestant
$x Versions, Hussite
$x Versions, Jehovah's Witnesses

NOTES

[1]Use only under **Bible. Old Testament** or individual parts or books of the Old Testament.

[2]Use only under individual books or groups of books of the Bible. Make a duplicate entry under the reverse. *Example*:

```
630 00 $a Bible. $p Psalms $x Relation to Jeremiah.
630 00 $a Bible. $p Jeremiah $x Relation to Psalms.
```

[3]Use only under the New Testament or under individual books or groups of books of the New Testament. Make a duplicate entry under the reverse. *Example:*

```
630 00 $a Bible. $p Matthew $x Relation to the Old Testament.
630 00 $a Bible. $p Old Testament $x Relation to Matthew.
```

[4]See H 1300 for instructions on the use of the subdivision **–Versions**.

[5]Assign the adjectival qualifier for groups of languages only. For works on translations of the Bible into individual languages, assign: **Bible. [*language*]–Versions**. For works on particular translations, use **Bible. [*language*]–Versions–[*name of version*]**, for example, **Bible. English–Versions–Authorized**.

Contents of Volume Three

Special Topics, Materials, Subdivisions, etc.

H 1205	Abstracts
H 1206.5	Acronyms
H 1210	Addresses, Essays, Lectures
H 1210.5	Aerial and Space Photography
H 1211	Airports
H 1223	Arabs
H 1225	Archaeological Works
H 1230	Archives and Archival Resources
H 1250	Art and Fine Art
H 1255	Artistic Photography
H 1265	Awards
H 1285	Battles
H 1295	Bible: Special Topics
H 1300	Bible and Other Sacred Works
H 1322	Bibliographies about Individual Persons
H 1325	Bibliography of Bibliographies
H 1328	Bio-bibliography
H 1330	Biography
H 1332	Biological Names
H 1333	Books and Reading
H 1333.5	Boundaries
H 1334	Buildings and Other Structures
H 1334.5	Buildings and Structures in Cities: Assignment of Headings
H 1350	Case Studies and Cases
H 1360	Catalogs
H 1361	Catalogs of Library Materials
H 1365	Cemeteries
H 1366	Census
H 1367	Chronology
H 1370	Civilization
H 1412	Classical and Ancient Works
H 1425	Collected Works and Collections
H 1427	Collections of Objects
H 1430	Comics and Comic Characters
H 1435	Commentaries on Individual Works
H 1438	Composers and Works about Music of Individual Composers
H 1460	Congresses

Contents of Volume Three

Special Topics, Materials, Subdivisions, etc.

H 1465	Constitutions
H 1468	Contracts
H 1472	Controversial Literature
H 1475	Cooking and Cookbooks
H 1480	Correspondence of Individual Persons
H 1510	Cross-Cultural Studies
H 1520	Databases
H 1530	Description and Travel
H 1532	Design and Construction
H 1538	Diaries
H 1540	Dictionaries
H 1550	Digests
H 1558	Directories
H 1560	Disasters, Riots, Demonstrations, etc.
H 1564	Discovery and Exploration
H 1570	Dissertations and Theses
H 1572	Dwellings with Extensive Grounds
H 1574	Dynasties, Royal Houses, etc.
H 1576	Early Works
H 1578	Economic Conditions
H 1579	Education
H 1580	Effect of One Topic on Another
H 1580.5	Electronic Serials
H 1581	Emigration and Immigration
H 1591	Evaluation
H 1592	Events
H 1593	Exhibitions
H 1595	Facsimiles
H 1600	Festschriften
H 1610	Fictitious Characters
H 1624	Finance
H 1627	Folklore
H 1628	Forecasting
H 1629	Foreign Relations
H 1630	Gazetteers
H 1631	Genealogy and Family Names
H 1635	Gods and Mythological Figures
H 1636	Gods of Greek and Roman Mythology

Special Topics, Materials, Subdivisions, etc.

H 1642	Government Policy
H 1643	Government Publications
H 1645	Guidebooks
H 1646	Handbooks, Manuals, etc.
H 1647	History
H 1659	Illustrations
H 1660	Imprints
H 1670	Indexes
H 1673	Industries Based on Products
H 1675	Influence of One Topic on Another
H 1675.5	Information Services
H 1676	Inquisition
H 1676.5	Inspection
H 1678	Interviews
H 1680	Islam
H 1690	Juvenile Materials
H 1705	Legal Materials: Law and Legislation and Other Subdivisions
H 1710	Legal Materials: Legal Research
H 1715	Legal Materials: Legislation
H 1718	Legal Materials: Systems of Law
H 1720	Legends and Stories about Animals
H 1775	Literature: General
H 1780	Literature: Drama
H 1790	Literature: Fiction
H 1795	Literature: Legends and Romances
H 1800	Literature: Poetry
H 1828	Literature from One Place in Multiple Languages
H 1845	Local History and Genealogical Source Materials
H 1848	Longitudinal Studies
H 1855	Manuscripts
H 1865	Maps and Atlases
H 1870	Marketing
H 1890	Mental Health and Mental Health Services
H 1893	Microforms
H 1895	Miniature Books

BACKGROUND: *Archives are collections of documents or records relating to the activities, business dealings, etc., of a person, family, corporation, association, community, or nation. This instruction sheet provides guidelines for assigning the subdivisions* ***–Archives*** *and* ***–Archival resources****. For classification of archival inventories, see F 495, sec. 1-2; for classification of works on archival resources, see F 630.*

1. –Archives.

a. General. Use the free-floating subdivision **–Archives** as a form or topical subdivision under types of corporate bodies and educational institutions, classes of persons, and ethnic groups, and under names of individual corporate bodies, military services, educational institutions, persons, and families, for collections or discussions of documentary material, such as manuscripts, household records, diaries, correspondence, photographs, memorabilia, etc., pertaining to these persons or institutions. Code **–Archives** as a $v subfield if the work consists of collections of documentary material. Code it as an $x subfield if the work discusses the documentary material.

To such works, assign an array of headings to bring out both the archive and the subject matter of the documents it contains. *Examples:*

Title: The personal archives of President Calvin Coolidge.

```
600 10 $a Coolidge, Calvin, $d 1872-1933 $v Archives.
651 #0 $a United States $x Politics and government
          $y 1923-1929 $v Sources.
```

Title: Documents of the State Department relating to the history of Greece from 1950 to 1954.

```
651 #0 $a Greece $x History $y 1950-1967 $v Sources.
610 10 $a United States. $b Dept. of State
          $v Archives.
```

Title: Papers of the Society of American Indians [microform]

```
650 #0 $a Indians of North America $x History
          $v Sources.
610 20 $a Society of American Indians $v Archives.
```

1. –Archives *(Continued)*

b. Individual corporate bodies. Use the free-floating subdivision **–Archives** under names of corporate bodies, including individual educational institutions, provided that the corporate body or educational institution is an authoring party in the preparation of the archive, not merely the institution that houses the archive. If the collection is a formally organized archive for which a name heading can be established, use that heading, as appropriate, instead of the subdivision **–Archives** under the name of the corporate body.

c. Catalogs. Use the free-floating form subdivision **–Catalogs** under the topical subdivision **–Archives** for inventories of documents and materials housed in an individual archive. In accordance with H 1361, assign an array of headings to bring out the topics covered in the archives and the institution housing the material. *Examples:*

Title: A catalog of the Southern Africa archives in the University of York.

```
651 #0 $a Africa, Southern $x History $x Sources
        $v Bibliography $v Catalogs.
651 #0 $a Africa, Southern $x History $x Manuscripts
        $v Catalogs.
610 20 $a University of York. $b Centre for Southern
        African Studies $x Archives $v Catalogs.
```

Title: Documents of the Royal Victoria Hospital held in the McGill University Archives.

```
610 20 $a Royal Victoria Hospital (Montréal, Québec)
        $x Archives $v Catalogs.
610 20 $a Royal Victoria Hospital (Montréal, Québec)
        $x History $x Sources $v Bibliography
        $v Catalogs.
610 20 $a McGill University. $b Archives $v Catalogs.
```

BACKGROUND: *This instruction sheet provides guidelines for establishing names of individual awards, medals, prizes, etc.*

1. Form of heading. Establish the heading for an award under its own name in the vernacular of the country from which it emanates. If the award is well-known in an English form and found in English in English-language reference sources, establish it in English. Use the singular or plural form as appropriate.

> ***Capitalization.*** For headings established in English, capitalize all words, except articles. For headings in other languages, follow the guidelines in Appendix B, sec. 22.

Examples:

```
150 ## $a Albert Schweitzer prijs
150 ## $a Henry Moore Grand Prize
150 ## $a Nobel Prizes
150 ## $a Ritterkreuz
150 ## $a Theodore Roosevelt Rough Rider Award
```

2. UF references. Add 450 fields from any alternative forms of the name, and from forms that bring significant words into the initial position. *Examples:*

```
150 ## $a Franklin Delano Roosevelt Freedom Medals
450 ## $a Roosevelt Medals
450 ## $a Four Freedoms Medals

150 ## $a Orden Slavy
450 ## $a Order of Glory
450 ## $a Slavy, Orden

150 ## $a Wolfgang Amadeus Mozart Preis
450 ## $a Mozart Preis
```

> *Note: Do not translate names of prizes from foreign languages into English in order to add a 450 field with the significant word in the initial position. Instead, make the reference from the inverted, untranslated form. Add a 450 field from the translated form only if that form is found in the work being cataloged or in other sources consulted.*

3. Broader term references.

a. Literary prizes. Add the following 550 (broader term) field:

```
550 ## $w g $a Literary prizes $z [place]
```

Do not add any other broader term fields. If the prize is limited to literature on a specific topic or to a specific genre, assign additional subject headings to the bibliographic record to express the topic or genre.

b. Other awards and prizes. Make one of the following broader term references as appropriate:

```
550 ## $w g $a [topic] $x Awards $z [place]

550 ## $w g $a Awards $z [place]
```
(for awards not limited to a specific topic)

```
550 ## $w g $a Awards
```
(for awards not limited to a specific topic or country)

c. Medals. Make one of the following broader term references as appropriate:

```
550 ## $w g $a [topic] $x Medals $z [place]

550 ## $w g $a Medals $z [place]
```
(for medals not limited to a specific topic)

```
550 ## $w g $a Medals
```
(for medals not limited to a specific topic or country)

d. Decorations. Make a broader term reference from an appropriate heading, such as **Military decorations**, **Decorations of honor**, **Papal decorations**, **Academic decorations of honor**, etc., subdivided geographically.

***BACKGROUND**: This instruction sheet provides guidelines for cataloging works about the Bible, works on special topics discussed in the Bible, and works on the theological and ethical teachings of the Bible.*

1. Bible–[subdivision]. Assign headings of the type **Bible–[*subdivision*]**, in accordance with H 1188, for historical and critical works about the Bible, including works on the history, interpretation, influence, inspiration, use, etc., of the Bible, for example, **Bible–Criticism, interpretation, etc.**

Subdivisions of this type may also be used under individual parts of the Bible.

2. Topics in the Bible.

a. Form of heading. Establish and assign headings in the form described below for works containing discussions of topics, persons, and places in the Bible and/or lists of Bible verses in which a specific topic, person, or place is mentioned.

(1) [Topic] in the Bible. For works about a topic in the Bible, establish and assign phrase headings of the type **[*topic*] in the Bible**, e.g., **Colors in the Bible**; **Teenagers in the Bible**.

(2) [Person]—In the Bible. For works about an individual person in the Bible, establish and assign subdivided headings of the type **[*person*]—In the Bible**, e.g., **Cyrus, King of Persia, -529 B.C.—In the Bible**.

(3) [Place]—In the Bible. For works about a particular place in the Bible, establish and assign subdivided headings of the type **[*place*]—In the Bible**, e.g., **Tiberias, Lake (Israel)—In the Bible**.

Do not establish headings in the form **Bible—[*subdivision*]** for works on special topics discussed in the Bible. However, existing headings of this type found in the subject authority file may be used and need not be cancelled.

2. Topics in the Bible. *(Continued)*

b. References. Do not make any "used for," broader term, or related term references.

c. Additional headings. If the work is limited to a discussion of part of the Bible, such as the Old Testament, New Testament, or an individual book, assign an additional heading for the portion of the Bible discussed, subdivided further, if appropriate in accordance with H 1188, for example, **Bible. Psalms--Criticism, interpretation, etc.**

Do not assign a heading of this type if the work discusses the topic in relation to the whole Bible.

3. Biblical theology and ethics.

a. General. Assign the subdivision **–Theology** under **Bible** or its individual parts to general works on the theological teachings of the Bible. Assign the heading **Ethics in the Bible** to works on the general ethical teachings of the Bible or its individual parts.

b. Biblical teaching. Assign the free-floating subdivision **–Biblical teaching** under religious or secular topics for works on the theological and/or ethical teachings of the Bible, or its individual parts, on that subject, for example, **Family—Biblical teaching**; **Salvation—Biblical teaching**.

c. Additional headings. If the work is limited to a discussion of part of the Bible, assign an additional heading, if appropriate, following the instructions in sec. 2.c.

4. Examples.

Title: Coins of the ancient world.

```
650 #0 $a Coins, Ancient.
650 #0 $a Coins in the Bible.
```

Title: Eating and drinking with Jesus.

```
650 #0 $a Lord's Supper $x Biblical teaching.
650 #0 $a Food in the Bible.
650 #0 $a Drinking in the Bible.
630 00 $a Bible. $p Gospels $x Criticism, interpretation, etc.
```

4. Examples. *(Continued)*

Title: God's conflict with the dragon and the sea.

```
650 #0 $a Dragons in the Bible.
650 #0 $a Sea in the Bible.
630 00 $a Bible. $p Old Testament $x Criticism,
       interpretation, etc.
```

Title: Salvation in the Gospel of John.

```
650 #0 $a Salvation $x Biblical teaching.
630 00 $a Bible. $p John $x Criticism, interpretation, etc.
```

Title: Christians and Roman rule in the New Testament

```
630 00 $a Bible. $b New Testament $x Criticism, interpretation,
etc.
651 #0 $a Rome $x In the Bible.
```

Title: The Bible and popular culture in America.

```
630 00 $a Bible $x Influence $x History.
650 #0 $a Popular culture $z United States $x History.
```

Title: The effective father.

```
650 #0 $a Father and child.
650 #0 $a Fathers in the Bible.
650 #0 $a Fathers $x Religious life.
```

Bible and Other Sacred Works H 1300

***BACKGROUND**: The sacred books of the world's religions, such as the Bible, Book of Mormon, Qur'an, Tripitaka, Vedas, etc., have been translated from their original form into other languages in the course of their history. Generally, translations are made from original texts. In some instances, a modern translation is made from an earlier version, rather than from the original language, for example, an English translation from the Aramaic Targum of Ezekiel, which is itself a translation from the Hebrew. This instruction sheet provides guidelines for assigning headings to works about versions (translations) of particular sacred books, including their individual parts. It also provides guidelines for assigning form headings to modern translations of early versions in order to create a link between the early and modern translations.*

1. Translating. Use the free-floating subdivision **–Translating** under the uniform title for a sacred work, or its individual parts, for works on the process of rendering the book from one language to another, including methodology, tools, etc., for example, **Book of Mormon--Translating**.

2. Versions.

a. General works. Use the free-floating subdivision **–Versions** under the uniform title for a sacred book, or its individual parts, for general works that discuss collectively translations of the sacred book, for example, **Bible—Versions**; **Beatitudes—Versions**.

b. By language.

(1) Language groups. Use the free-floating subdivision **–Versions, [*name of language group*]** for works that discuss collectively the translations of a sacred book, or its individual parts, into languages belonging to that group, for example, **Bible—Versions, Slavic**.

Do not use the adjectival qualifier for discussions of versions in an individual language.

(2) Individual languages. Use the free-floating subdivision **–Versions** under **[*uniform title*]. [*language of translation*]** for general works on translations of a sacred book, or its individual parts, into an individual language, for example, **Qur'an. Urdu—Versions**.

2. Versions. *(Continued)*

c. Denominational versions. Use subdivisions of the type **–Versions, [*name of denomination*]** for works that discuss translations prepared for use by members of a particular religious denomination, for example, **Bible—Versions, Baptist**. If these versions are in a particular language, assign an additional heading to bring out the language of the versions, for example, **Bible. English—Versions**.

d. Individual versions.

(1) General. Use the free-floating subdivision **–Versions—[*name of version*]** under the uniform title, or its individual parts, to which the language of the translation has been added, for works that discuss a particular translation of a sacred book. Use as a free-floating subdivision the name of the version as it appears in the uniform title for the translation, for example, **Bible. English—Versions--Authorized**.

(2) Translations of early versions. Some modern translations of sacred works are made from earlier translations rather than from the original language. The uniform title for the modern translation does not include the language and name of the earlier version. To provide a connection between the modern and the early version for these special translations only, assign a form heading of the type **[*uniform title for the early version*]—Translations into [*name of language*]**, for example, **Bible. Pentateuch. Aramaic. Targum Pseudo-Jonathan—Translations into English**.

Do not provide a form heading of this type for a translation of a sacred work made from the language in which it was originally written. For example, an English translation of the Gospel of John from Greek should not be assigned the form heading **Bible. John. Greek—Translations into English**.

3. Examples.

Title: The translation debate : what makes a Bible translation good?
```
630 00 $a Bible $x Translating.
630 00 $a Bible $x Versions.
```

Title: A Bibliography of scriptures in African languages.
```
630 00 $a Bible $x Versions, African $v Bibliography.
```

Title: Catholic German Bibles from the Reformation until today.
```
630 00 $a Bible $x Versions, Catholic $x History.
630 00 $a Bible. $l German $x Versions $x History.
```

Title: About the New English Bible.
```
630 00 $a Bible. $l English $x Versions $x New English.
```

Title: The Targums of Onkelos and Jonathan ben Uzziel on the Pentateuch. 1968.
```
630 00 $a Bible. $p Pentateuch. $l Aramaic. $s Onkelos $v
          Translations into English.
```

Biography H 1330

BACKGROUND: *A work about an individual person may be either biographical, critical, or both. Biographical works focus on the personal aspects of the individual's life, critical works on the individual's professional, intellectual, or artistic achievements. The provisions in this instruction sheet do not apply to works that are predominantly critical, only to works that are predominantly biographical and in narrative form. For provisions dealing with other forms of material that are sometimes biographical in nature, such as correspondence, diaries, and interviews, see the appropriate specific instruction sheet, for example, H 1480, H 1538, H 1678. For classification of biography, see F 275 (General); F 605, sec. 1 (Government officials); and F 632 (Literary authors writing in more than one language).*

DEFINITIONS*:* The following definitions apply for purposes of this instruction sheet:

Biography (including *Autobiography*): A narrative work more than 50% of which recounts the personal aspects of the life of one or more individuals. (In the case of historical figures, particularly those from the distant past, where little is known of the personal details of their lives, the limitation of the definition to "personal aspects" does not apply.) **Personal aspects** include such details as the individual's early years, education, marriage and other personal relationships, personal habits and personality, family life, travels, personal experiences and tragedies, last years and death, etc. **Life** means a relatively large portion of the individual's life, not just a single brief incident.

Collective biography: A biography of two or more individuals.

Individual biography: A biography of one person.

Partial biography: A work that includes some, but less than 50%, biographical material.

1. General rule. Assign an appropriate combination of the following types of headings to a biography:

- the name heading(s) for the person(s) *[no more than four]*
- if appropriate, a "class of persons" heading with the free-floating form subdivision **–Biography**
- if appropriate, heading(s) to bring out the person's association with a place or organization, or involvement with a specific event
- topical headings, as appropriate for the work

Each of these headings is discussed specifically in sections 1.a.-1.d., below.

H 1330 Biography

1. General rule. *(Continued)*

a. Name heading for the person. Assign the heading as established in RDA form in the name authority file. Do not subdivide the name by **–Biography**.

Exception: ***--Biography*** *has been established and may be used under the names of four individuals:* ***Shakespeare, William, 1564-1616****;* ***Muhammad, Prophet, -632****;* ***Jesus Christ****; and* ***Mary, Blessed Virgin, Saint****. Do not submit a proposal to establish* ***--Biography*** *under the name of any other individual.*

If the biography focuses on a specific aspect of the person's life subdivide the name heading using the appropriate topical subdivision from H 1110, for example, **–Childhood and youth**, **–Health**, **–Death and burial**. Assign this heading as the first heading.

Literary authors. For literary authors who write under various names and have more than one name heading, use the heading that serves as the "base heading" for the author, that is, the heading having the complete set of references for the author. Free-floating use of the subdivision **–Biography** after headings for individual literary authors was discontinued in 1998. The subdivision is established under **Shakespeare, William, 1564-1616**, and continues to be used under that heading as an exceptional practice.

Official name heading vs. personal name heading. For individuals who have both an official name heading and a personal name heading, use the personal name heading. For example, use **Reagan, Ronald** rather than **United States. President (1981-1989 : Reagan)**.

Collective biography. If the work is about two, three, or four persons, assign the name heading for each. If the work is about more than four persons, omit the name headings.

b. [Class of persons]–Biography. This heading designates the group of people to which the biographee belongs, as discussed in the work being cataloged, for example, **Musicians, Heads of state**, **Football coaches**, **Italy–Kings and rulers**, etc.

Note: This heading is assigned to individual biographies primarily for the benefit of public library users who are seeking biographies of a particular type of person rather than a particular individual. The heading should be selected with that in mind. If the biographee belongs to no discernable class of persons of the type judged likely to be sought by the typical public library user, it may be omitted.

1. General rule.

b. [Class of persons]–Biography. *(Continued)*

Persons with multifaceted lives or careers. For a biography that discusses the entire life of a person, select the single heading that best encompasses his or her career or lifelong pursuits. In order to achieve consistency, check the bibliographic database first to determine the heading that has been used on other biographies of the same person. If a single heading cannot adequately encompass the person's career or lifelong pursuits, assign more than one heading, provided that the work being cataloged discusses the various aspects of the person's life designated by the headings assigned. If the work focuses on only one facet, assign only that one heading. For example, if a work discusses Albert Schweitzer's experiences only as a medical missionary, assign a heading for only that aspect of his career.

Headings qualified by sex or ethnic group. Assign headings that specify the sex or ethnic group of the class of persons, such as **Women architects**, **African American lawyers**, etc., if that is a significant aspect of the work. When assigning this heading, assign it *in addition to the unqualified heading for the class of persons. Examples*:

Title: "Just make them beautiful" : the many worlds of a designing woman / by Helen Rose.

```
600 10 $a Rose, Helen.
650 #0 $a Costume designers $z California $z Los
          Angeles $v Biography.
650 #0 $a Women costume designers $z California
          $z Los Angeles $v Biography.
```

Title: Black in Selma : the uncommon life of J.L. Chestnut, Jr.

```
600 10 $a Chestnut, J. L.
650 #0 $a Lawyers $z Alabama $v Biography.
650 #0 $a African American lawyers $z Alabama
          $v Biography.
```

H 1330 Biography

1. General rule.

b. [Class of persons]–Biography. *(Continued)*

Collective biography with no class of persons. If a collective biography encompasses a group of people for which a heading representing a class of persons does not exist and cannot be formulated, establish the subdivision **–Biography** under the appropriate topical heading. For example, establish **Art–Biography** for a collective biography of artists, dealers, collectors, museum personnel, etc.

c. Headings for place, organization, or event. Assign headings of this type, with the subdivision **–Biography,** in addition to the class of persons heading described above, if that is a significant aspect of the work. *Examples:*

```
651 #0 $a Ohio $v Biography.
610 10 $a United States. $b Department of Agriculture
          $x Officials and employees $v Biography.
650 #0 $a World War, 1939-1945 $v Biography.
```

d. Topical headings. Assign headings for other topics discussed in the work, using appropriate subject headings without biographical subdivisions.

2. Special situations.

a. Founders of major religions. Assign no heading to designate the class of persons.

b. Animals and pets. See H 1720, sec. 3.

c. Spouses of famous people. For a biographical work about a famous person's spouse who is or was active in a particular field, assign the heading for the class of persons that designates the spouse's own field. If the spouse has no special career of his or her own, and the work describes personal experiences as the spouse of a more famous person and his or her career, assign the heading for the specific category of spouses, for example, **Ambassadors' spouses, Entertainers' spouses**, etc., as the "class of persons" heading. If appropriate, also assign headings for the name of the more famous person and the class of persons to which he or she belongs.

d. Immigrants. See H 1581, sec. 3.c.

4. References. *(Continued)*

b. Broader term references. Add 550 (broader term) fields from the next broader level in the hierarchy of genus, family, order, class, phylum, or division.

Even if the species and genus are both established in the Latin form and both begin with the same word, add the heading for the genus as a 550 (broader term) field in the record for the heading for the species.

Whenever necessary, establish the name of the next broader level in order to make the broader term reference.

Make an additional broader term reference for any intermediate group common name, such as butterflies or trout, if it exists. For example, a moth family name would have both BT **Lepidoptera** and BT **Moths**. Do not establish common name groups solely to make references.

5. Geographic subdivision of names. Authorize geographic subdivision for headings for animals and plants in Latin or common names at any taxonomic level following the procedures in H 200 sec. 5.

6. Classification numbers. Provide classification numbers in 053 fields of records for animal and plant headings following the procedures in H 200 sec. 6, as specifically as the QL (Zoology) and QK (Botany) schedules allow, which is usually at the family level. Also provide classification numbers from the SB (Plant culture), SD (Forestry), and SF (Animal culture) schedules for crops, pests, domestic animals, and pets when specific numbers exist in those schedules. Because it is possible for works about many animals and plants to class in either Q or S, depending on context, generally supply qualifiers for the classification numbers. Use **(Zoology)** or **(Protozoology)** for QL and **(Botany)**, **(Algology)**, or **(Mycology)** for QK.

7. Nonprint (OMIT) headings. Formerly, Latin names below the order level were omitted from printing in *Library of Congress Subject Headings*. All Latin names are now established in the subject authority file. Some headings that were not printed when they were first established were later printed because they were generated by their use as a BT for another heading. These computer-generated headings lack appropriate reference structure and classification numbers and should be revised as necessary when they are encountered.

8. Animal and plant culture.

a. Form of name. Establish names of domestic animal breeds and cultivated plant varieties in English, if possible. Establish such names in the singular unless they are group names for several breeds or varieties, such as **Hounds** or **Melons**.

b. Authorities for names. Seek authority for the name in the lists of breeds or varieties published by societies or government agencies such as the American Kennel Association or the United States Department of Agriculture, or in other standard reference sources.

c. References. Make UF references from synonymous names and broader term references from group names.

d. Geographic subdivision of names. Authorize domestic animal breeds and cultivated plant varieties for geographic subdivision, for example, **Hereford cattle−Texas**; **Broccoli− California**.

9. Animals with proper names. Headings for individual animals with proper names are established in the name authority file and may be assigned as subject headings. Existing subject headings may continue to be assigned until they are cancelled in favor of name headings.

Note: Until 2013, headings for proper names of individual animals that were publicly known, such as pets of famous people, animal performers, zoo animals, etc., were established in LCSH. The headings were qualified by the type of animal and a BT was made from the generic heading for the type of animal. Particular aspects of the animal, such as breed or special use, were not brought out and animals of the same type with the same name were not differentiated.

For guidelines on assigning headings to biographies of individual animals and anecdotal works about pets, see H 1720, sec. 3.

10. Fossil names. Follow the same guidelines given in sec. 1-7 for names of living organisms to establish headings for names of fossil animals and plants.

a. Form of name. For animals and plants existing in both Recent and earlier geologic time periods, base the fossil headings on the established headings for the living animals and plants in Latin or common forms. Add the qualifier **, Fossil**, for example, **Silicoflagellates, Fossil**; **Rhinoceroses, Fossil**. If headings for the living groups are not yet established, establish them at the same time as the fossil headings.

For fossils that existed only in earlier geologic time periods and did not survive into the Recent Epoch, such as **Dinosaurs**, establish them without the qualifier **, Fossil**. Base the heading on names found in predominant use in standard paleontology reference sources and texts, such as *Fossil Record 2*; *Treatise on Invertebrate Paleontology*; *Vertebrate Paleontology and Evolution*; *Dinosaur Encyclopedia*; *Mammalian Paleofaunas of the World; Index of Generic Names of Fossil Plants*; *Biology and Evolution of Fossil Plants*.

b. References. Make no UF references beginning with the word **Fossil**. Make BT references from the next broader level in the hierarchy of genus, family, order, class, phylum, or division. Whenever necessary, establish the next broader level in order to make the BT reference.

c. Classification numbers. Provide classification numbers from the QE (Geology; Paleontology) schedule in 053 fields, as specifically as that schedule allows.

11. Subdivisions. For free-floating subdivisions used under animals, see H 1147. For free-floating subdivisions used under plants and crops, see H 1180.

Buildings and Other Structures H 1334

***BACKGROUND**: This instruction sheet provides guidelines for establishing and assigning names of buildings and other structures as subject headings. The following types of entities are covered by these guidelines:*

Bridges
Buildings and building complexes (castles, houses, city halls, etc.)
Building details (windows, doors, domes, rooms)
Fortresses
Gates
Monuments
Plazas
Tunnels
Walls

In the case of structures that house corporate bodies, the provisions of this instruction sheet apply to those structures known by different names from the organizations that occupy them. Generally, when a building is known by the same name as the corporate body that occupies it, a corporate name heading is established for the body and that name heading is used as a subject heading for works about either the organization or the building. Typical cases include buildings such as churches, schools, hospitals, libraries, prisons, etc. Exceptions to this general rule are occasionally made on a case-by-case basis when there are special circumstances warranting an exception.

For instructions on establishing names of dwellings with extensive grounds, such as National Trust properties, see H 1572.

1. Existing headings. If an established heading for a structure is needed for cataloging new material and it does not conform to the guidelines in this instruction sheet, change it as necessary. Follow the procedures in H 193.

2. Form of entry.

a. Model.

```
1XX X# $a [name of structure] ([geographic qualifier])
4XX X# $a [alternate name(s)] ([geographic
          qualifier])
550 ## $w g $a [type of structure] $z [country, or first
          order division]
```

2. Form of entry.

a. Model. *(Continued)*

Do not add a broader term of the type **[*name of city*]–Buildings, structures, etc.**; instead, assign a heading of that type to the work being cataloged, as described in sec. 7, below.

b. Tagging. Consult the list of Group 2 headings in H 405 for the appropriate MARC tag to use for the type of structure proposed.

c. Entry term. Enter the heading for a particular building or structure directly under its own name, in uninverted form, and qualify it by the name of the geographic entity in which the structure is located. Also enter structures in cities directly under name rather than under the name of the city. For a building known by its street address rather than a name, use the address, for example, **Number 10 Downing Street (London, England)**. For building details, see sec. 5, below.

Do not formulate a heading for a named structure that consists solely of a generic term with a geographic qualifier unless there is evidence that this is also the *proper* name of the structure.

d. Language.

(1) Post-1500 entities. Establish the name of a structure built after 1500 in the vernacular of the country in which it is located.

(2) Pre-1500 entities. If the name of a structure of pre-1500 origin has become firmly established in an English form in English language usage, establish it in this English form. Determine this by consulting those English language reference sources that are readily available.

Do not treat informal generic references to the structure (such as "a castle in [...]"), as justification for establishing its name in English. If no firmly established English form exists, establish the name in the vernacular of the country in which it is located.

2. Form of entry.

d. Language. *(Continued)*

(3) Provisional headings. If, according to the above rules, the vernacular form is required but cannot be found either in the work being cataloged or in readily available reference sources, use the form found in the work being cataloged. In a 670 field, provide a brief explanation, such as **Established in English; vernacular form not found**. Add a 952 field with the word **Provisional**. When preparing the record to be assigned to a tentative list, the Data Integrity Section will code for "Provisional" in field 008/33 (the **Level of Establishment** box on the 008 input screen for authority records in the LC ILS). If, when cataloging a subsequent work for which the heading is required, the vernacular form is found, submit a proposal to change the established heading to the proper form and to remove the "provisional" coding, changing it to "fully established" (code **a** in field 008/33).

3. Geographic qualifier.

a. General.

(1) Single jurisdiction. For a structure located wholly within a single jurisdiction, construct the geographic qualifier by placing the name of the jurisdiction in a single set of parentheses after the name of the structure.

(2) Two jurisdictions. For a structure in two jurisdictions, use the names of the two jurisdictions separated by the word **and**; add the names alphabetically unless the structure is located principally in one of the jurisdictions, in which case add the name of that jurisdiction as the first of the two names.

(3) More than two jurisdictions. For a structure in more than two jurisdictions, omit the geographic qualifier.

3. Geographic qualifier.

a. General. *(Continued)*

(4) Latest name of jurisdiction. Use only the latest form of the name when designating a jurisdiction in the qualifier.

(5) Form of name to use. The form of name used in the qualifier is the form as established in the name authority file, with these exceptions:

- certain place names are abbreviated in a qualifier (see H 810 for the list of authorized abbreviations)
- qualifying terms such as **(Province)**, **(State)**, **(Federation)**, **(Extinct city)**, etc., are omitted
- a place name qualified by the name of a larger place retains that qualifier when the smaller place is itself used as a qualifier, substituting a comma and a space for parentheses. For example, **Chicago (Ill.)** becomes **(Chicago, Ill.)**.

b. Structure outside a city.

(1) General. Use the name of the country in which the structure is located as the geographic qualifier, except for the countries listed below.

Country	*Qualifier*
Australia	state name
Canada	province name
Great Britain	constituent country name
Malaysia	state name
United States	state name

Note: For a list of the first order divisions of these countries and the form used in qualifiers, see H 810.

3. Geographic qualifier.

b. Structure outside a city. *(Continued)*

(2) Islands. For a structure located on an individual island but outside a city, qualify according to the rules for qualifying entities on islands (see H 810, sec. 2.d.).

c. Structure in a city. Use as a qualifier the name of the city in which the structure is located, as established in the name authority file.

If there are two or more structures with the same name in the same city add, after the name of the city, a space, a colon, another space, and a street name, to create a distinctive heading, for example, **Apollo Theater (New York, N.Y. : 125th Street)** and **Apollo Theatre (New York, N.Y. : 42nd Street)**. In situations where structures of the same name successively occupied the same site, add date spans to the qualifier, for example, **Minnesota State Capitol (Saint Paul, Minn. : 1883-1905)** and **Minnesota State Capitol (Saint Paul, Minn. : 1905-)**.

Structures in London, England. For a structure located in the original City of London or one of the inner boroughs, use the qualifier **(London, England)**, for example, **Buckingham Palace (London, England)**. The inner boroughs of London are Camden, Greenwich, Hackney, Hammersmith and Fulham, Islington, Kensington and Chelsea, Lambeth, Lewisham, Southwark, Tower Hamlets, Wandsworth, and the City of Westminster. For a structure located in one of the outer boroughs, use as a qualifier the borough name as established in the name authority file, for example, **Hampton Court (Richmond upon Thames, London, England)**.

d. Temporary exhibition buildings. For temporary buildings associated with a particular exhibition, exposition, world's fair, etc., qualify by the name of the exhibition as established in the name authority file, substituting commas for any colons or parentheses that are part of the name heading. Do not separately subfield code the qualifier or any elements of it. *Examples:*

3. Geographic qualifier.

d. Temporary exhibition buildings. *(Continued)*

Name heading for exposition:

```
111 2# $a Exposition internationale $d (1937 : $c Paris,
          France)
```

Exhibition building:

```
110 2# $a Pavillon de l'Espagne (Exposition internationale,
          1937, Paris, France)
```

Name heading for exposition:

```
111 2# $a New York World's Fair $d (1964-1965)
```

Exhibition building:

```
110 2# $a New Jersey Tercentenary Pavilion (New York World's
          Fair, 1964-1965)
```

e. Bridges and tunnels. For bridges and tunnels that link either two cities or a city with another jurisdiction or area, use as the geographic qualifier the name of the city with which the structure is predominantly associated, for example, **Golden Gate Bridge (San Francisco, Calif.)**. If the structure is associated equally with both, use both, in alphabetical order, for example, **Westerscheldetunnel (Goes and Terneuzen, Netherlands)**; **Mária Valéria Híd (Esztergom, Hungary, and Štúrovo, Slovakia)**.

3. Geographic qualifier. *(Continued)*

f. Conflict. In the case where the heading for a structure constructed according to these rules would be the same as the heading for some other entity, the heading for the structure must be altered in some way to make it unique. There are two possible techniques:

- add the name of a smaller jurisdiction such as the county to the qualifier
- designate the kind of structure involved by adding, following the place in the qualifier, an appropriate generic term in English, for example, **(France : Castle)**. In the absence of a conflict, do not add a designating term merely to explain the nature of the structure.

Generally, use the first technique when the conflicting entities are of the same type, for example, two buildings. Use the second technique when the conflicting entities are of different types, for example, a city and a building, or when the first technique will not resolve the conflict. For conflicting entities within a single city, see sec. 3.c., above.

4. References.

a. UF references.

(1) Variant forms of name. Add 4XX fields from variant and alternative forms of the name found while conducting authority research, including any earlier names, appropriate vernacular forms if the name is established in English, or the English form if the name is established in the vernacular.

(2) Translating and rearranging elements. If an English form is not found and if a vernacular heading includes a generic term for which there is a clear English equivalent, translate the generic term. Rearrange the words in the heading to bring the proper name portion into the first position, if necessary. *Example:*

```
110 2# $a Castillo de Ponferrada (Ponferrada, Spain)
410 2# $a Ponferrada Castle (Ponferrada,
          Spain)
```

4. References..

a. UF references. *(Continued)*

(3) Proper name in the initial position. If the name of the structure as established in the heading has a generic term rather than a proper name in the first position, add a 4XX field with the name inverted in such a way as to bring the proper name into the first position. However, omit this inverted 4XX field if any of the other 4XX fields in straight order begin with the same word. *Example:*

```
110 2# $a Castillo de Ponferrada (Ponferrada, Spain)
410 2# $a Ponferrada Castle (Ponferrada,
          Spain)
```

Do not add the following 410 since the first 410 begins with the same word:

```
[410 2# $a Ponferrada, Castillo de (Ponferrada,
         Spain)]
```

(4) Forename in the initial position. If the name of the structure as established in the heading begins with a forename followed by a surname, add a 4XX field that begins with the surname. *Example:*

```
110 2# $a John Hancock Center (Chicago, Ill.)
410 2# $a Hancock Center (Chicago, Ill.)
```

(5) Buildings established as street addresses. Do not add a 4XX field with the numeral of the street address spelled out, unless that form is actually found in the item being cataloged or in other sources that were consulted. *Example:*

```
110 2# $a 2040 Union Street (San Francisco, Calif.)
```

Do not add the following 410s unless these forms are found in the item being cataloged or in other sources:

```
[410 2# $a Twenty forty Union Street (San Francisco
           Calif.) ]
[410 2#  $a Two thousand forty Union Street (San Francisco
             (Calif.)]
```

4. References. *(Continued)*

b. Broader terms. Consult recent subject authority records whose references have been evaluated to determine patterns for the appropriate 5XX (broader term) field to add for **[*type of structure*]**. In late 1984, the implementation of new policies for creating BTs resulted in many changes in reference patterns for named buildings, structures, etc. The most significant of these are listed below.

> *Note: For information on the geographic subdivision used in broader term references for structures (shown by the notation **[place]** in the examples below), see H 375.*

Public buildings. The broader term **Public buildings–[*place*]** is made only for those public buildings for which it is not possible to construct a broader term **[*specific type of building*]–[*place*]** because their only function is to house government offices.

Bridges. Make the broader term **Bridges–**[***country, or first order political division***]. The construction type of the bridge, for example, **Suspension bridges**, is not brought out as a broader term. The body of water the bridge spans is not brought out as a broader term.

Dwellings. The broader term **Architecture, Domestic–[*place*]** is no longer made. Instead, **Architecture, Domestic–[*place*]** is assigned as a heading to architectural studies of a particular dwelling. Because of the subjective nature of determining what is a mansion, use **Dwellings–[*place*]** rather than **Mansions–[*place*]** for dwellings that may be described as mansions.

Official residences of heads of government or other officials. Two broader terms are added: **Official residences–[*place*]** and **[*type of head of government or official*]–Dwellings–[*place*]**.

Historic buildings. Do not add a broader term **Historic buildings–[*place*]**. Instead add a broader term **[*specific type of building*]–[*place*]**.

Temporary exhibition buildings. Add a broader term **Exhibition buildings–[*place*]**. Do not add a broader term from the name heading for the exhibition.

5. Building details.

a. Named building details. If a building detail, such as a window, door, portal, dome, or room, has a proper name, establish a specific subject heading for it. If the building of which it is a part has been established as a subject heading or as a name heading with a geographic qualifier, establish the building detail according to the following model:

```
1XX ## $a [name of detail] ([name of structure], [geographic
          qualifier])
4XX ## $a [alternate name(s)] ([name of structure],
          [geographic qualifier])
5XX X# $ g $a [heading for the main structure]
550 ## $ g $a [type of detail] $z [country]
```

If the main building has been established as a name heading that has no geographic qualifier, use the following model:

```
1XX ## $a [name of detail] ([name of structure])
4XX ## $a [alternate name(s)] ([name of structure])
5XX X# $w g $a [heading for the main structure]
550 ## $w g $a [type of detail] $z [country]
```

b. Unnamed building details. If a building detail does not have a proper name, do not establish a separate heading for it. Instead, assign two headings to bring out the detail:

```
650 #0 $a [generic heading for the type of building detail]
          $z [place]
610 20 $a [heading for the main structure]
```

6. Parts of complex structures. Also establish the name of a component part of a complex structure directly under its own name, following the pattern in sec. 5, above, for example, pagoda forming part of a temple complex.

7. Assignment of headings. Assign the appropriate combination of the following types of headings to a work about an individual structure:

6XX X0 $a [*name of structure*].

651 #0 $a [*name of city*] $x Buildings, structures, etc.

Assign this heading if the structure or building is located in a city and the work being cataloged discusses it from the architectural standpoint, that is, if it describes the structure or building as a physical entity.

6X0 X0 $a [*name of architect or architectural firm*].

Assign this heading if the work discusses the structure from the architectural point of view, and if the name of the architect or firm is readily available.

6X0 X0 $a [*name of owner, resident, etc.*] $x Homes and haunts
$z [*place*].

Assign if the work discusses the person, family, or performing group who owns or resides in the structure.

600 X0 $a [*name of person memorialized*] $x Monuments $z [*place*].

Assign this heading if the structure is a memorial or monument erected in honor of a particular person, and the name of the person is readily available.

6XX X0 $a [*any special feature or topic appropriate to the work being cataloged*].

The name of the structure in the first heading above refers either to a corporate name heading established by descriptive catalogers and used by subject catalogers to designate a named structure, for example, churches, museums, etc., or to a heading for an individual structure established by subject catalogers in accordance with the provisions of the earlier portion of this instruction sheet.

The order of headings assigned to a particular work depends on the emphasis of the work, and may not correspond to the order given above.

H 1334 Buildings and Other Structures

8. Examples.

```
151 ## $a Brooklyn Bridge (New York, N.Y.)
550 ## $w g $a Bridges $z New York (State)


151 ## $a Pont-Neuf (Paris, France)
550 ## $w g $a Bridges $z France


151 ## $a Westminster Bridge (London, England)
550 ## $w g $a Bridges $z England


110 2# $a Castillo de Ponferrada (Ponferrada, Spain)
410 2# $a Ponferrada Castle (Ponferrada, Spain)
550 ## $w g $a Castles $z Spain


110 2# $a Schloss Halbturn (Halbturn, Austria)
410 2# $a Halbturn Castle (Halbturn, Austria)
550 ## $w g $a Castles $z Austria


110 2# $a Château de Versailles (Versailles, France)
410 2# $a Versailles Palace (Versailles, France)
550 ## $w g $a Palaces $z France


151 ## $a Yihe Yuan (Beijing, China)
451 ## $w nne $a I Ho Yüan (Beijing, China)
451 ## $w nne $a I Ho Yüan (Peking, China)
451 ## $a Summer Palace (Beijing, China)
451 ## $a Yi He Yuan (Beijing, China)
550 ## $w g $a Parks $z China


110 2# $a Herbert Hoover Memorial Building (Stanford, Calif.)
410 2# $a Herbert Hoover Memorial Education Building
        (Stanford, Calif.)
410 2# $a Hoover Memorial Building (Stanford, Calif.)
550 ## $w g $a College buildings $z California
```

8. Examples. *(Continued)*

```
110 2# $a 2040 Union Street (San Francisco, Calif.)
550 ## $w g $a Dwellings $z California


110 2# $a Maison Fornel (Québec, Québec)
410 2# $a Fornel House (Québec, Québec)
410 2# $a Maison Villeray (Québec, Québec)
410 2# $a Villeray House (Québec, Québec)
550 ## $w g $a Dwellings $z Québec (Province)


110 2# $a Mount Clare (Baltimore, Md. : Building)
550 ## $w g $a Dwellings $z Maryland


110 2# $a Library of Congress James Madison Memorial Building
          (Washington, D.C.)
410 2# $a James Madison Memorial Building (Washington,
          D.C.)
410 2# $a Library of Congress Madison Building
          (Washington, D.C.)
410 2# $a Madison Building, Library of Congress
          (Washington, D.C.)
550 ## $w g $a Library buildings $z Washington (D.C.)


110 2# $a White House (Washington, D.C.)
550 ## $a Official residences $z Washington (D.C.)
550 ## $w g $a Presidents $x Dwellings $z Washington (D.C.)


110 2# $a Indian Point Nuclear Power Plant (N.Y.)
550 ## $w g $a Nuclear power plants $z New York (State)


110 2# $a Hauptbahnhof (Hamburg, Germany)
550 ## $w g $a Railroad stations $z Germany


110 2# $a Cleveland Municipal Stadium (Cleveland, Ohio)
410 2# $a Municipal Stadium (Cleveland, Ohio)
550 ## $w g $a Stadiums $z Ohio


110 2# $a Presbytère (New Orleans, La.)
550 ## $w g $a Buildings $z Louisiana
```

8. Examples. *(Continued)*

```
110 2# $a Hadrian's Villa (Tivoli, Italy)
410 2# $a Adriana Villa (Tivoli, Italy)
410 2# $a Villa Adriana (Tivoli, Italy)
551 ## $w g $a Italy $x Antiquities
550 ## $w g $a Palaces $z Italy
```

```
110 2# $a Saitō (Yakushiji, Nara-shi, Japan)
410 2# $a West Pagoda (Yakushiji, Nara-shi, Japan)
550 ## $w g $a Pagodas $z Japan
510 2# $w g $a Yakushiji (Nara-shi, Japan)
```

```
150 ## $a Hyman Liberman Memorial Door (South African National
         Gallery)
450 ## $a Liberman Memorial Door (South African National
         Gallery)
550 ## $w g $a Doors $z South Africa
510 2# $w g $a South African National Gallery
```

```
151 ## $a Plaza de Bolívar (Panama, Panama)
451 ## $a Bolívar Plaza (Panama, Panama)
550 ## $w g $a Plazas $z Panama
```

```
150 ## $a Western Wall (Jerusalem)
450 ## $a Wailing Wall (Jerusalem)
550 ## $w g $a Walls $z Jerusalem
```

BACKGROUND: *Before August 1996, headings for individual cemeteries were established as geographic headings tagged 151 in either the name authority file or the subject authority file depending upon whether or not they were needed for use as descriptive access points. After July 1996, all cemeteries are established as corporate name headings tagged 110 in the name authority file. As a project, CPSO cancelled headings for cemeteries that were established in the subject authority file and replaced them with revised headings in the name authority file. Existing headings for cemeteries in the name authority file have also been retagged to reflect this policy. For a discussion of the change in policy on establishing headings for cemeteries and other ambiguous named entities, see the background statement in H 405. Because subject-to-name references are not made in the name authority file, headings for cemeteries no longer have broader term references from* ***Cemeteries–[place]*** *or* ***National cemeteries–[place]****. This instruction sheet provides guidelines for assigning names of individual cemeteries as subject headings.*

1. General rule. If a heading for an individual cemetery exists in the name authority file in RDA form and is tagged 110, assign it as a subject heading. If the heading does not exist in the name authority file, or exists but is still tagged 151, establish a new name heading or revise the existing name heading (or refer the work to a descriptive cataloger to do so).

2. Assignment of headings. To works on individual cemeteries, assign an array of headings, if appropriate, to bring out the most important aspects of the work. *Examples:*

Title: Ravenswood Cemetery : tombstone inscriptions.

```
610 20 $a Ravenswood Cemetery (Jackson County, W. Va.)
651 #0 $a Jackson County (W. Va.) $v Genealogy.
650 #0 $a Registers of births, etc. $z West Virginia
          $z Jackson County.
650 #0 $a Inscriptions $z West Virginia $z Jackson County.
```

Title: Our dead buried in the Chattanooga Confederate Cemetery.

```
651 #0 $a United States $x History $y Civil War, 1861-1865
          $v Registers of dead.
610 10 $a Confederate States of America. $b Army
          $v Registers of dead.
651 #0 $a Tennessee $v Genealogy.
651 #0 $a Chattanooga (Tenn.) $v Genealogy.
650 #0 $a Registers of births, etc. $z Tennessee
          $z Chattanooga.
610 20 $a Confederate Cemetery (Chattanooga, Tenn.)
```

***BACKGROUND**: Subject headings of the type **[place]–Census** or **[ethnic group]–Census** are assigned to works that consist of, or discuss, data obtained as a result of censuses. Specific censuses are identified by adding the date, or the number and date, to the subdivision. Prior to the implementation of AACR2, descriptive catalogers assigned a related-work added entry to works consisting of data obtained as a result of specific censuses, for example, **United States. Census Office. 10th census, 1880**. Under RDA, all census publications are entered under title, and related-work added entries are not made. Subject catalogers are always responsible for identifying and designating specific censuses when cataloging census publications.*

1. General rule. Use the subdivision **–Census** under names of places or ethnic groups for works consisting of official counts of the population of a place or group, generally including vital statistics and other classified information relating to social and economic conditions; or for works that discuss censuses. Code **–Census** as a $v subfield if the work consists almost entirely of statistical data from a census, such as an official edition of the census. Code it as an $x subfield if the work consists primarily of analysis and discussion of the census data, even though it may include some actual statistics as well. *Examples:*

Title: Counting America : the story of the United States census.
651 #0 $a United States $x Census.

Title: Population changes among the northern Plains Indians.
[an analysis of data from various censuses]
650 #0 $a Indians of North America $z Great Plains
$x Census.

For works limited to a specific census add the date of the census to the subdivision. *Examples:*

Title: Census of India, 1991 : historical and world perspective.
651 #0 $a India $x Census, 1991.

Title: Census of population (1990) : Asian and Pacific Islanders in the United States.
[work consists of data extracted from the 1990 census and published by the Bureau of the Census]
650 #0 $a Asian Americans $v Census, 1990.
650 #0 $a Pacific Islander Americans $v Census, 1990.
650 #0 $a United States $v Census, 1990.

2. When to assign a census heading. If a work consists of, or discusses, data abstracted from a census, assign census headings of the above type to the work.

Assign a heading for the jurisdiction conducting the official count. If the locality surveyed is different from the jurisdiction conducting the count, assign a heading for both. Designate the specific census if it is possible to do so. *Example:*

Title: The 1990 federal census of California : an analysis of the data.

```
651 #0 $a United States $x Census, 1990.
651 #0 $a California $x Census, 1990.
```

3. Special topic and a census. If the work contains information abstracted from a particular census on a special topic, assign a heading for the census and for the topic. *Example:*

Title: Census of housing (1990)

```
650 #0 $a Housing $z United States $v Statistics.
651 #0 $a United States $v Census, 1990.
```

4. Special topic, census, and locality. If the work contains information abstracted from a particular national census on a topic and special locality within the country of the census, assign a heading for all three aspects, the national census, the topic, and the special locality. *Example:*

Title: Occupations in Virginia : data from the 1970 census.

```
650 #0 $a Occupations $z Virginia $v Statistics.
651 #0 $a Virginia $v Census, 1970.
651 #0 $a United States $v Census, 1970.
```

5. Genealogical works. Works belonging to this genre consist of information taken from individual census returns for the sake of its genealogical value. They are not normally statistical in nature.

To such works assign both the genealogical headings required to bring out their special contents (see, for example, H 1631 and H 1845) and the census headings required by this instruction sheet. These headings include the following:

650 #0 $a [*typical genealogical headings, such as* **Registers of births, etc.**; **Slave records**; **Military pensions**].
651 #0 $a [*locality*] $v Genealogy.
651 #0 $a [*national census heading*].
651 #0 $a [*heading for locality of census*].

2. Arrangement of events. *(Continued)*

g. Sacred works. Use the free-floating subdivision **–Chronology** under uniform titles for sacred works for discussions of the dating and order of occurrence of events mentioned in the sacred work, for example, **Book of Mormon–Chronology**.

3. Examples.

Title: Essays on Jewish chronology.
```
650 #0 $a Jewish chronology.
630 00 $a Bible. $p Old Testament $x Chronology.
```

Title: Chronology of the first crusade.
```
650 #0 $a Crusades $y First, 1096-1099 $v Chronology.
```

Title: Two hundred years of military medicine.
```
610 10 $a United States.  $b Army Medical Department
        $x History $v Chronology.
650 #0 $a Medicine, Military $z United States $x History
        $v Chronology.
```

Title: Milestone political events : 1945-1975.
```
650 #0 $a World politics $y 1945- $v Chronology.
```

Title: A guide to the published works of Benjamin Constant.
```
600 10 $a Constant, Benjamin, $d 1767-1830 $v Bibliography.
600 10 $a Constant, Benjamin, $d 1767-1830 $v Chronology.
```

Title: The pages of rock history.
```
650 #0 $a Rock music $v Chronology.
```

Title: A chronology of Afro-American history.
```
650 #0 $a African Americans $x History $v Chronology.
```

Title: A key to the Mesoamerican reckoning of time.
```
650 #0 $a Indian chronology $z Mexico.
650 #0 $a Indian chronology $z Central America.
650 #0 $a Maya chronology.
650 #0 $a Aztec chronology.
```

2. Assignment of headings. *(Continued)*

- appropriate heading(s) to bring out any special topics of the collection that have not been covered by the headings assigned in accordance with the above provisions. Use the subdivision **–Private collections**, **–Catalogs and collections**, or a form subdivision appropriate to the work (for example, **–Pictorial works**, **–Bibliography**, etc.).

- the heading for the institution where the collection is currently housed, if it has been donated or sold by the original owner.

Note: Partial title added entries were formerly made to bring out the name by which a collection is known if this name appeared embedded in the title of the work being cataloged. That practice is no longer followed.

The following examples illustrate the headings to be assigned for each title shown. The order of the headings has been determined by the nature of the work cataloged and the classification number that would be assigned to it, using the general guidelines presented in H 80.

Title: Catalog of the Abram & Frances Pascher Kanof collection of Yiddish theatre posters found in the Library of the American Jewish Historical Society.

```
650 #0 $a Theater, Yiddish $x Posters $x Private collections
          $z Massachusetts $z Waltham $v Catalogs.
650 #0 $a Theatrical posters $x Private collections
          $z Massachusetts $z Waltham $v Catalogs.
600 10 $a Kanof, Abram, $d 1903-1999 $x Poster collections
          $v Catalogs.
600 10 $a Kanof, Frances Pascher $x Poster collections
          $v Catalogs.
610 20 $a American Jewish Historical Society.  $b Library
          $v Catalogs.
```

Title: Catalogue of coins collected by Maulvi Hakim Habibar Rahman Khan Akhunzada of Dacca and presented to the Dacca Museum.

```
650 #0 $a Coins, Indic $x Private collections $z Bangladesh
          $z Dhaka $v Catalogs.
600 10 $a Habibar, Rahman Khan, $d 1881-  $x Coin
          collections $v Catalogs.
610 20 $a Dacca Museum $v Catalogs.
```

2. Assignment of headings. *(Continued)*

Title: Banjos, the Tsumura collection.

```
600 10 $a Tsumura, Akira, $d 1936-  $x Musical instrument
          collections $v Catalogs.
650 #0 $a Banjo $v Catalogs and collections $z Japan.
```

Title: A catalogue of the Muriel R. Leeds collection of bonsai in the Yoshimura School of Bonsai, Briarcliff, N.Y.

```
650 #0 $a Bonsai $v Catalogs and collections $z New York
          (State) $z Briarcliff Manor.
600 10 $a Leeds, Muriel R. $x Bonsai collections
          $v Catalogs.
610 20 $a Yoshimura School of Bonsai $v Catalogs.
```

Title: A catalogue of the Roth collection in the University of Guyana Library.

```
650 #0 $a Indians $v Bibliography $v Catalogs.
600 10 $a Roth, Walter E. $q (Walter Edmund), $d 1861-1933 $x
          Library $v Catalogs.
610 20 $a University of Guyana. $b Library $v Catalogs.
```

Title: Gold and silver; photographs of Australian goldfields from the Holtermann Collection in Scranton.

```
651 #0 $a New South Wales $v Pictorial works.
650 #0 $a Gold mines and mining $z Australia $z New South
          Wales $v Pictorial works.
600 10 $a Holtermann, Bernard Otto, $d 1838-1885
          $x Photograph collections.
650 #0 $a Photograph collections $z Pennsylvania
          $z Scranton.
```

Title: Catalog of the William Mann Collection of California Indian arrow heads in the New York Archaeological Institute.

```
650 #0 $a Arrowheads $x Private collections $z New York
          (State) $z New York $v Catalogs.
650 #0 $a Indians of North America $x Antiquities $x Private
          collections $z New York (State) $z New York
          $v Catalogs.
651 #0 $a California $x Antiquities $x Private collections
          $v Catalogs.
600 10 $a Mann, William $x Archaeological collections
          $v Catalogs.
610 20 $a New York Archaeological Institute $v Catalogs.
```

Comics and Comic Characters H 1430

***BACKGROUND**: For works that consist of selections from a comic strip or single panel cartoon, as well as for works about a comic strip or cartoon, it is descriptive cataloging policy to provide an added entry for the title of the strip or cartoon when that title differs from the title of the work being cataloged, and to justify the added entry by means of a note if necessary. Descriptive catalogers are responsible for establishing these headings. It is subject cataloging policy to assign a genre/form term to selections from a comic strip or single-panel cartoon, and to graphic novels; headings to bring out their subject content are assigned only in limited circumstances, as described below. Subject headings are routinely assigned only to works about such strips or cartoons, or about graphic novels.*

This instruction sheet provides guidelines for assigning genre/form terms and subject headings to represent the content of graphic novels and selections from strips and cartoons; and also for assigning subject headings to works about individual comic strips, single panel cartoons, and comic characters. For classification of comic books and graphic novels, see F 565.

***1. Graphic novels, comic strips, and single panel cartoons**.*

a. Selections of comic strips or cartoons and original works of fiction, including graphic novels. Assign one of two genre/form terms in a 655 field with second indicator **0**: **Comic books, strips, etc.**, or **Graphic novels**. Consider to be a comic book:

- A collection or selection of comic strips or cartoons;
- A comic book cataloged as a serial; or,
- Selected issues of serial comics that have been collected and republished as monographs.

Consider to be a graphic novel any work created specifically for the publication in hand and that is complete, or intended to be complete, in one or more volumes.

In case of doubt, assign **Comic books, strips, etc.**

Assign subject headings according to the following guidelines, which follow general principles for fiction presented in H 1790, sec. 4.

(1) Biographical fiction. Assign the heading **[*name of biographee*]–Comic books, strips, etc.**

H 1430 Comics and Comic Characters

1. Graphic novels, comic strips, and single panel cartoons.

a. Selections of comic strips or cartoons and original works of fiction, including graphic novels. *(Continued)*

(2) Historical fiction. Assign the headings for specific historical events, periods, etc., with the subdivision **–Comic books, strips, etc.**, e.g. **World War, 1939-1945–Comic books, strips, etc.**, **San Francisco Earthquake and Fire, Calif., 1906–Comic books, strips, etc.**

Do not assign a heading of this type when the event or period is merely the backdrop of the story. Assign it only when the event or period is the principal focus of the work.

Interpret the term **historical fiction** broadly to include works about entities such as movements, corporate bodies or other jurisdictions, camps, parks, structures, geographical features other than regions, ethnic groups, disasters, categories of events, etc.

(3) Animal stories. Assign the heading **Animals–Comic books, strips, etc.** to individual works about animals in general. For a work about a specific type of animal, assign a heading for the type of animal with the subdivision **–Comic books, strips, etc.**, e.g. **Horses–Comic books, strips, etc.**

(4) Assignment of additional form subdivisions. When using **–Comic books, strips, etc.** as a form subdivision, do not add or interpose other form subdivisions. The form subdivision **–Comic books, strips, etc.** denotes both fiction and non-fiction works. For juvenile works, assign an additional heading subdivided by **–Juvenile literature** (for nonfiction works) or **–Juvenile fiction**.

b. Works about individual graphic novels, comic strips or cartoons. Assign the authorized title or name-title heading for a graphic novel, comic strip or single panel cartoon to works about such cartoons.

c. Works about graphic novels, comic strips or cartoons, treated collectively. Assign form and topical headings following the general principles in H 180 to bring out the form (e.g., **Graphic novels**; **Science fiction comic books, strips, etc.**), place of origin, and/or special topics discussed. Subdivide form headings by **–History and criticism** (e.g., **Graphic novels—History and criticism**).

2. Comic characters.

a. Establishing headings for characters. Establish new subject headings for groups of characters in graphic novels, comic strips or single panel cartoons under their names (cf. H 1610). Names of individual characters are established in the name authority file.

b. Assignment of headings for individual characters or groups of characters. Assign such headings to works of criticism about a particular comic or cartoon character. If appropriate, assign also the heading for the strip or cartoon itself. Do not use the subdivision **–History and criticism**. Do not assign headings for characters to fictional works featuring the character.

3. Nonfiction written in comic book or graphic novel style. Assign the appropriate subject heading array. Subdivide each heading by **–Comic books, strips, etc.**

4. Examples.

Title: Superman, Batman.
[selected issues of a comic serial republished as a monograph]
`655 #0 $a Comic books, strips, etc.`

Title: Wonder Woman annual.
`655 #0 $a Comic books, strips, etc.`

Title: Garfield chews the fat.
[selections from the comic strip]
`655 #0 $a Comic books, strips, etc.`

Title: The white lama.
[original work complete in six volumes]
`655 #0 $a Graphic novels.`

Title: The battle of the Alamo.
[nonfiction work about the Alamo]
`651 #0 $a Alamo (San Antonio, Texas) $x Siege, 1836 $v Comic books, strips, etc.`

4. Examples. *(Continued)*

Title: Peanuts : a golden celebration : the art and story of the world's best-loved comic strip.

```
600 10 $a Schulz, Charles M. $q (Charles Monroe), $d 1922-2000.
          $t Peanuts.
```

Title: Webslinger : unauthorized essays on your friendly neighborhood Spider-Man.
[work of history and criticism]

```
650 #0 $a Spider-Man (Fictitious character)
```

Title: Sugar and spice : little girls in the funnies : an exhibition of Peanuts girls and their predecessors, contemporaries, and successors : February 4 to May 29, 2006.
[work of history and criticism]

```
650 #0 $a Comic books, strips, etc. $z United States $x History
          and criticism $v Exhibitions.
650 #0 $a Girls in literature $v Exhibitions.
650 #0 $a Girls in art $v Exhibitions.
600 10 $a Schulz, Charles M. $q (Charles Monroe), $d 1922-2000.
          $t Peanuts.
```

Commentaries on Individual Works H 1435

***BACKGROUND**: A commentary is a work that criticizes or comments on another work. It may be published independently or in conjunction with the text of the original work. If a commentary is published with the original work, the decision to treat the item, for subject cataloging purposes, as an edition of the original work or as a commentary should parallel the treatment decision made by the descriptive cataloger in accordance with rule 6.27.1.1 of RDA, which is described below. The central feature in subject cataloging of commentaries is the assignment of a name-title or uniform title subject heading in addition to other headings. This instruction sheet describes the subject headings to be assigned to commentaries, and presents criteria for deciding whether to treat a work as an edition or as a commentary when it consists of a text or texts by one author with commentary by another. For classification of commentaries, see F 570.*

TREATMENT OF A WORK AS AN EDITION OR AS A COMMENTARY: When a text by one author is published in conjunction with commentary, exegesis, or interpretation by another author, rule 6.27.1.6 of RDA specifies that if the "chief source of information" (generally the title page) presents the item as a commentary, main entry is made under the author of the commentary. If the item is presented as an edition, main entry is made under the author or uniform title of the original work. In marginal cases, main entry is made according to the judgment of the descriptive cataloger about the aspect emphasized.

This decision generally governs subject cataloging as well:

> If the main entry is the author of the commentary, the work is treated as a commentary.
>
> If the main entry is the author of the original work or the uniform title appropriate to the original work, the item is treated as an edition of that work.
>
>> If 20% or more of the work consists of commentary, the work should be assigned not only those headings, if any, appropriate to the edition of the original work but also the name-title or uniform title subject heading appropriate to commentaries, as described in sec. 3, below.

H 1435 Commentaries on Individual Works

ASSIGNMENT OF SUBJECT HEADINGS TO COMMENTARIES: When a work is treated as a commentary, assign the following subject headings:

1. Name-title or uniform title subject heading.

a. General rule. For works entered under an author (personal or corporate), this heading consists of the name of the author followed by a period and the title of the work with any initial article in the nominative case omitted. For works entered under title, it consists of the *uniform* title alone. For sacred books and anonymous classics, see sec. 1.c. *Examples:*

Title: Shakespeare's English comedy : The merry wives of Windsor in context.

```
600 10 $a Shakespeare, William, $d 1564-1616. $t Merry
        wives of Windsor.
```

Title: The church of the poor : a commentary on Paul VI's encyclical On the development of peoples.

```
610 20 $a Catholic Church. $b Pope (1963-1978 : Paul
        VI). $t Populorum progressio.
```

Title: Without fear or favor : the New York times and its times.

```
630 00 $a New York times.
```

(These examples are intended to illustrate only this heading; other headings may also be required.)

With the exception of sacred works, as described in sec. 1.c., such elements as language of the text, translator, version, edition, publication date, etc. are not added to this heading. For a commentary on a part of a work, such headings may include part or section designations, for example, **Hippocrates. Epidemics. Book 6**.

LC practice:
b. Determining the correct form. Under certain conditions, descriptive catalogers are required to create name authority records for name-title combinations or for uniform titles. Generally they do not create such records. In order to ensure that the required heading is formulated correctly, proceed as follows:

ASSIGNMENT OF SUBJECT HEADINGS TO COMMENTARIES:

1. Name-title or uniform title subject heading.

LC practice:
b. Determining the correct form. *(Continued)*

(1) Name authority record exists. Search in the name authority file to determine whether an RDA authority record has been created for the name-title *combination* or for the uniform title needed. If an RDA authority record exists, assign the heading in the form given in the record, punctuating it as described above. If an authority record has been created for a uniform title constructed in the form **[*author*]. [*form*]. Selections** and a see reference has been made from the form **[*author*]. [*title page title*]**, omit the term **Selections** when assigning the uniform title as a subject heading.

(2) Name authority record does not exist. If an authority record is not found, request a descriptive cataloger to provide the proper form.

Note: Once a name-title or uniform title has been formulated by a descriptive cataloger for use as a subject heading in an RDA record, it is not necessary to request the form from the descriptive cataloger each time the heading must be assigned. Therefore, if an RDA bibliographic record exists that uses as a subject heading a name-title combination or a uniform title, assign it in the same form to any new work being cataloged. When in doubt, however, request the proper form from a descriptive cataloger.

c. Sacred works (including individual parts) and anonymous classics. Use as the uniform title subject heading the form of the title that would be used as the main entry for an edition of the work itself. In addition, assign the appropriate form subdivision. *Examples:*

Title: The Koran : an exegetical commentary.
```
630 00 $a Qur'an $v Commentaries.
```

Title: The concept of character in the Apocalypse.
```
630 00 $a Bible. $p Revelation $x Criticism,
        interpretation, etc.
```

H 1435 Commentaries on Individual Works

ASSIGNMENT OF SUBJECT HEADINGS TO COMMENTARIES:

1. Name-title or uniform title subject heading.

c. Sacred works (including individual parts) and anonymous classics. *(Continued)*

For works discussing versions of sacred works, or of their individual parts, in specific languages, assign the formulation of the uniform title that includes the language. Use the appropriate subdivision after this heading. *Example:*

Title: A history of the English Bible.

```
630 00 $a Bible. $l English $x Versions $x History.
```

d. Commentaries on commentaries. For a work that is a commentary on another commentary (a phenomenon that occurs most frequently in connection with religious texts), assign the appropriate name-title or uniform title subject heading both for the original work and for the commentary being commented upon.

2. Companion headings. In addition to the name-title or uniform title for the work being discussed, assign, if appropriate, the same topical headings that were or would be assigned to an edition of the work itself.

Note: Omit any form subdivisions, such as ***–Early works to 1800****, that were added to the headings assigned to the original work, if they are not applicable to the commentary.*

Examples:

Original work: *Bentham, Jeremy, 1748-1832. The constitutional code.*

```
650 #0 $a Constitutional law.
```

Commentary: *Rosen, F. Jeremy Bentham and representative democracy : a study of the Constitutional code.*

```
600 10 $a Bentham, Jeremy, $d 1748-1832.
          $t Constitutional code.
650 #0 $a Constitutional law.
```

ASSIGNMENT OF SUBJECT HEADINGS TO COMMENTARIES:

2. Companion headings.

Examples: (Continued)

Original work: *Berkeley, George, 1685-1753. A treatise concerning the principles of human knowledge.*

```
650 #0 $a Knowledge, Theory of $v Early
        works to 1800.
650 #0 $a Idealism $v Early works to 1800.
```

Commentary: *Luce, A. A. (Arthur Aston), 1882- Berkeley's immaterialism : a commentary on his A treatise concerning the principles of human knowledge.*

```
600 10 $a Berkeley, George, $d 1685-1753.
          $t Treatise concerning the
          principles of human knowledge.
650 #0 $a Knowledge, Theory of.
650 #0 $a Idealism.
```

Textual criticism. Do not assign such headings if the commentary does not discuss the substantive matter of the original work, but is only textual criticism. Instead, assign additional headings if needed to bring out the nature or focus of the commentary. *Example:*

Original work: *Aristotle. [Nicomachean ethics. English] The Nicomachean ethics.*

```
650 #0 $a Ethics $v Early works to
        1800.
```

Commentary: *Bywater, Ingram, 1840-1914. Contributions to the textual criticism of Aristotle's Nicomachean ethics.*

```
600 00 $a Aristotle. $t Nicomachean
        ethics.
```

H 1435 Commentaries on Individual Works

ASSIGNMENT OF SUBJECT HEADINGS TO COMMENTARIES:

2. Companion headings. *(Continued)*

Conversion of form headings to topical headings. If the headings assigned to the original work are used only as form headings, convert them to their most appropriate topical equivalents when assigning them as headings to a commentary on the work. *Examples:*

Form heading: `651 #0 $a Egypt $x History $v Fiction.`
Topical equivalent: `651 #0 $a Egypt $x In literature.`

Form heading: `600 00 $a Ywain $v Legends.`
Topical equivalent: `600 00 $a Ywain $x Legends $x History and criticism.`

Form heading: `651 #0 $a United States $x History $y Civil War, 1861-1865 $v Fiction.`
Topical equivalent: `651 #0 $a United States $x History $y Civil War, 1861-1865 $x Literature and the war.`

Form heading: `650 #0 $a Agriculture $v Periodicals.`
Topical equivalent: `650 #0 $a Agriculture $x Periodicals $x History.`

3. Treatment of works consisting of both original text and commentary.

a. If entered under author of original work. Assign headings, if any, appropriate to the text of the original work. If the commentary is 20% or more of the work being cataloged, assign also the name-title or uniform title heading appropriate to a commentary on the work.

b. If entered under the author of the commentary. Assign the name-title or uniform title heading appropriate to a commentary on the work, and any other headings appropriate to the text of the original work.

Composers and Works about Music of Individual Composers H 1438

1. Works about individual composers. For general works about an individual composer, assign the personal name heading for the composer, subdivided by appropriate subdivisions from H 1110.

a. Comprehensive works. For comprehensive discussions or criticism of a composer's works, subdivide the name of the composer by **–Criticism and interpretation**. *Example:*

Title: Benjamin Britten, his music.

```
600 10 $a Britten, Benjamin, $d 1913-1976 $x Criticism
          and interpretation.
```

b. Works on specific topics or forms. Use more specific subdivisions for works about the composer that have a particular focus or form: **–Appreciation**; **–Discography**; **–Harmony**; **–Influence**; **–Performances**; **–Sources**; **–Stories, plots, etc.**; **–Symbolism**; **–Thematic catalogs**; **–Written works**; etc. *Examples:*

Title: Bartok's harmonic language.

```
600 10 $a Bartók, Béla, $d 1881-1945 $x Harmony.
```

Title: Chopin playing : from the composer to the present day.

```
600 10 $a Chopin, Frédéric, $d 1810-1849
          $x Performances.
650 #0 $a Piano music $x Interpretation (Phrasing,
          dynamics, etc.)
```

Title: Beiträge zur Symbolsprache Johann Sebastian Bachs.

```
600 10 $a Bach, Johann Sebastian, $d 1685-1750
          $x Symbolism.
```

c. Biographical works. For biographical works about an individual composer, follow the provisions of H 1330, assigning the name of the composer with an appropriate biographical subdivision from H 1110, if needed, as well as a heading for the class of persons with appropriate biographical subdivision.

H 1438 Composers and Works about Music of Individual Composers

2. Works about specific compositions. For works discussing a single composition, assign the name-title heading for the composition. *Example:*

Title: Some thoughts on Beethoven's Choral symphony.

```
600 10 $a Beethoven, Ludwig van, $d 1770-1827.
          $t Symphonies, $n no. 9, op. 125, $r D minor.
```

3. Works about compositions in a musical form or for a general or specific medium of performance. To works discussing compositions by one composer in a specific form or medium, assign a name-title heading using a collective uniform title formulated according to RDA instructions. Do not use the uniform title "Selections" or one ending with "Selections." Do not add any of the additions prescribed in rule 6.28.3. Assign two such headings if necessary, rather than using a single collective uniform title whose scope is much broader than the coverage of the work being cataloged. If a name-title heading being assigned is not represented by an authority record in the name authority file, create one for it. Assign additional headings for the type of music subdivided by appropriate form and topical subdivisions from H 1160. *Examples:*

Title: Analysis of Mahler's symphonies.

```
600 10 $a Mahler, Gustav, $d 1860-1911. $t Symphonies.
650 #0 $a Symphonies $x Analysis, appreciation.
```

Title: The symphonies and overtures of Beethoven.

```
600 10 $a Beethoven, Ludwig van, $d 1770-1827.
          $t Symphonies.
600 10 $a Beethoven, Ludwig van, $d 1770-1827. $t Overtures.
650 #0 $a Symphony.
650 #0 $a Overture.
```

Title: The chamber music of Beethoven and Brahms.

```
600 10 $a Beethoven, Ludwig van, $d 1770-1827. $t Chamber
          music.
600 10 $a Brahms, Johannes, $d 1833-1897. $t Chamber music.
650 #0 $a Chamber music $x History and criticism.
```

Controversial Literature H 1472

BACKGROUND: *The form subdivision* ***–Controversial literature*** *is used under headings for individual religions, sects or denominations, under religious and monastic orders, and under sacred works, for works that argue against or express opposition toward those groups or works. The practice of using the subdivision under headings for general religious and philosophical topics was discontinued in 1998. The practice of using the subdivision for works that argue either for or against the topic and of further subdividing it by* ***–Pro*** *or* ***–Con*** *was discontinued in 1972. The form subdivision* ***–Apologetic works*** *is used under names of religions or denominations for works explaining the religion or denomination and defending it against criticism from the outside. This instruction sheet provides guidelines for assigning the subdivisions* ***–Controversial literature*** and ***–Apologetic works****.*

1. Religions, denominations, etc. Use the free-floating subdivision **–Controversial literature** under religions and their sects, Christian denominations, and monastic and religious orders for works that express opposition to these organizations and their beliefs, especially those written by authors from outside the group being discussed. *Examples:*

```
650 #0 $a Buddhism $v Controversial literature.
610 20 $a Catholic Church $v Controversial literature.
610 20 $a Jesuits $v Controversial literature.
```

Use this subdivision directly under the name of the religion, denomination, etc., for works that express opposition to these groups. Do not interpose another form or topical subdivision between the name of the religion and the subdivision **–Controversial literature**.

For works explaining a religion or denomination and defending it against criticism from the outside, use the free-floating form subdivision **–Apologetic works** under the name of the religion or denomination. *Examples:*

Title: Searching for sense : the logic of Catholic belief.

```
610 20 $a Catholic Church $v Apologetic works.
```

Title: A defense of Judaism versus proselytizing Christianity.

```
650 #0 $a Christianity $v Controversial literature.
650 #0 $a Judaism $v Apologetic works.
```

H 1472 Controversial Literature

2. Sacred works. Use the free-floating form subdivision **–Controversial literature** under sacred works or their individual parts for works that express opposition to these writings, question their authoritativeness, dispute their divine inspiration, etc. *Examples:*

```
630 00 $a Bible. $p Genesis $v Controversial literature.
630 00 $a Book of Mormon $v Controversial literature.
```

Use this subdivision directly under the uniform title for a sacred work or its individual parts. Do not interpose another form or topical subdivision between the uniform title and the subdivision **–Controversial literature**. *Example:*

```
     630 00 $a Bible $v Controversial literature.
[not 630 00 $a Bible $x Inspiration $v Controversial literature.]
```

Dwellings with Extensive Grounds H 1572

BACKGROUND: *Many properties, especially those of the National Trust in Great Britain, consist of a dwelling that is surrounded by extensive park-like grounds or gardens. In the past, establishing subject headings for these properties has been problematic and inconsistent with respect to tagging the headings and providing appropriate broader term references. Some have been tagged 151; others have been tagged 110. Various headings have been assigned as broader terms, such as* ***Parks****,* ***Dwellings****,* ***Manors****,* ***Gardens****, etc. This instruction sheet provides standardized guidelines to be followed in establishing headings of this type in the future.*

1. General rule. Establish headings for dwellings that are surrounded by extensive grounds as geographic entities tagged 151.

2. Geographic qualifier. Follow the general guidelines for geographic qualifiers in H 1334 sec. 3.

3. UF references. Follow the general guidelines for UF references (cf. H 373).

4. BT references. Provide the following two broader term references:

```
550 $w g $a Dwellings $z [place]
550 $w g $a Gardens $z [place]
```

Do not use the headings **Manors** or **Parks** as broader terms even if one of these terms is part of the name of the entity being established.

Examples:

```
151 $a Great Chalfield Manor (England)
550 $w g $a Dwellings $z England
550 $w g $a Gardens $z England

151 $a Attingham Park (England)
550 $w g $a Dwellings $z England
550 $w g $a Gardens $z England
```

5. National Trust properties. When establishing a heading for a property that is part of Great Britain's National Trust, generally favor the name found on the National Trust's Web site located at

http://www.nationaltrust.org.uk/main/

2. [. . .], House of.

b. References.

(1) UF references. Add appropriate 400 fields providing variant forms of the name. Also add 400 fields with the uninverted form of the heading and its variants.

(2) Broader terms. Add a 551 (broader term) field with the heading **[*country of origin*]–Kings and rulers** or **[*country most closely identified with royal house*]–Kings and rulers**. Do not make broader terms from **[*country*]–Kings and rulers** to indicate countries ruled by the particular royal house.

Examples:

```
100 3# $a Anjou, House of
400 3# $a Angevins
400 3# $a Angio, House of
400 3# $a House of Angio
400 3# $a House of Anjou
551 ## $w g $a France $x Kings and rulers
```

```
100 3# $a Saxe-Coburg-Gotha, House of
400 3# $a Coburg, House of
400 3# $a House of Coburg
400 3# $a House of Saxe-Coburg-Gotha
551 ## $w g $a Germany $x Kings and rulers
```

H 1574 Dynasties, Royal Houses, etc.

3. [. . .], Dukes of; [. . .], Counts of; [. . .], Earls of.

a. Form of heading. Establish individually named houses of dukes, counts, or earls as inverted phrase headings. Such headings are based on a place name followed by a comma and the phrase **Dukes of**, **Counts of**, or **Earls of**, as appropriate. Do not use the vernacular equivalents of the phrases **Dukes of** or **Counts of**. Tag these headings **100**, with first indicator **3** and second indicator **blank**.

Although such headings normally include a place name, do not convert the name to an RDA form. For example, use the form **Spoleto, Dukes of** rather than **Spoleto (Italy), Dukes of**.

b. References.

(1) UF references. Add a 400 field with the straight form of the heading for the specific noble house.

(2) Broader terms. Add a 550 (broader term) field with the heading **Nobility–[*country*]**.

Examples:

```
100 3# $a Devonshire, Dukes of
400 3# $a Dukes of Devonshire
550 ## $w g $a Nobility $z England


100 3# $a Parma, Dukes of
400 3# $a Dukes of Parma
550 ## $w g $a Nobility $z Italy


100 3# $a Toulouse, Counts of
400 3# $a Counts of Toulouse
550 ## $w g $a Nobility $z France


100 3# $a Gloucester, Earls of
400 3# $a Earls of Gloucester
550 ## $w g $a Nobility $z England
```

Events H 1592

***BACKGROUND**: For the purposes of this instruction sheet, an event is defined as something noteworthy that occurs or occurred in a certain place during a discrete interval of time. A specific event may be brought out in subject headings in one of several ways, depending on the nature of the event. Most commonplace, day-to-day events are generic or not significant enough to be referred to by specific names. Works about such events are usually assigned subject headings of the type **[topic]–[place]–History**, for example, **Dust storms–Illinois–History**. Guidance in assigning headings for events of this type is provided in H 1560, **Disasters, riots, demonstrations, etc.** and H 1647, **History**, which should be consulted in addition to this instruction sheet. Some major events are of such significance that they become known by conventional proper names. These may be either unique events that occurred only one time and in one place, for example, **Haymarket Square Riot, Chicago, Ill., 1886**, or events that are repetitive in nature and occur on a regular or irregular basis in a single place or in various places, for example, **Miss America Pageant**; **Tournament of Roses**; **Daytona 500 (Automobile race)**; **Athens Black-eyed Pea Jamboree**.*

Before August 1996, events such as conferences, exhibitions, shows, fairs, and formally organized festivals were established in the name authority file as meeting names tagged 111, while other events, including contests, parades, athletic competitions, and folk festivals were established in the subject authority file as topical headings tagged 150. In 1995, the Task Force on Name Versus Subject Authorities of the Program for Cooperative Cataloging considered the issue of headings for events and recommended that those events that are (1) formally convened; (2) directed toward a common goal; (3) capable of being reconvened; and (4) have formal names, locations, dates, and durations that can be determined in advance of the event be established in the name authority file. Those events that generally cannot be repeated and have no formal names but are commonly referred to by generic terms, or acquire names after the fact, should continue to be established in the subject authority file. In August 1996, these recommendations were put into effect.

*This instruction sheet contains guidelines for transferring from the subject authority file to the name authority file those headings for events that were established according to the provisions in force prior to August 1996, and for establishing as subject headings those events that are governed by subject cataloging conventions as either phrases or subdivisions under names of persons, corporate bodies, or places. This instruction sheet does not cover informal festivals that are characterized as feasts, folk celebrations, or holidays, such as **Christmas**. Guidelines for establishing some specific types of events are contained in other instruction sheets. For instructions on establishing names of individual battles, see H 1285; for instructions on disasters, riots, demonstrations, and hurricanes, see H 1560; for instructions on strikes and lockouts, see H 2100; for instructions on trials, see H 2228.*

H 1592 Events

1. Categories of events established as subject headings. The following is a list of the types of events that are established in the subject authority file according to the guidelines in this instruction sheet. When established as phrase headings entered directly under their own names, headings for individual events of these types are tagged **150**.

Accidents
Assassinations
Bombings, explosions
Coronations
Cruises, flights
Cultural revolutions
Epidemics, famines
Fires
Funerals
Hijackings
Imprisonments
Inaugurations
Massacres
Military engagements, raids, battles, wars, revolutions, occupations, invasions, operations
Natural disasters
Political incidents, affairs, scandals
Purges
Reigns, rules
Riots, demonstrations
Sieges, blockades
Special days, weeks, months, years, decades, umbrella terms for events that are composed of multiple individual public celebrations, pageants, anniversaries
Strikes
Trials
Uprisings, mutinies
Weddings

2. Categories of events established as name headings. The following is a list of events established in the name authority file. They are tagged **111**.

Athletic contests
Competitions
Conferences
Contests
Exhibitions
Expeditions, Military, that are not military engagements, see sec. 1, above
Expeditions, Scientific
Expositions
Fairs
Festivals and celebrations
Folk festivals and celebrations
Games (Events)
Meetings
Parades
Public celebrations, pageants, anniversaries
Races (Contests)
Shows (Exhibitions)
Sporting events
Tournaments

3. General rule for name headings. Search both the name authority file and subject authority file to determine whether a heading for an individual event of a type listed in sec. 2 is already established. If a heading for the event exists in the name authority file in RDA form, assign it as a subject heading. If a heading exists in the subject authority file, transfer the heading to the name authority file or request a descriptive cataloger to do so. Submit a proposal to delete the subject authority record following the provisions of H 193, sec. 14 and H 193.5. If a heading does not exist in either file, establish the event in the name authority file or request a descriptive cataloger to do so.

4. Event headings in phrase form. The majority of events of the type listed in sec. 1 are established as phrase headings directly under their own names, according to the following model:

```
150 ## $a [name of event], [name of jurisdiction or locality],
          [date or date span]
450 ## $a [alternate name(s) of event], [name of
          jurisdiction or locality], [date or date span]
550 ## $w g $a [type of event] $z [place, if appropriate]
```

a. Name of the event. Where possible, use conventional terminology or the generally accepted name in English. If the name is unavailable in English, and it is impossible to translate the name into an acceptable equivalent in English, use the name in the vernacular.

Whenever possible, use the expression that places the substantive portion of the name in the initial position. Do not, however, invert names for this purpose unless there is a well-established pattern for doing so, as in the case of battles (cf. H 1285).

4. Event headings in phrase form. *(Continued)*

b. Name of the jurisdiction or locality.

(1) Events in a single city. For an event that occurred in a particular city, use the name of the city as established in the name authority file but using commas in place of parentheses. *Example:*

```
150 ## $a Haymarket Square Riot, Chicago, Ill., 1886
```

Include the name of the city as a qualifier even if it is also part of the substantive portion of the name of the event. *Example:*

```
150 ## $a Port Chicago Mutiny, Port Chicago, Calif., 1944
```

The name of the city used as a qualifier should reflect the situation at the time the event occurred. Use names of cities that have ceased to exist, if appropriate, but do not use a city as a qualifier if the site of the event was not within the city's boundaries at the time it occurred. When using a city as a qualifier, use the latest form of name for the city that is valid for use as a subject heading.

(2) Events not in a single city. For an event occurring in various cities or not in a city, use the name of the country if it occurs in a single country. If it occurs in more than one country, do not qualify by place.

For an event occurring in Canada, Great Britain, or the United States in various cities or not in a city, use the name of the province, constituent country, or state, if it is so limited. If it occurs in more than one of these first order divisions of Canada or Great Britain, use the name of the country. If it occurs in more than one state of the United States, do not qualify by place. If it occurs in more than one country, do not qualify by place.

c. Date. Provide the date only for a unique event. If the event spanned a period of more than one year, specify the full range of years. If it is necessary to specify a month and day in order to resolve a conflict and create a unique heading, follow the instructions provided in H 1078, sec. 3.

d. References. Add 450 fields with variant names and 550 (broader term) fields containing the generic heading for the type of event divided by the country where the event occurred. Since *LCSH* is an English-language subject headings list, do not as a general rule add 450 fields using non-English forms unless those forms are found in English-language sources.

4. Event headings in phrase form. *(Continued)*

Examples:

```
150 ## $a Baneberry Nuclear Test, Nev., 1970
550 ## $w g $a Nuclear weapons $z Nevada $x Testing
550 ## $w g $a Underground nuclear explosions $z Nevada
```

```
150 ## $a Bear River Massacre, Idaho, 1863
450 ## $a Bia Ogoi Massacre, Idaho, 1863
550 ## $w g $a Massacres $z Idaho
550 ## $w g $a Shoshoni Indians $x Wars, 1863-1865
```

```
150 ## $a Bhopal Union Carbide Plant Disaster, Bhopal, India, 1984
450 ## $a Bhopal Disaster, Bhopal, India, 1984
450 ## $a Bhopal Poisonous Gas Disaster, Bhopal, India,
          1984
450 ## $a Union Carbide Bhopal Disaster, Bhopal, India,
          1984
550 ## $w g $a Pesticides industry $x Accidents $z India
```

```
150 ## $a Black Hole Incident, Kolkata, India, 1756
450 ## $w nne $a Black Hole Incident, Calcutta, India, 1756
450 ## $a Black Hole of Calcutta Incident, Kolkata,
          India, 1756
551 ## $w g $a Kolkata (India) $x History
```

```
150 ## $a Hurricane Flora, 1963
450 ## $a Ciclón Flora, 1963
450 ## $a Flora, Hurricane, 1963
450 ## $a Huracán Flora, 1963
550 ## $w g $a Hurricanes
```

```
150 ## $a TWA Flight 847 Hijacking Incident, 1985
450 ## $a Beirut Hostage Crisis, Beirut, Lebanon, 1985
450 ## $a Hijacking of TWA Flight 847, 1985
450 ## $a Hostage Crisis, Beirut, Lebanon, 1985
450 ## $a Trans World Airlines Flight 847 Hijacking
          Incident, 1985
450 ## $a TWA Hijacking Incident, 1985
450 ## $a TWA Hostage Crisis, 1985
550 ## $w g $a Hijacking of aircraft
```

5. Event headings as subdivisions. Although most event headings are established in phrase form, certain types of events are formulated as subdivisions under a main heading. This occurs most frequently (a) when a single person or corporate body is the principal participant in, or focus of, the event, in which case the heading is formulated as:

```
100 (or 110) ## $a [name of person or corporate body] $x [name of
                   event], [date]
```

or (b) when the event represents a momentous occurrence in the history of a place, in which case the heading is formulated as:

```
151 ## $a [name of place] $x History $y [name of event], [date]
```

Note: Subdivisions with dates used under names of persons or corporate bodies are treated as topical subdivisions qualified by date and are subfield coded ***$x****. Subdivisions of the type* ***–History–[event], [date]*** *are treated as chronological subdivisions subfield coded* ***$y*** *(cf. H 620, sec. 1.e.(1)).*

a. Persons. Formulate headings for specific named events focused entirely on an individual person as follows:

```
100 X# [name of person] $x [name of event], [date]
```

Use either standard free-floating subdivisions listed in H 1110, *Free-Floating Subdivisions: Names of Persons*, or in the case of unusually significant persons, such as founders of religions, establish unique subdivisions under the person's name. Use dates whenever they can be determined, both with free-floating subdivisions where they are authorized, and with new subdivisions established specifically under particular persons (see H 1078 for guidelines on formulating the date element). Do not change existing subdivisions established under specific individuals without dates. Do not add dates to free-floating subdivisions where they are not authorized.

Examples:

```
100 1# $a Reagan, Ronald $x Assassination attempt, 1981
100 1# $a Perón, Juan Domingo, $d 1895-1974 $x Inauguration,
          1973
100 0# $a Muḥammad, $c Prophet, $d -632 $x Farewell
          pilgrimage
100 1# $a Begin, Menachem, $d 1913-1992 $x Imprisonment
```

5. Event headings as subdivisions. *(Continued)*

b. Corporate bodies. Formulate headings for specific named events focused entirely on an individual corporate body as follows:

```
110 X# $a [name of corporate body] $x [name of event],
          [date]
```

Use the standard free-floating subdivisions listed in H 1105, *Free-Floating Subdivisions: Corporate Bodies* or in the various lists of free-floating subdivisions controlled by pattern headings for specific types of corporate bodies, such as H 1159, *Pattern Headings: Military Services*. If a specific corporate body is established in the subject authority file with a unique subdivision for an unusual event, use the established form.

Exception: Headings for strikes involving a particular corporate body are not constructed according to the above pattern. For guidelines on establishing headings for strikes, see H 2100.

Examples:

```
110 2# $a Gallaudet University $x Student strike, 1988
110 2# $a Triangle Shirtwaist Company $x Fire, 1911
110 1# $a United States. $b Navy $x Cruise, 1925
```

5. Event headings as subdivisions. *(Continued)*

c. Countries. Formulate headings for specific events as subdivisions under the name of a country when the event is a watershed military or political event involving the entire country, such as a civil war, revolution, occupation, conquest, invasion, intervention, uprising, purge, or a political incident having major ramifications. For events of this type, use the following formulation:

```
151 ## $a [country] $x History $y [name of event], [date]
```

Select conventional terminology for the name of the event, that is, the generally accepted name in English. Treat it as a proper name, uppercasing all of the substantive words with the exception of those listed in Appendix B sec. 16. Follow the provisions of H 1078 regarding the year or span of years, and the month and day. *Examples:*

```
151 ## $a United States $x History $y French and Indian War,
          1754-1763
151 ## $a United States $x History $y Revolution, 1775-1783
151 ## $a China $x History $y Sian Incident, 1936
151 ## $a Germany $x History $y Night of the Long Knives,
          1934
151 ## $a Naples (Kingdom) $x History $y Jacobin Conspiracy,
          1794
```

Note: The subdivisions ***–History–Bombardment, [date]****;* ***–History–Partition, [date]****; and* ***–History–Siege, [date]*** *are no longer free-floating under names of countries, cities, etc., and must be established where needed.*

Establish the following in phrase rather than subdivision form: (a) named events that involve two or more countries, except for invasions, occupations, etc., of one country by another, which are established as subdivisions, for example, **Panama–History–American Invasion, 1989**; (b) named events that have only local significance, such as minor uprisings or massacres; and (c) minor political incidents, including affairs and scandals. Follow the provisions in sec. 4, above. For example, Shays' Rebellion was a local disturbance in Massachusetts, not a rebellion against the United States as a whole. It is therefore appropriately established as a phrase heading rather than as a subdivision under **United States–History**. When in doubt as to the significance of a particular event, prefer the phrase form over the subdivision form, even though the event may later prove to have had major significance. For example, **Watergate Affair, 1972-1974** was established in phrase form because its importance could not be judged at the time the heading was first established.

5. Event headings as subdivisions. *(Continued)*

d. Cities and other local jurisdictions. Establish names of events as subdivisions under names of cities and other local jurisdictions in the same manner as subdivisions under names of countries. Note that such subdivisions are usually limited to various types of military engagements, such as bombardments, captures, sieges, etc. *Examples:*

```
151 ## $a Paris (France) $x History $y Capitulation, 1815
151 ## $a Berlin (Germany) $x History $y Blockade, 1948-1949
151 ## $a Madrid (Spain) $x History $y Siege, 1936-1939
```

Exception: Headings for battles involving a particular city or locality are not constructed according to the above pattern. For guidelines on establishing headings for battles, see H 1285.

e. Assigning headings to provide for subordinate jurisdictions. When an event heading is formulated as a subdivision under a main heading for a jurisdiction, it is not possible to bring out a smaller jurisdiction in the same heading. In order to do so, a second heading is required:

(1) `651 #0 $a [`*`name of larger jurisdiction`*`] $x History $y [`*`name of event`*`], [`*`date`*`]`

(2) `651 #0 $a [`*`name of smaller jurisdiction`*`] $x History $y [`*`period subdivision, if established`*`]`

Example:

Title: Aragon in the Spanish revolution.

```
651 #0 $a Spain $x History $y Civil War, 1936-1939.
651 #0 $a Aragon (Spain) $x History $y 20th century.
```

5. Event headings as subdivisions.

e. Assigning headings to provide for subordinate jurisdictions. *(Continued)*

Exception for U.S. wars: In cases where a war is established under the heading **United States–History**, bring out the war in relation to localities such as large regions, states, or major cities by establishing the war as an event under the name of the region, state, or city. *Examples:*

```
651 #0 $a Baltimore (Md.) $x History $y Revolution,
          1775-1783
651 #0 $a New England $x History $y French and Indian
          War, 1754-1763
```

For *general works* about the war in a specific locality, assign only the heading for the locality subdivided by the name of the war. Do not assign the heading for the larger jurisdiction subdivided in the same manner. For works about a *special topic* in connection with the war in a specific locality, however, assign the heading both for the larger jurisdiction subdivided by the name of the war and the appropriate topical subdivision (see H 1200) and for the locality subdivided by the name of the war and same topical subdivision. *Example:*

Title: Advance the colors : Pennsylvania Civil War battle flags.

```
651 #0 $a Pennsylvania $x History $y Civil War,
          1861-1865 $x Flags.
651 #0 $a Pennsylvania $x History $y Civil War,
          1861-1865 $x Regimental histories.
651 #0 $a United States $x History $y Civil War,
          1861-1865 $x Flags.
651 #0 $a United States $x History $y Civil War,
          1861-1865 $x Regimental histories.
```

Do not apply this exceptional practice for any place other than the United States. Where the practice was begun in the case of a few other countries, it was not carried out consistently, and therefore should not be continued.

4. Individual named exhibitions. *(Continued)*

b. Named exhibitions on special subjects. For guidebooks, catalogs, etc., to individual named exhibitions on special subjects, assign only headings of the type **[*topic*]– Exhibitions.**

Do not assign the name heading for the exhibition.

5. Examples.

Title: Chagall : a comprehensive retrospective.

```
600 10 #a Chagall, Marc, $d 1887-1985 $v Exhibitions.
```

Title: Shakespeare : an exhibition of books about Shakespeare belonging to the Lehigh University Library.

```
600 10 #a Shakespeare, William, $d 1564-1616 $v Bibliography
          $v Exhibitions.
650 #0 $a Rare books $v Bibliography $v Exhibitions.
610 20 $a Lehigh University.  $b Library.  $b Rare Book Room
          $v Exhibitions.
```

Title: Somalia in word and image.

```
651 #0 $a Somalia $x Social life and customs $v Exhibitions.
650 #0 $a Ethnology $z Somalia $v Exhibitions.
650 #0 $a Material culture $z Somalia $v Exhibitions.
```

Title: The age of Sultan Süleyman the Magnificent.

```
600 00 $a Süleyman $b I, $c Sultan of the Turks,
          $d 1494 or 1495-1566 $x Art patronage $v Exhibitions.
650 #0 $a Art, Ottoman $v Exhibitions.
651 #0 $a Turkey $x Civilization $y 16th century
          $v Exhibitions.
```

5. Examples. *(Continued)*

Title: Man and animals : the 100th anniversary of the School of Veterinary Medicine.

```
650 #0 $a Domestic animals $x History $v Exhibitions.
610 20 $a University of Pennsylvania. $b School of
          Veterinary Medicine $x History $v Exhibitions.
```

Title: The Philadelphia Centennial Exhibition : a catalog.

```
611 20 $a Centennial Exhibition $d (1876 : $c Philadelphia,
          Pa.) $v Catalogs.
```

Title: The complete guide to New York City and the World's Fair.

```
651 #0 $a New York (N.Y.) $v Guidebooks.
611 20 $a New York World's Fair $d (1964-1965 : $c New York,
          N.Y.) $v Guidebooks.
```

***BACKGROUND**: The subdivision **–Facsimiles** was formerly used only for collections of facsimile editions. The scope of usage of **–Facsimiles** has been expanded to include facsimile editions of individual manuscripts.*

***1. General rule**.* Use the subdivision **–Facsimiles** as a form subdivision under headings or subdivisions designating types of printed or written materials, documents, etc., for exact copies of the items in question, the originals of which were published or made at an earlier date.

Do not use **–Facsimiles** for a copy of a single work or a single example of the item in question. Use the subdivision only for a work that contains several copied works or examples (except for manuscripts and maps, as described below).

Examples:

```
650 #0 $a American newspapers $v Facsimiles.
650 #0 $a English letters $v Facsimiles.
650 #0 $a Block books $v Facsimiles.
650 #0 $a Autographs $v Facsimiles.
650 #0 $a Music $v Manuscripts $v Facsimiles.
650 #0 $a Bookbinding $v Facsimiles.
650 #0 $a Views $v Facsimiles.
630 #0 $a Bible $v Manuscripts, Greek $v Facsimiles.
600 10 $a Jefferson, Thomas, $d 1743-1826 $v Correspondence
          $v Facsimiles.
```

2. Manuscripts.

***a. General**.* To any facsimile collection of manuscripts, or to any facsimile edition of a single manuscript, assign the additional heading **Manuscripts, [*language*]– Facsimiles**.

***b. Works of individual literary authors, composers, etc**.* To a facsimile edition of such works (either collections or single works), assign a heading of the type **[*name of individual*]–Manuscripts–Facsimiles**. *Example:*

Title: Chaucer, Geoffrey, d. 1400. The Canterbury tales : a facsimile . . . 1978.

```
600 10 $a Chaucer, Geoffrey, $d -1400 $v Manuscripts
          $v Facsimiles.
650 #0 $a Manuscripts, English $v Facsimiles.
```

2. Manuscripts. *(Continued)*

c. Works on a topic. To any facsimile collection of manuscripts on a specific topic, assign headings of the type **[*topic*]–Manuscripts–Facsimiles**, for example, **Astrology–Manuscripts–Facsimiles**.

For a facsimile of a single work omit this heading. Accordingly, a facsimile of a single work on a topic might be assigned headings such as the following:

```
650 #0 $a Astronomy $v Early works to 1800.
650 #0 $a Manuscripts, Latin (Medieval and modern)
          $v Facsimiles.
```

d. Facsimiles of music manuscripts. Special procedures are applicable in the case of works of this kind. In addition to headings required because of the nature of the music contained in the works, assign to these works (either collections or single works) the heading **Music–Manuscripts–Facsimiles**. *Example:*

```
650 #0 $a Organ music.
650 #0 $a Music $v Manuscripts $v Facsimiles.
```

If the work is a facsimile of a manuscript written by a single composer, also assign a heading of the type **[*name of composer*]–Manuscripts–Facsimiles**. *Example:*

```
650 #0 $a Organ music.
650 #0 $a Music $v Manuscripts $v Facsimiles.
600 10 $a Bach, Johann Sebastian, $d 1685-1750
          $v Manuscripts $v Facsimiles.
```

3. Maps. For facsimile collections of maps, or facsimile editions of a single map, use the subdivision **–Facsimiles** under any heading or subdivision that designates maps or specific types of maps. *Examples:*

```
650 #0 $a Maps $v Facsimiles.
650 #0 $a Nautical charts $z Chesapeake Bay (Md. and Va.)
          $v Facsimiles.
651 #0 $a Philadelphia (Pa.) $v Aerial views $v Facsimiles.
651 #0 $a England $v Maps $v Facsimiles.
```

***BACKGROUND**: Fictitious characters may have names that resemble personal names or they may have names that are descriptive phrases or nicknames. Traditionally, all headings for fictitious characters were established in LCSH because fictitious characters could not be used as descriptive access points under AACR2. However, RDA permits names of individual fictitious characters to be used as descriptive access points when the character is credited with the creation of a work. In 2012 the decision was made to allow for two headings for fictitious characters. Headings established in LCSH under the guidelines in this instruction sheet were assigned as subject headings. Headings established in the name authority file were used as descriptive access points and could not be used as subjects.*

In 2013, a revision to RDA made it possible to establish all headings for individual fictitious characters in the name authority file. All headings for individual fictitious characters are now established in the name authority file in the 100 field of the MARC 21 authority record. The name headings may be used as subjects, tagged 600. Headings for groups of fictitious characters (e.g., the Hardy Boys, the Teenage Mutant Ninja Turtles) continue to be established in LCSH and are tagged 150.

As time permits, the Policy and Standards Division will undertake a project to create RDA name headings for the fictitious characters that are already established in LCSH, and cancel the subject heading records.

This instruction sheet provides guidelines for establishing groups of fictitious characters in LCSH and assigning subject headings for individual fictitious characters and groups of fictitious characters. It also describes the procedures for cancelling subject headings for individual fictitious characters when name authority records have been created.

For more specific instructions on comic and cartoon characters see H 1430; for legendary characters see H 1795.

1. Form of heading. Establish named groups of characters in direct form in the 150 field. Add the parenthetical qualifier **(Fictitious characters)**. *Examples:*

```
150 ## $a Hardy Boys (Fictitious characters)
150 ## $a Holt family (Fictitious characters)
150 ## $a Mystery Kids (Fictitious characters)
150 ## $a Teletubbies (Fictitious characters)
```

H 1610 Fictitious Characters

1. Form of heading. *(Continued)*

Do not establish individual characters, including married couples, who appear together in a fictional work, as a group. Instead, establish them as separate characters in the name authority file.

a. Characters with the same names. Differentiate groups of characters having the same names by adding the creator's name to the qualifier following a space, a colon, and another space. *Example:*

```
150 ## $a Logan family (Fictitious characters : Andrews)
150 ## $a Logan family (Fictitious characters : Taylor)
```

b. Characters with names that differ according to the language of the work. Establish groups of characters that have different names in English and foreign-language editions, or that have different names in various literary traditions, under the name used in English, regardless of the original language of the works. Provide 450 fields from the foreign-language names. *Examples:*

```
150 ## $a Looney Bay All-Stars (Fictitious characters)
450 ## $a Étoiles de Baie-des-Coucous (Fictitious characters)
```

2. References.

a. ***UF references***. Add 450 fields with other names by which the character may be known. *Examples:*

```
150 ## $a Cartwright family (Fictitious characters)
450 ## $a Cartwright clan (Fictitious characters)
450 ## $a Cartwrights (Fictitious characters)
```

b. ***Broader terms***. Do not add a broader term for headings for groups of fictitious characters.

3. Geographic subdivision. Code headings for fictitious characters as **Not Subdivided Geographically**.

4. Existing LCSH headings for individual characters. Existing LC subject headings for individual fictitious characters remain valid for use as subjects until name authority records for the characters are created and the subject authority records are cancelled. Follow the instructions below when creating a new name authority record for an individual fictitious character.

a. Name heading needed for use as a descriptive access point. Create a name authority record according to the instructions in RDA and the LC-PCC Policy Statements. Search LCSH to determine whether the heading has been established there, and if it has, submit a proposal to cancel the heading, following the instructions in H 193 sec. 14.

Note: Catalogers in PCC libraries who do not submit SACO proposals should make a name authority record and then request the Policy and Standards Division (policy@loc.gov) to create a proposal to cancel the subject heading.

b. Heading needed for subject use only. Optionally, an RDA name authority record may be created even if the heading is needed only for use as a subject heading. Create a name authority record according to the instructions in RDA and the LC-PCC Policy Statements. Submit a proposal to cancel the existing subject heading, following the instructions in H 193 sec. 14.

5. Assignment of headings.

a. Literary texts. Assign a subject heading for a fictitious character to collections of literary texts featuring the character, using the subdivisions **–Fiction**, **–Drama**, **–Poetry**, or **–Literary collections** as appropriate.

For individual plays or poems assign a subject heading only if the character has been borrowed by the author from another author or source and used in the creation of a new work. Do not assign a subject heading for works that are simply adaptations of another author's work.

LC practice:
Do not assign a subject heading for a fictitious character to an individual work of fiction, except for records that are cataloged according to special provisions for increased access to fiction (see H 1790).

5. Assignment of headings. *(Continued)*

b. Works about the character or the named group of characters. Assign a subject heading without further subdivision to general nonfiction works about a fictitious character or group of characters.

For works limited to characters in specific media, subdivide the subject heading by the free-floating subdivisions **–Art**, **--In literature**, **--In mass media**, etc.

> *Exception:* Do not use **–In literature** for literary characters or **–Art** for characters that originated in art. Use the subdivisions **–In literature** and **–Art** only for characters borrowed from other media, e.g., **Snoopy—In literature**; **Laertes—Art**; **Simpsons (Fictitious characters)—In literature**; **Hobbits (Fictitious characters)—Art**.

For works on the use of a fictitious character by an individual author, assign also a heading of the type **[*name of author*]—Characters—[*name of character*]** (cf. H 1110).

c. Free-floating subdivisions from H 1110. Free-floating subdivisions listed in H 1110, Free-Floating Subdivisions: Names of Persons, may not be used under headings for fictitious characters. Subdivisions from H 1110 that are needed for use under an individual heading may be editorially established under the specific heading.

2. Explanation of the categories of headings.

c. Headings for specific folklore genres. *(Continued)*

(1) General provisions. To a collection of folkloric texts in one genre, assign the appropriate genre heading, subdividing it by place if appropriate. See the Background statement on p. 1 for further information on the various treatments discussed below.

For works of criticism, subdivide the genre heading, or the genre heading with geographic subdivision, by the subdivision **–History and criticism**, for example, **Tales–Arizona–History and criticism**.

Qualify literary genre headings, that is, headings in the third column above, by language or nationality in accordance with normal literary form heading practice. For translations, subdivide these literary genre headings by the appropriate translation subdivisions, for example, **–Translations** or **–Translations into [. . .]** (cf. H 2220).

Do not qualify headings in the first column above by language or nationality. For the special rules for qualifying musical genre headings, and use of the subdivision **–Texts**, see H 1917. Do not use translation subdivisions under headings in either of the first two columns above.

Guidelines applicable to specific genre headings are given below.

(2) Fairy tales. Assign this heading to collections of traditional narratives that typically deal with supernatural beings (such as fairies, ogres, dragons) or supernatural events, and which are often created for the amusement of children. If in doubt as to whether to assign the heading **Tales**, which represents the blanket term for traditional narratives, or **Fairy tales**, prefer **Tales**.

(3) Folk literature. Assign this heading to collections containing three or more folklore genres. For collections of two genres, assign the appropriate headings for the genres.

2. Explanation of the categories of headings.

c. Headings for specific folklore genres. (Continued)

(4) Legends. Assign this heading to collections of traditional narratives generally regarded by their tellers as true. They may include narratives that are religious (such as those associated with the lives of saints or martyrs, religious objects or beings), supernatural (for example, vampires, werewolves, or ghosts), about individuals (for example, national figures or heroes), or about specific places (such as those emphasizing place name origins, or folk histories).

For legends associated with historical persons known to have existed, assign headings of the type **[*name of person*]–Legends**, for example, **Crockett, Davy, 1786-1836–Legends**.

For texts involving legendary figures, use headings of the type **[*name of figure*]–Legends**, for example, **John Henry–Legends**.

To medieval legends involving religious objects, assign topical headings with the subdivision **–Legends**, for example, **Grail–Legends** (see sec. 2, above).

Qualify the heading **Legends** by the names of religions to designate the legends of individual religions, for example, **Christian legends**; **Buddhist legends**.

For legends of American Indian groups, use the subdivision **–Folklore** under individual tribes and major groups. The practice of using the subdivision **–Legends** under groups of Indians was discontinued in 1994. Assign the additional heading **Legends–**[*place*].

Subdivide the heading **Legends** or the form subdivision **–Legends** by the subdivision **–History and criticism** for works that discuss the genre.

Foreign Relations H 1629

BACKGROUND: *The free-floating subdivision* ***–Foreign relations*** *is used under names of countries (or regions made up of two or more countries) for works that discuss the diplomatic relations between these countries and other sovereign states. (The terms* ***country*** *and* ***countries****, as used in this instruction sheet, include such entities as colonies, protectorates, and other jurisdictions capable of conducting diplomatic relations, as well as jurisdictions that at any time during their history functioned as autonomous states, such as Sicily.) This subdivision is not used under jurisdictions below the country level since they do not conduct diplomatic relations and were never sovereign states. For works that discuss general relations or military relations, the subdivisions* ***–Relations*** *or* ***–Military relations*** *are used. For instructions on the use of these subdivisions, see H 1996. For classification of works on foreign relations, see F 592.*

1. Diplomatic relations between one region or country and other regions or countries in general. Assign the heading **[*region or country*]–Foreign relations** without further subdivision by place, for works that discuss the diplomatic relations of the region or country in general, that is, with three or more regions or countries.

Do not further subdivide headings of this type by free-floating century subdivisions. Headings may be further subdivided by period subdivisions, if they have been editorially established. Do not interpose the subdivision **–History** between **–Foreign relations** and its period subdivisions.

2. Diplomatic relations between two specific regions or countries. Further subdivide the subdivision **–Foreign relations** by place for works that discuss the diplomatic relations between two regions or countries. Make an additional subject entry with the two places in reversed positions. *Example:*

```
651 #0 $a Great Britain $x Foreign relations $z Argentina.
651 #0 $a Argentina $x Foreign relations $z Great Britain.
```

2. Diplomatic relations between two specific regions or countries. *(Continued)*

Do not further subdivide headings of this type by period subdivisions. If appropriate, assign additional headings to bring out a specific time period. *Example:*

Title: Austria and the Soviet Union, 1918-1935.

```
651 #0 $a Austria $x Foreign relations $z Soviet
          Union.
651 #0 $a Soviet Union $x Foreign relations
          $z Austria.
651 #0 $a Austria $x Foreign relations $y 1918-1938.
651 #0 $a Soviet Union $x Foreign relations
          $y 1917-1945.
```

3. Diplomatic relations between a region or country and the Catholic Church. Assign the heading **Catholic Church–Foreign relations** to works on the general diplomatic relations of the Catholic Church, that is, on its diplomatic relations with three or more regions or countries. Assign the heading **Catholic Church–Foreign relations** *(May Subd Geog)* to works on the relations of the Church with a specific region or country. When assigning this heading with local subdivision, assign the additional heading **[*place*]–Foreign relations–Catholic Church**. *Examples:*

Title: The Holy See and the international order.

```
610 20 $a Catholic Church $x Foreign relations.
650 #0 $a Papacy (International law)
650 #0 $a Popes $x Temporal power.
```

Title: Austria and the papacy in the age of Metternich.

```
610 20 $a Catholic Church $x Foreign relations $z Austria.
651 #0 $a Austria $x Foreign relations $x Catholic Church.
610 20 $a Catholic Church $z Austria $x History
          $y 19th century.
650 #0 $a Church and state $z Austria.
651 #0 $a Austria $x History $y Francis I, 1792-1835.
600 10 $a Metternich, Clemens Wenzel Lothar, $c Fürst von,
          $d 1773-1859.
```

3. Names of individual families.

Note: Under AACR2, family names could not be established in the name authority file because they could not be descriptive access points. RDA permits family names to be used as descriptive access points if the family is credited with the creation of a work. They may therefore be established in the name authority file.

A heading needed for use as a subject should be established in LCSH and tagged 100. A heading needed for use as an RDA descriptive access point should be established in the name authority file and also tagged 100. The descriptive heading will include a note in a 667 field that indicates that it may not be assigned as a subject heading and field 008/15 (Heading use-subject added entry) will have a value of b: Not appropriate.

Example:

Subject heading: *100 3# $a Smith family*
400 3# $a Smythe family

Name heading: *100 3# $a Smythe (Family : $d 1745-1995 : $c Providence, R.I.)*
667 ## $a SUBJECT USAGE: This heading is not valid for use as a subject; use a family name heading from LCSH.

This section provides information on the establishing of family name headings in LCSH.

a. Form of name. For works containing the history of an individual family or biographies of family members, establish the family name, using the most common form of the name and add 400 fields for each known variant. *Example:*

```
100 3# $a Adams family
400 3# $a Adam family
400 3# $a Adamson family
400 3# $a Addam family
400 3# $a Addams family
400 3# $a Adems family
400 3# $a Adom family
```

*Note: For family names that include the word **Saint** or a foreign equivalent, use the spelled out form in the heading rather than the abbreviated form. Add 400 fields as necessary using the abbreviated form.*

3. Names of individual families.

a. Form of name. *(Continued)*

Do not add any 5XX (broader term) fields.

Do not add any qualifiers to the name, such as the name of the progenitor or the occupation of the family.

When possible, consult the following sources:

Work being cataloged
New dictionary of American family names
Tables in the publication of the U.S. Census Bureau, *A century of population Growth* (available online)

If the name is a common one with several variants, select for the heading the spelling of the name used most frequently and add 400 fields from the other forms of the name. If appropriate, consult a telephone directory or the name authority file to determine which spelling is most commonly used. *Examples:*

```
    100 3# $a Smith family
[not 100 3# $a Smyth family]

    100 3# $a Clark family
[not 100 3# $a Clarke family]
```

For names in foreign languages that appear in inflected forms, generally prefer the masculine, singular, nominative form.

If the name is associated with a famous family, select the spelling of the name used by the family. *Example:*

```
    100 3# $a Hearst family
[not 100 3# $a Hurst family]
```

Gods and Mythological Figures H 1635

BACKGROUND: *Until July 2013, headings for individual named gods, goddesses, and mythological figures were established in LCSH. After that date, headings for individual named gods, goddesses, and mythological figures are established as RDA name authority records. Groups of gods, goddesses, and mythological figures, and types of them, continue to be established in LCSH. The heading* ***God*** *and headings of the type* ***God (name of religion)*** *(e.g.,* ***God (Christianity)****;* ***God (Greek religion)****) also continue to be established in LCSH.*

This instruction sheet presents guidelines for establishing the names of groups of gods, goddesses, and mythological figures, as well as types of mythological monsters, animals, items, structures, etc. It describes the procedures for cancelling subject headings for individual named gods, goddesses, and mythological figures when name authority records have been created. It also describes the application of headings for both individual, and groups of, gods and mythological figures. For instructions on establishing and assigning headings for legendary characters see H 1795.

1. Groups of gods and goddesses.

a. Form of heading. Establish named groups of gods and goddesses in the subject authority file. Qualify the name of each group with **([name of religion, ethnic group, etc.] deities)** as appropriate. Do not divide headings geographically. *Examples:*

```
150 ## $a Ādityas (Hindu deities)
150 ## $a Amesha Spentas (Zoroastrian deities)
150 ## $a Nymphs (Greek deities)
```

b. References. Make UF references for variant names. Optionally, UFs may be added with the name of the group in a language other than the vernacular or English if such a reference is judged to be useful.

Make a BT for **Gods** or **Goddesses**, qualified by the name of the religion, ethnic group, etc. *Examples:*

```
    550 ## $w g $a Aztec goddesses
    550 ## $w g $a Gods, Roman
    550 ## $w g $a Goddesses, Greek
or  550 ## $w g $a Hindu goddesses
```

H 1635 Gods of Greek and Roman Mythology

1. Groups of gods and goddesses.

b. References. *(Continued)*

Where equivalences between groups of Greek and Roman gods can be determined, also add a 550 (related term) field to the record for each heading.

c. Examples.

```
150 ## $a Amesha Spentas (Zorastrian deities)
450 ## $a Amahrāspand (Zoroastrian deities)
450 ## $a Amesa Spentas (Zoroastrian deities)
450 ## $a Ameshāspand (Zoroastrian deities)
450 ## $a Ameshāspand (Zoroastrian deities)
450 ## $a Mahrāspand (Zoroastrian deities)
550 ## $w g $a Zoroastrian gods
```

[a type of divine entity]

```
150 ## $a Lokapālas (Buddhist deities)
450 ## $a Four Guardian Deities (Buddhist deities)
450 ## $a Four Guardian Kings (Buddhist deities)
450 ## $a Four Heavenly Kings (Buddhist deities)
550 ## $w g $a Buddhist gods
```

[group of four individually named gods]

```
150 ## $a Muses (Greek deities)
550 ## $w g $a Goddesses, Greek
```

[the nine daughters of Zeus and Mnemosyne]

2. Groups of mythological figures.

a. Form of heading. Establish named groups of mythological figures in the subject authority file. Qualify the name of each group with (**[nationality, ethnic group, etc.] mythology**) as appropriate. Do not divide headings geographically. *Examples:*

```
150 ## $a Argonauts (Greek mythology)
150 ## $a Furies (Roman mythology)
150 ## $a Valkyries (Norse mythology)
```

2. Groups of mythological figures. *(Continued)*

b. References. Make UF references for variant names. Optionally, UFs may be added with the name of the group in a language other than the vernacular or English if such a reference is judged to be useful.

Make a BT for **Mythology**, qualified by the name of the religion, ethnic group, etc. *Examples:*

```
    550 ## $w g $a Abenaki mythology
    550 ## $w g $a Buddhist mythology
    550 ## $w g $a Gods, Roman
or  550 ## $w g $a Mythology, Japanese
```

If the group belongs to a broader general category of mythological beings (e.g., **Monsters**), make A BT for the category.

c. Examples.

```
150 ## $a Ba Xian (Taoist mythology)
450 ## $a Eight Immortals (Taoist mythology)
550 ## $w g $a Taoist mythology
```

[group of eight individually named mythological figures]

```
150 ## $a Harpies (Greek mythology)
450 ## $a Harpyiae (Greek mythology)
550 ## $w g $a Monsters
550 ## $w g $a Mythology, Greek
```

[winged beasts, the number of which is unknown]

```
150 ## $a Gorgons (Greek mythology)
550 ## $w g $a Mythology, Greek
```

[group of three three sisters]

H 1635 Gods of Greek and Roman Mythology

3. Types of mythological monsters, animals, etc.

a. Form of heading. Establish types of mythological monsters, animals, etc., in the subject authority file. Qualify the heading if necessary to remove ambiguity or elucidate the term or phrase (cf. H 357). If adding a qualifier, prefer the form **([nationality, ethnic group, etc.] mythology)**. *Examples:*

```
150 ## $a Basilisks (Mythical animals)
150 ## $a Leopard men
```

Treat individual mythological items, structures, etc., in the same way. *Example:*

```
150 ## $a Augean stables (Greek mythology)
150 ## $a Golden bough (Roman mythology)
```

b. References. Make UF references for variant names. Optionally, UFs may be added with the name of the group in a language other than the vernacular or English if such a reference is judged to be useful.

Make one or more BTs for the broader category to which the heading belongs.

c. Examples.

```
150 ## $a Fauns (Roman mythology)
550 ## $w g $a Animals, Mythical
550 ## $w g $a Mythology, Roman
```
[beasts that are part man and part goat]

```
150 ## $a Unicorns
550 ## $w g $a Animals, Mythical
```
[beasts that resemble horses with horns growing from their foreheads]

```
150 ## $a Yeti
450 ## $a Abominable snowman
550 ## $w a $a Monsters
550 ## $w g $a Primates
```
[man-sized, ape-like creatures of the Himalayas]

4. Existing LC subject headings for individual gods, goddesses, and mythological figures. Existing LC subject headings for individual gods, goddesses, and mythological figures remain valid for use as subjects until name authority records for the characters are created and the subject authority records are cancelled. Follow the instructions below when creating a new name authority record for an individual god or goddess.

a. Name heading needed for use as a descriptive access point. Create a name authority record according to the instructions in RDA and the LC-PCC Policy Statements. Search LCSH to determine whether the heading has been established there, and if it has, submit a proposal to cancel the heading, following the instructions in H 193 sec. 14.

Note: Catalogers in PCC libraries who do not submit SACO proposals should make a name authority record and then request the Policy and Standards Division (policy@loc.gov) to create a proposal to cancel the subject heading.

b. Heading needed for subject use only. Optionally, an RDA name authority record may be created even if the heading is needed only for use as a subject heading. Create a name authority record according to the instructions in RDA and the LC-PCC Policy Statements. Submit a proposal to cancel the existing subject heading, following the instructions in H 193 sec. 14.

5. Assignment of headings.

a. General. See H 1795 sec. 2.

b. Free-floating subdivisions from H 1110. Free-floating subdivisions used under names of persons established in the name authority file (H 1110) may not be used under headings for gods, goddesses, or mythological figures. Subdivisions from H 1110 that are needed for use under an individual heading may be editorially established under the specific heading.

Gods of Greek and Roman Mythology H 1636

BACKGROUND: *Until July 2013, headings for individual Greek and Roman gods or goddesses were established in LCSH. Where equivalencies between Greek and Roman gods could be determined, a 550 (related term) field was added to the record for each heading, and each had a BT in the form:*

550 ## $w g $a Gods, [Greek or Roman]
or 550 ## $w g $a Goddesses, [Greek or Roman]

After July 2013, headings for individual gods and goddesses are established as RDA name authority records. Groups of gods and goddesses continue to be established in LCSH.

See H 1635 for guidelines on establishing groups of gods and goddesses, and the procedures for cancelling subject headings for individual named gods and goddesses when name authority records have been created.

***BACKGROUND**: It had formerly been the practice to use phrase headings of the type **[. . .] policy** (for example, **Urban policy**, **Housing policy**) or of the type **[. . .] and state** (for example, **Education and state**, **Theater and state**) to designate government policy on the topic in question. In 1980, the subdivision **–Government policy** (May Subd Geog) was made a free-floating subdivision to be used in lieu of establishing phrase headings of this type. This instruction sheet provides guidelines for assigning the subdivision **–Government policy** (May Subd Geog) under topical headings and under headings for classes of persons or ethnic groups for works describing the course of action selected by national, state, or local governments to guide decision making and programs pertaining to the topic, class of persons, or ethnic group.*

1. Use of the free-floating subdivision. Use the subdivision **–Government policy** *(May Subd Geog)* as described above under any heading for which a corresponding phrase heading has not already been established. *Examples:*

Title: Final report, the 1981 White House Conference on Aging.
```
650 #0 $a Older people $x Government policy $z United States
          $v Congresses.
```

Title: Overview of state policies related to adolescent parenthood.
```
650 #0 $a Adolescent parents $x Government policy $z United
          States $x States.
```

Exception: Do not use **–Government policy** under headings designating activities that are inherently governmental in nature, for example, **City planning**; **Finance, Public**; **Crime prevention**.

2. Use of existing phrase headings. Continue to use existing headings that have been established in the form **[. . .] policy** or **[. . .] and state**. Do not, however, propose new headings of this type.

3. Free-floating subdivisions for specific types of policy. Some phrase headings for policy are not authorized for geographic subdivision because corresponding subdivisions are used under names of places, for example, **–Cultural policy**, **–Economic policy**, **–Military policy**, **–Population policy**, **–Social policy**. See H 1140 for the complete list of free-floating subdivisions used under names of places.

4. Chronological subdivision. Do not chronologically subdivide **–Government policy** or subdivisions for specific types of policy. Assign additional headings to bring out a specific time period.

BACKGROUND: *The subdivision* ***–History*** *may be used under most headings to designate a historical treatment of the topic in question. There are, however, certain restrictions on its use. These restrictions are described in this instruction sheet.*

1. General rule. Except as noted below, use the free-floating subdivision **–History** under topical headings, classes of persons, ethnic groups, uniform titles of sacred works, names of places, including jurisdictions that no longer exist, and corporate bodies, for descriptions and explanations of past events concerning the topic, group, sacred work, place, or organization. *Examples:*

```
650 #0 $a Aeronautics $x History.
650 #0 $a Indians of North America $x History.
630 00 $a Qur'an $x History.
651 #0 $a Washington (D.C.) $x History.
651 #0 $a Holy Roman Empire $x History.
610 20 $a Catholic Church $x History.
610 20 $a General Motors Corporation $x History.
```

Do not use **–History** under:

- headings or subdivisions that denote history, that have an obvious historical connotation, or that have been treated as inherently historical

  For a discussion of these headings and subdivisions, see sec. 3.

- literary, music, film, television program, and video recording form headings

  Instead use **–History and criticism,** for example, **English poetry– History and criticism; Dance music–History and criticism; Western films–History and criticism**; **Animated television programs–History and criticism**; **Comedy videos–History and criticism** For subdivisions used under literatures and literary genres, see H 1156. For subdivisions used under musical compositions, see H 1160.

- art genre headings qualified by names of national, ethnic, or religious groups

  See H 1250, sec. 1.

H 1647 History

1. General rule. *(Continued)*

Do not use **–History** under:

- name-title headings or under uniform titles other than sacred works

  Assign such headings without subdivision to historical treatments of particular works. For subdivisions used under literary works entered under author, see H 1155.6. For subdivisions used under literary works entered under title, see H 1155.8.

- names of individual persons or families, including dynasties and royal houses

  For subdivisions used under names of individual persons, see H 1110. For subdivisions used under names of families, see H 1120. For instructions on biographical works, see H 1330. For instructions on genealogy, see H 1631. For instructions on dynasties, royal houses, etc., see H 1574.

2. Chronological subdivisions.

a. Established chronological subdivisions. Use **–History** further subdivided by chronological subdivisions for specific time periods where they are established under headings for topics and places. *Examples:*

```
651 #0 $a United States $x History $y Civil War, 1861-1865.
651 #0 $a Japan $x History $y Heian period, 794-1185.
650 #0 $a Theater $x History $y To 500.
```

b. Free-floating chronological subdivisions. Historical periods may also be brought out by headings of the type **[*topic*]–History–To 1500** or **[*topic*]–History–16th, [17th, 18th, 19th, 20th, or 21st] century**. Assign these free-floating **–History–[. . .] century** subdivisions whenever it is possible to do so, that is, when there is no contrary provision in the subject authority file. Also assign, on a free-floating basis, headings of the type **[*place or corporate body*]–[*topic*]–History–16th, [17th, 18th, 19th, 20th, or 21st] century** so long as the topical subdivision is not one of those listed in sec. 9, and no contrary provision exists in the subject authority file.

2. Chronological subdivisions.

b. Free-floating chronological subdivisions. *(Continued)*

Examples:

```
650 #0 $a Technology $z France $x History $y 20th century.
651 #0 $a New York (N.Y.) $x Commerce $x History $y 19th
          century.
610 10 $a Virginia. $b General Assembly $x Contested
          elections $x History $y 19th century.
```

For topics or corporate bodies that originated in and are limited to the current century, do not include the century subdivision.

In 1997, subdivisions of the type **–History–16th, [17th, 18th, 19th, 20th, *or* 21st] century** were added to H 1140, thereby allowing their free-floating use under geographic headings at any level. These subdivisions were added to facilitate subject access by time period, primarily for places smaller than countries where chronological subdivisions were previously not established. These free-floating century subdivisions should be used with caution under names of countries and other geographic headings where chronological subdivisions for specific time periods have been established. Assign these century subdivisions only where there is no conflict with chronological subdivisions established in the subject authority file.

c. Establishing new chronological subdivisions. In accordance with the instructions in H 620, sec. 3, d. and where there is sufficient material to warrant it, establish new chronological subdivisions under headings of the type **[*topic or place]*–History** to represent significant time periods in the history of the topic or place, such as the reign or term of office of a ruler or president of a country. For instructions on establishing events as subdivisions, see H 1592, sec. 5.

H 1647 History

3. Headings and subdivisions that are historical in nature. Do not use the subdivision **–History** under headings that already denote history, a historical time period, or a historical event, or that have an obvious historical connotation. *Examples:*

```
650 #0 $a Social history.
650 #0 $a Nineteen seventies.
650 #0 $a Renaissance.
650 #0 $a Reconstruction (1914-1939)
650 #0 $a Iran-Iraq War, 1980-1988.
611 20 $a Paris Peace Conference $d (1919-1920)
```

Do not use the subdivision **–History** as a further subdivision after subdivisions that represent events. *Examples*:

```
650 #0 $a Solar eclipses $y 1869.
610 20 $a Triangle Shirtwaist Company $x Fire, 1911
651 #0 $a Vesuvius (Italy) $x Eruption, 79
```

Also, do not use **–History** after subdivisions that denote history or that have traditionally been regarded as being explicitly or implicitly historical. These are listed in sec. 9.

Further subdivide these historical headings and subdivisions directly by the chronological subdivisions that are established or authorized for free-floating use with them. *Examples:*

```
650 #0 $a Military history, Modern $y 20th century.
651 #0 $a United States $x Foreign relations $y 1783-1815.
651 #0 $a Boston (Mass.) $x Politics and government
          $y 1775-1865.
651 #0 $a Buenos Aires (Argentina) $x Intellectual life
          $y 20th century.
```

See H 1140 for the free-floating topical subdivisions subdivided by centuries that may be used under geographic headings at any level.

4. Historical source materials. See H 2080, sec. 1 for instructions on using the subdivisions **–History–Sources** or **–Sources** for collections or discussions of historical source materials.

BACKGROUND: *The subdivision* ***–Illustrations*** *is used as a form or topical subdivision under types of published materials, literatures, literary forms, names of individual persons, individual works, and sacred works for collections or discussions of pictorial representations found in these works or depicting these subjects. This instruction sheet provides guidelines for using this subdivision. The subdivision is coded as a $v subfield for collections of illustrations or as an $x subfield for discussions of illustrations.*

1. Types of published materials. Use the free-floating subdivision **–Illustrations** under types of published materials for collections or discussions of illustrations used in these publications. *Examples:*

```
650 #0 $a Newspapers $x Illustrations.
650 #0 $a Paperbacks $v Illustrations.
```

2. Literature. Use the free-floating subdivision **–Illustrations** under literatures and literary forms for collections or discussions of pictorial representations of these literary subjects. *Examples:*

```
650 #0 $a English literature $x Illustrations.
650 #0 $a Nursery rhymes, English $x Illustrations.
```

3. Individual persons. Use the free-floating subdivision **–Illustrations** under names of individual persons for collections or discussions of pictorial representations of the person's written works. *Examples:*

```
600 10 $a Shakespeare, William $d 1564-1616 $v Illustrations.
600 10 $a Josephus, Flavius $x Illustrations.
```

4. Individual works.

a. General. Use the free-floating subdivision **–Illustrations** under individual works (author-title or uniform title entries) for collections of pictorial representations of these works without text or for discussions of these illustrations. *Examples:*

```
630 00 $a Beowulf $x Illustrations.
600 10 $a Milton, John, $d 1608-1674. $t Paradise lost
          $v Illustrations.
```

4. Individual works. *(Continued)*

b. Sacred works. Use the free-floating subdivision **–Illustrations** under uniform titles for sacred works and their individual parts for collections or discussions of pictorial representations of these works. *Examples:*

```
630 00 $a Bible. $p Revelation $v Illustrations.
630 00 $a Qur'an $x Illustrations.
```

Assign a heading of this type to illustrated editions of sacred works, to collections of such illustrations without text, and to discussions of these illustrations.

5. Other. In accordance with H 1935, use the subdivision **–Pictorial works** under other types of headings for collections of pictorial representations of these subjects.

Do not use the subdivision **–Illustrations** under these topics.

6. Technique. To works discussing the technique of making illustrations, assign the appropriate phrase heading, if one exists or can be established. *Examples:*

```
650 #0 $a Caricature.
650 #0 $a Illustration of books.
650 #0 $a Medical illustration.
650 #0 $a Scientific illustration.
```

Inquisition H 1676

***BACKGROUND**: The Inquisition was an effort by the medieval and early modern church to seek out and punish heretics through a special court. The headings **Inquisition** and **Inquisition. [place]** were established as corporate body name headings under AACR1. Under AACR2 the name headings were replaced by the topical subject heading **Inquisition** (May Subd Geog). This instruction sheet provides guidelines for assigning this heading.*

***1. General rule**.* Assign the heading **Inquisition** *(May Subd Geog)* to works on *any* aspect of the Inquisition.

***2. –History not used**.* Do not use the subdivision **–History** or subdivisions of the type **–History–[. . .] century**, or establish period subdivisions under this subject.

***3. Assigning additional headings**.* Assign additional headings if appropriate to bring out important aspects of the work, such as the name of a defendant in a trial, other topical headings, etc. *Example:*

Title: The Inquisition in the Canary Islands.

```
650 #0 $a Inquisition $z Canary Islands.
651 #0 $a Canary Islands $x Church history.
```

BACKGROUND: *Prior to 1995, the Library of Congress followed a restrictive policy on assigning the uniform title of a specific enactment as a subject heading to works about that enactment. Under this restrictive policy, such headings were assigned only to legislative histories or textual criticisms of an enactment. Beginning in 1995, at the recommendation of the American Association of Law Libraries, this restrictive policy was discontinued. Catalogers may now assign the uniform title for a specific enactment as a subject heading to any work for which they judge that this heading would be a useful access point. This instruction sheet provides guidelines for assigning this heading, as well as more general subject cataloging rules for texts of, and works about, legislation and legislative histories.*

1. Texts of legislation.

a. General (non-topical) collections. Assign the appropriate general form heading. Subdivide this heading by place if the collection is limited to a particular country, state, etc. *Example:*

Title: United States code.
`650 #0 $a Law $z United States.`

b. Topical collections. Assign the appropriate topical heading(s), for example, **Labor laws and legislation**. Subdivide the heading by place if the collection is limited to a particular country, state, etc. *Example:*

Title: Compilation of laws relating to American agriculture.
`650 #0 $a Agricultural laws and legislation $z United States.`

H 1715 Legal Materials: Legislation

1. Texts of legislation. *(Continued)*

c. Individual acts. Assign the appropriate topical heading(s) in the same manner as for topical collections.

Do not assign the heading for the name of the act itself to a work that consists solely of the text of the act.

Examples:

Title: Technical Corrections Act of 1979.

```
650 #0 $a Taxation $x Law and legislation $z United
          States.
```

Title: Régimen de matrimonio civil y divorcio.

```
650 #0 $a Marriage law $z Argentina.
650 #0 $a Divorce $x Law and legislation $z Argentina.
```

2. Works about legislation.

a. Collective. To works that discuss various laws related to a particular topic, assign the appropriate topical heading(s). *Example:*

Title: Environment '90 : the legislative agenda.

```
650 #0 $a Environmental law $z United States.
```

b. Individual acts. Assign the heading for the name of the act to a work that discusses the law, if it is judged to be a useful access point. Establish these headings as name headings in accordance with RDA rules for headings for individual laws. These headings are normally in the form **[*jurisdiction*]. [*uniform title of law*]**. Also assign a topical heading or headings appropriate to the work being cataloged. *Examples:*

Title: Explanation of the Civil Rights Act of 1991.

```
610 10 $a United States. $t Civil Rights Act of 1991.
650 #0 $a Civil rights $z United States.
650 #0 $a Discrimination in employment $x Law and
          legislation $z United States.
```

Legends and Stories about Animals H 1720

***BACKGROUND**: Use of the subdivision **–Legends and stories** under types of animals was discontinued in 1981. Several subdivisions are now used in place of the discontinued subdivision.*

1. Fiction. To one or more fictitious stories about an animal or a group of animals, assign the subdivision **–Fiction** under the type of animal, for example, **Dogs–Fiction** (cf. H 1790).

To collections of stories involving various types of animals, assign **Animals–Fiction**.

2. Folklore. To one or more legends about an animal or a group of animals, assign the subdivision **–Folklore** under the type of animal, for example, **Dogs–Folklore** (cf. H 1627).

To collections of legends involving various types of animals, assign **Animals–Folklore**.

3. True stories about individual animals and pets.

a. Collections. To collections of true life stories about animals, assign the subdivision **–Biography** under the type of animal. Interpose geographic subdivision if appropriate and assign additional headings as needed. *Examples:*

Title: Great canine heroes of all time.

```
650 #0 $a Dogs $v Biography.
```

Title: James Herriot's treasury for children.

```
650 #0 $a Pets $z England $z Yorkshire $v Biography
          $v Juvenile literature.
650 #0 $a Domestic animals $z England $z Yorkshire
          $v Biography $v Juvenile literature.
650 #0 $a Farm life $z England $z Yorkshire
          $v Juvenile literature.
```

3. True stories about individual animals and pets. *(Continued)*

b. Individual biographies. For individual biographies, use the subdivision **–Biography** under types of animals, with geographic subdivision if appropriate. If the animal has a name that is established as a heading, or if the animal is well known enough for its name to be established, assign it as an additional heading. See H 1332, sec. 9 for guidelines on establishing headings for names of individual animals. Assign the owner's name(s) if appropriate. *Example:*

Title: Barry, the bravest Saint Bernard.

```
600 00 $a Barry $v Juvenile literature.
650 #0 $a Saint Bernard dog $z Switzerland
          $v Biography $v Juvenile literature.
650 #0 $a Rescue dogs $z Switzerland $v Biography
          $v Juvenile literature.
```

c. Anecdotes about pets. To anecdotal accounts of pets, assign the subdivision **–Anecdotes** under the type of animal, with local subdivision if appropriate. Assign the owner's name(s) if appropriate. *Examples:*

Title: Episodes in the life of my pet.

```
600 10 $a [name of owner]
650 #0 $a Dogs $z California $v Anecdotes.
```

If the pet has a name that is established as a heading, or if the animal is well known enough for its name to be established, assign the name as an additional heading. *Example:*

```
600 10 $a Obama, Bo, $c dog
650 #0 $a Dogs $z Washington (D.C.) $v Anecdotes.
```

1. General rule. For collections of plays, assign as many headings as necessary to bring out both the form and the topic(s). For single plays, assign headings as required to bring out topic(s), but assign form headings only as noted in sec. 4, below.

2. Designating the form of collections.

a. General rule. Bring out the form of a collection by assigning headings of the type **American drama–20th century**; **One-act plays**; **Television plays**; etc., as in the first heading in the following example:

Title: Eight plays for hand puppets about George Washington.

```
650 #0 $a Puppet plays, American.
600 10 $a Washington, George, $d 1732-1799 $v Drama.
```

Certain phrase headings combine both form and topical aspects into one heading, for example, **Detective and mystery plays**; **Christmas plays**; **Ghost plays**; etc. These headings are used to designate both the form and the topic of collections, and no additional heading is usually required.

Do not use a phrase heading of this type if a more specific **[*topic*]–Drama** heading can be formulated to designate the topic of the collection. Instead, assign the more specific heading in conjunction with a *broader, nontopical*, form heading. For example, assign the following headings to a collection of American plays about the Christian Trinity:

```
650 #0 $a American drama.
650 #0 $a Trinity $v Drama.
```

[*not* `650 #0 $a Christian drama, American.`]

[*not*
```
650 #0 $a Christian drama, American.
650 #0 $a Trinity $v Drama.
```
]

2. Designating the form of collections. *(Continued)*

b. Collections of plays by one author. As a general rule, assign form headings (a) if the form heading includes a topical aspect, for example, **Detective and mystery plays, American**, or (b) if the plays are of a highly specific form and the form is an essential point of the collection, for example, **Carnival plays**; **College and school drama, Japanese**; etc.

Do not assign nonspecific form headings or standard dramatic genre headings to collections of plays by one author, for example, **English drama**, **English drama (Comedy)**; **Comedy**; **Farces**; **Melodrama**; **One-act plays**; **Tragedy**; **Tragicomedy**.

c. Collections of children's plays. Assign the heading **Children's plays** or **Children's plays, American, [English, etc.]** to collections of children's plays, whether by one author or several authors, in addition to the other required form and topical headings.

3. Designating topics of collections by one or several authors. Bring out identifiable topics, using one of the following types of headings:

a. [topic]–Drama or [topic]–Juvenile drama. Use headings of this type as the standard means of designating topics in drama, for example, **Alcoholism–Drama**; **Lincoln, Abraham, 1809-1865–Drama**; **Holmes, Sherlock–Drama**; **Brontë family–Drama**.

b. Phrase headings with topical aspects. If a phrase heading has both form and topical aspects, assign only the one heading to designate both form and topic, as described in sec. 2.a, above. **Historical drama** and **Political plays** are examples of such headings.

4. Individual plays. Bring out the topic of an individual play by assigning headings of the type described in sec. 3, above. Assign a form heading only if it includes a topical aspect, or if the play is of a highly specific form, for example, **Detective and mystery plays, American**; **Carnival plays**; etc.

Assign the heading **Children's plays, American, [English, etc.]** to individual children's plays in addition to the required topical heading(s).

1. General rule. For collections of fiction, assign as many headings as necessary to bring out both the form and the topic(s). For single works of fiction, assign headings to bring out topic(s) and form only as noted in sec. 4, below.

2. Designating the form of collections.

a. *Bring out the form of a collection by assigning headings of the type* ***American fiction–20th century****;* ***Short stories, American****;* ***Epistolary fiction****; etc., as in the first heading in the following example:*

Title: Garden tales : classic stories from favorite writers.

```
650 #0 $a Short stories, American.
650 #0 $a Gardens $v Fiction.
```

Certain phrase headings combine both form and topical aspects into a single heading, for example, **Detective and mystery stories, American**; **Science fiction, American**; etc. These headings are used to designate both the form and the topic of collections, and no additional heading is usually required.

Do not use a phrase heading of this type if a more specific **[*topic*]–Fiction** heading can be formulated to designate the topic of the collection. Instead, assign the more specific heading in conjunction with a *broader, nontopical*, form heading. For example, assign the following headings to a collection of American stories about jungle warfare:

```
650 #0 $a American fiction.
650 #0 $a Jungle warfare $v Fiction.
```

[*not* `650 #0 $a War stories, American.`]

[*not*
```
650 #0 $a War stories, American.
650 #0 $a Jungle warfare $v Fiction.
```
]

2. Designating the form of collections. *(Continued)*

b. Collections of fiction by one author. As a general rule, assign form headings (a) if the form heading includes a topical aspect, for example, **Western stories**, or (b) if it is readily apparent from a cursory examination of the work that it comprises fiction of a highly specific form and that this form is an essential point of the collection, for example, **Allegories**; **Fairy tales**; **Radio stories**; **Children's stories, English**; etc.

Do not assign nonspecific form headings to collections of fiction by one author, for example, **American fiction**; **Short stories, American**.

c. Collections of children's fiction. Assign the heading **Children's stories** or **Children's stories, American, [English, etc.]** to collections of children's fiction, whether by one author or several authors, in addition to the other required form and topical headings. Do not assign this heading to collections of fiction for young adults.

3. Designating the topic(s) of collections by one or several authors. Bring out identifiable topics, using one of the following types of headings:

a. [topic]–Fiction or [topic]–Juvenile fiction. Use headings of this type as the standard means of designating topics in fiction, for example, **Slavery–United States–Fiction**; **Parent and child–Fiction**; **Horses–Fiction**; **Paris (France)–Fiction**; **Vodou– Fiction**.

Note: The subdivision ***–Stories****, which had formerly been used under some topics is no longer to be used. Use only* ***–Fiction****.*

b. Phrase headings with topical aspects. If a phrase heading has both form and topical aspects, assign only the one heading to designate both form and topic, as described in sec. 2.a, above. **Sea stories**, **Western stories**, and **Love stories** are examples of such headings.

c. Individual characters. If the collection of fiction features as its theme an individual character or family, real or imaginary, bring out the character(s), for example, **Lincoln, Abraham, 1809-1865–Fiction**; **Holmes, Sherlock–Fiction**; **Alcott family–Fiction**.

LC practice: Sec. 4, below, describes standard practice followed at the Library of Congress. For an alternative approach to individual works of fiction, see the section ***SPECIAL PROVISIONS FOR INCREASED SUBJECT ACCESS TO FICTION*** *at the end of this instruction sheet.*

4. Individual works of fiction. Bring out topic(s) only for the following types of individual works of fiction:

a. Biographical fiction. Assign the heading **[*name of biographee*]–Fiction**.

b. Historical fiction. Assign headings for specific historical events, periods, etc., with the subdivision **–Fiction**, e.g. **World War, 1939-1945–Fiction**; **San Francisco Earthquake, Calif., 1906–Fiction**.

Do not assign a heading of this type when the event or period is merely the backdrop to a story. Assign it only when the event or period is the principal focus of the work.

Interpret the term **historical fiction** broadly to include works about entities such as movements, corporate bodies other than jurisdictions, camps, parks, structures, geographical features other than regions, ethnic groups, disasters, categories of events, etc.

c. Animal stories. Assign the heading **Animals–Fiction** to individual novels or stories about animals in general. For a work about a specific type of animal, assign a heading for the type of animal with the subdivision **–Fiction**, e.g. **Horses–Fiction**.

Assign no form headings to individual works of adult fiction, children's fiction, or young adult fiction.

5. Limitations on assigning headings. Assign topical and form headings, especially to single works of fiction or to collections by one author, only as they come readily to mind after a superficial review of the work being cataloged.

Do not attempt to assign a form heading to a collection of fiction by one author if the form is not stated on the title page or in another prominent location.

Do not attempt to discern topics which have not been made explicit by the author or publisher, or which could be interpreted as representing value judgments.

6. History and criticism.

a. General rule. For works about particular themes in fiction, assign as many headings as necessary to bring out the form (with subdivision **–History and criticism**) and the topic(s) (normally using headings of the type **[*topic*] in literature**). *Examples:*

```
650 #0 $a American fiction $y 20th century $x History and
        criticism.
650 #0 $a Politics in literature.
```

If a heading has both form and topical aspects, assign only the single heading with the subdivision **–History and criticism**, e.g. **Detective and mystery stories, American –History and criticism**.

b. Fiction about individual persons or families. For criticism of fiction about particular individuals or families, including dynasties and royal houses, assign the name of the person or family with the free-floating subdivision **–In literature**, e.g., **Faust, -approximately 1540–In literature**; **Mann family–In literature**.

c. Fiction about imaginary persons. For criticism of fiction about particular imaginary individuals, assign the name of the person. Also assign if appropriate for the work the name of the author with the subdivision **–Characters–[*name of character*]** (cf. H 1610). *Example:*

```
600 10 $a Doyle, Arthur Conan, $c Sir, $d 1859-1930
          $x Characters $x Sherlock Holmes.
600 10 $a Holmes, Sherlock.
```

d. Fiction about individual corporate bodies, places, and sacred works. For criticism of fiction about particular corporate bodies, places, or sacred works, assign the name of the entity with the free-floating subdivision **–In literature**, e.g. **United States. Federal Bureau of Investigation–In literature**; **Tahiti (French Polynesia)–In literature**; **Bible–In literature.**

6. History and criticism. *(Continued)*

e. Fiction about wars and similar events. For works about the fiction of a specific war, revolution, uprising, etc., assign **[*name of event*]–Literature and the war, [revolution, uprising, etc.]** as a topical heading (cf. H 1200).

f. Single works of fiction. For works about an individual novel or story in one of the categories described in sec. 4.a-4.c, above, assign a heading for the individual work as well as a heading for the theme, e.g.

```
600 10 $a Mitchell, Margaret, $d 1900-1949. $t Gone with the
          wind.
650 #0 $a United States $x History $y Civil War, 1861-1865
          $x Literature and the war.
```

LC practice:
SPECIAL PROVISIONS FOR INCREASED SUBJECT ACCESS TO FICTION

1. Application of special provisions. The Library of Congress applies special provisions for increased subject access to fiction as internal resources permit. As of January 2001 these provisions were being applied to cataloging for current acquisitions of American novels and novels of other English-language literatures.

2. General principles. The assignment of subject headings to individual works of fiction is intended to provide the average public library user with an additional method of selecting recreational reading. Several types of subject headings are available to provide this access. Any, all, or none of the following categories of headings may be appropriate for an individual work of fiction: form/genre, character, setting, topic. These headings should be assigned only as they come readily to mind after a superficial review of the work being cataloged.

3. Form and genre headings.

a. Source of headings. Select an appropriate heading or headings from the second edition of the *Guidelines on Subject Access to Individual Works of Fiction, Drama, Etc*., for example, **Love stories; Science fiction**. If an appropriate genre heading is not available from the *Guidelines*, an unqualified genre heading may be selected from *LCSH*. Generally assign no more than one or two genre headings, expressing only the primary genre(s) of the work.

LC practice:
SPECIAL PROVISIONS FOR INCREASED SUBJECT ACCESS TO FICTION

3. Form and genre headings. *(Continued)*

b. Specificity. Apply the same principle of specificity used in non-literary cataloging, e.g. **Arthurian romances**, not **Romances**; **War stories**, not **Historical fiction**. Do not assign broad headings such as **Fiction** or **Short stories**. Do not include adjectival qualifiers or subdivisions that show the language of the work or that reflect the characteristics of the author, such as nationality, religion, sex, ethnic background.

c. MARC 21 content designation and input conventions. Form/genre headings for individual works use the MARC tag 655, not 650. For headings from LCSH, the second indicator contains the value **0**. For headings from the *Guidelines*, the second indicator contains the value **7** and the code **gsafd** in a subfield $2 following the heading. When assigned, these headings are input following other LC subject headings and following any AC juvenile subject headings.

> *Note: The second indicator value of **0** for LCSH was added to the 655 field in MARC 21 in 2003 and implemented at the Library of Congress in 2004. Records cataloged before 2004 indicate the source of headings from LCSH through the use of the second indicator value of **7** and the code **lcsh** in a subfield $2.*

d. Updating of form/genre headings. LC will maintain the currency of form/genre headings for which the source is *LCSH*. Headings from the *Guidelines* will be assigned from the most current edition available at the time of cataloging, but will not be updated if changes are made in later editions.

4. Character(s).

a. Individual characters. If the work prominently features a real person, a legendary character, or other major character not created by the author of the work, assign a subject heading for the name of the character with appropriate subdivision such as **–Fiction** or **–Juvenile fiction**. If the primary character is a fictitious character created by the author, assign a subject heading only if the character appears in three or more works. For instructions on proposing subject headings for fictitious characters see H 1610.

LC practice:
SPECIAL PROVISIONS FOR INCREASED SUBJECT ACCESS TO FICTION

4. Character(s). *(Continued)*

b. Classes of persons. A heading may also be assigned for the class of persons to which the primary character belongs if that class of persons is established and is likely to be sought by the typical public library user, for example, women detectives. Generally follow the same principles that are used for selecting class-of-persons headings for individual biographies.

5. Setting. Assign a subject heading for a place, event, or time period that is featured prominently in an individual work. Since almost all fictitious works have a specific place and time, assign these headings only if the place or time is significant. Generally do not assign headings for a time period that is contemporaneous to the period in which the work was written, for example, do not express the 19th-century setting of a work that was written in the 19th century. Generally do not assign a heading for the country in which the work is set when that country corresponds to the country in which the author lives. Assign a subject for an imaginary place or organization only if the place appears in three or more works. The place of the work may also be included as a subdivision of a topical heading, in accordance with normal subject cataloging practice, either in addition to a separate heading for place or as a substitute for a separate heading.

6. Topical access. Assign headings for specific topics that are the focal point of an individual literary work. Assign headings only for topics that have been made explicit by the author or publisher, such as those topics that are mentioned in the title, series, introductory matter, dustjacket, or other prominent location. The purpose of the topical heading is to provide access for those topics that distinguish the work from most other works. Do not assign headings for vague and general topics, such as fate, evil, belief, psychology, interpersonal relations, emotions, social customs, or community life. The same principle of specificity should be applied as is used in non-literary cataloging. Do not assign both a broader and more specific heading to the same work; assign only the most specific heading that is appropriate. Normally no more than one or two topical headings should be assigned. Many works will have no topical heading.

7. Examples.

Title: Yankee warrior : the story of a Civil War hero from Maine.

```
600 10 $a Morrill, Walter Goodale, $d 1840-1935 $v Fiction.
651 #0 $a United States $x History $y Civil War, 1861-1865
          $v Fiction.
655 #7 $a Biographical fiction.  $2 gsafd
655 #7 $a War stories. $2 gsafd
```

LC practice:
SPECIAL PROVISIONS FOR INCREASED SUBJECT ACCESS TO FICTION

7. Examples. *(Continued)*

Title: The red horseman.

```
600 10 $a Grafton, Jake $v Fiction.
650 #0 $a Nuclear weapons plants $v Fiction.
650 #0 $a Terrorism $v Fiction.
651 #0 $a Russia (Federation) $v Fiction.
655 #7 $a Spy stories. $2 gsafd
```

Title: The helpful ghost.

```
655 #7 $a Love stories. $2 gsafd
655 #7 $a Ghost stories. $2 gsafd
```

Title: First degree love : a novel of euthanasia.

```
650 #0 $a Euthanasia $v Fiction.
651 #0 $a Kentucky $v Fiction.
655 #7 $a Medical novels. $2 gsafd
```

Title: The French consul.

```
650 #0 $a Consuls $z China $v Fiction.
651 #0 $a China $x History $y Warlord period, 1916-1928
          $v Fiction.
655 #7 $a Historical fiction. $2 gsafd
655 #0 $a Political fiction.
```

Title: The story of Rolf and the Viking bow.

```
651 #0 $a Iceland $x History $y To 1262 $v Juvenile fiction.
651 #0 $a Iceland $x History $y To 1262 $v Fiction.
650 #0 $a Vikings $v Fiction.
650 #1 $a Adventure and adventurers $v Fiction.
650 #1 $a Middle Ages $v Fiction.
655 #7 $a Historical fiction. $2 gsafd
```

Literature: Legends and Romances H 1795

BACKGROUND**: Descriptive catalogers are responsible for establishing uniform titles for the texts of legends and romances and personal name records for individual legendary characters; subject catalogers are responsible for establishing, as subject headings, objects or named groups of characters that are a part of a legend or romance. A single entity may be represented by both a uniform title in the name authority file, for example,* ***Guillaume (Chanson de geste) *[tagged 130], and a personal name heading for the character in the name authority file, for example,* ***William, of Palerne*** *[tagged 100]. Although both are valid for subject use, each is used for a different purpose. This instruction sheet gives guidelines for establishing subject headings for objects and named groups of legendary characters, as well as for assigning subject headings and uniform titles to texts of, and to works about, legends and romances.*

Until July 2013, headings for individual legendary characters were established as subject headings. Existing LCSH headings remain valid for use as subjects until name authority records for the characters are created and the subject authority records are cancelled. Establish RDA name headings for characters when they are needed for use as descriptive access points. Optionally, name headings may be established when the characters are needed only as subject headings. In either case, make a proposal to cancel the existing subject headings following the instructions in H 193 sec. 14.

> *Note: Catalogers in PCC libraries who do not submit SACO proposals should make a name authority record and then email policy@loc.gov to request that the Policy and Standards Division create a proposal to cancel the subject heading.*

1. Establishing subject headings for named groups of legendary characters or legendary objects. Establish headings for named groups of legendary characters according to the following pattern:

```
150 ## $a [name of group] (Legendary characters)
450 ## $a [alternative form of name, if any] (Legendary characters)
550 ## $w g $a Folklore [or, if appropriate, Legends]
        $z [place]
```

Code the heading as *not* subdivided geographically by selecting the **Not Subd Geog** radio button on the template in the Subject Heading Proposal System.

H 1795 Literature: Legends and Romances

1. Establishing subject headings for named groups of legendary characters or legendary objects. *(Continued)*

Examples:

```
150 ## $a Kayānids (Legendary characters)
450 ## $a Kayānians (Legendary characters)
450 ## $a Kayāniyān (Legendary characters)
550 ## $w g $a Legends $z Iran

150 ## $a Horatii (Legendary characgters)
550 ## $w g $a Legends $z Rome
```

Legendary objects. Use no qualifier after headings for legendary objects, for example, **Grail**.

2. Assignment of headings.

> *Note: In carrying out the following procedures, treat headings for gods, goddesses, and mythological characters, i.e., those that are qualified* ***(... deities)*** *or* ***(... mythology)*** *in the same manner as legendary characters.*

a. Texts. Assign to literary versions of legendary tales, whether individual or collected, and whether in prose, verse, or dramatic form, the heading designating the dominant character or motif of the tale, with the form subdivision **–Legends** or **–Romances**. Use these subdivisions under name headings for real persons and legendary characters . Also assign additional headings appropriate for folklore materials (cf. H 1627) or for individual works of drama, fiction, or poetry (cf. H 1780, H 1790, H 1800).

Use **–Romances** under names of persons and legendary characters for the texts of medieval (i.e., pre-1501) European tales based chiefly on legends of chivalric love and adventure. (*Exception:* Use **Arthurian romances** as a form heading instead of **Arthur, King–Romances**.) In all other cases, including sagas, use **–Legends**. Also use these subdivisions for works that are clearly modern language retellings of legends and romances of medieval origin, with characters and plots that are essentially unaltered. If the modern version is changed so substantially that it is, in effect, a new work, unrecognizable as a retelling of a medieval work, use instead the standard literary form subdivisions **–Fiction**, **–Drama**, **–Poetry**, or **–Literary collections,** in accordance with the provisions of H 1780, H 1790, and H 1800.

2. Assignment of headings.

a. Texts. *(Continued)*

Examples:

```
600 00 $a Ywain $v Romances.
600 00 $a Miaoshan $v Legends.
600 00 $a Veronica, $c Saint, $d active 1st century $v Legends.
650 #0 $a Grail $v Legends.
```

b. History and criticism of legends and romances. Assign form headings of the type described above, further subdivided by **–History and criticism** (or by other appropriate subdivisions used under literary form headings, such as **–Concordances** or **–Indexes**). *Examples:*

```
650 #0 $a Grail $x Legends $x History and criticism.
650 #0 $a Arthurian romances $v Indexes.
600 00 $a Arthur, $c King $x Romances $v Concordances.
```

To works about a specific legend or romance, or a specific version of a legend or romance, also assign the appropriate uniform title or name-title headings. *Example:*

Title: Three studies of Sir Gawain and the Green Knight.

```
630 00 $a Gawain and the Grene Knight.
600 00 $a Gawain $x Romances $x History and criticism.
```

c. History and criticism of individual legendary characters. To general works that focus on a specific legendary character rather than on the legend(s) or romance(s) in which the character appears, assign the heading for the character and use no literary form subdivision after the heading. If the discussion is limited to the presence of the character in literature or art, assign the heading **[*name of character*]—In literature**, or **[*name of character*]–Art**. Establish each use of the subdivision **–In literature** under a heading; the subdivision **–Art** is free-floating under names of legendary characters.

H 1795 Literature: Legends and Romances

3. Examples.

Title: The Pied Piper of Hamlin.

```
600 00 $a Pied Piper, $c of Hamelin $v Legends.
650 #0 $a Legends $z Germany $z Hameln.
651 #0 $a Hameln (Germany) $x History $v Fiction.
```

Title: Heracles and Euripidean tragedy.

```
650 #0 $a Greek drama (Tragedy) $x History and criticism.
600 00 $a Euripides. $t Heracles.
600 00 $a Heracles $x In literature.
```

Title: A natural man : the true story of John Henry.

```
600 00 $a John Henry.
```

1. Individual manuscripts and works about them. *(Continued)*

e. Manuscript heading. If the work being cataloged is an original manuscript rather than a facsimile, assign a manuscript heading of the type **Manuscripts, [*language*]–[*place where presently located*]**, for example, **Manuscripts, French–France–Paris**. This heading provides for retrieval by form.

Facsimile editions. Assign this heading also to facsimiles of original manuscripts using the subdivision **–Facsimiles** (cf. H 1595), for example, **Manuscripts, Latin (Medieval and modern)–Washington (D.C.)–Facsimiles**.

*Note: Interpret the term **facsimile** broadly to include any type of exact copy of the complete, or essentially complete, original text, including photocopy editions. Do not assign the manuscript heading to facsimiles consisting only of selected passages or reproductions of illuminations, or to editions in which the original text has been transcribed.*

f. Facsimile heading for literary works. If the work being cataloged is a facsimile edition of an individual work of belles lettres, assign a heading consisting of the name of the author of the work (or uniform title, if the work is anonymous) with the subdivision **–Manuscripts– Facsimiles**, in accordance with the provisions of H 1110 and H 1155.8. *Examples:*

```
600 10 $a Orwell, George, $d 1903-1950 $v Manuscripts
          $v Facsimiles.
630 00 $a Cantar de mío Cid $v Manuscripts $v Facsimiles.
```

g. Illuminations present. Assign to the work being cataloged the heading **Illumination of books and manuscripts** if the work has been issued to highlight its illuminations, if the work consists of reproductions of illuminations from a manuscript, or if the work discusses the illuminations of a particular manuscript. Qualify this heading by nationality, period, style, etc. in accordance with general practices for fine arts cataloging (cf. H 1250). Subdivide the heading by place in order to bring out the place of origin of the art. If necessary, assign more than one heading of this type in order to bring out all details. *Examples:*

```
650 #0 $a Illumination of books and manuscripts, Romanesque
          $z England.
650 #0 $a Illumination of books and manuscripts, English.
```

Do not use the subdivisions **–Specimens** or **–Facsimiles** under these headings.

1. Individual manuscripts and works about them. *(Continued)*

h. Name of work. To all works about a manuscript, including those that contain the original text, assign a heading for the name of the work discussed. This heading may be in the form of an author/title heading, or a uniform title heading (cf. H 1435), for example, **Chaucer, Geoffrey, -1400. Troilus and Criseyde**; or **Beowulf**.

Works of belles lettres. If the manuscript discussed is a work of belles lettres with literary commentary, further subdivide this heading using the appropriate literary subdivisions from H 1155.6 and H 1155.8. In accordance with general cataloging practices for literature, also assign, when necessary, a heading for the literary author with the appropriate subdivision from H 1110.

Sacred works. For individual sacred works, such as the Bible, assign the appropriate uniform title heading for the text itself, disregarding language, edition, date, etc., for example, **Bible. Revelation**.

If, in accordance with sec. 1.c., above, a heading for the category of religious work was assigned, omit the uniform title heading representing the text of the same work. For example, if the heading **Psalters** was assigned, omit the heading **Bible. Psalms**. If, in the case of a liturgical work, a heading for the category of religious work was assigned, also omit the corresponding author/title heading for the text of the work. For example, if **Psalters** was assigned, omit the heading **Catholic Church. Psalter (...)**.

If appropriate, further divide the uniform title heading using the appropriate subdivision from H 1188. For example, if the focus of the work is on its illuminations, if the work consists only of selected illuminations, or if the work is a discussion of the illuminations, use the subdivision **–Illustrations**, for example, **Bible. New Testament–Illustrations**.

1. Individual manuscripts and works about them. *(Continued)*

i. Name of manuscript. To all works about a manuscript, including those that contain the original text, assign a heading for the name of the physical manuscript if it is known, for example, **Bamberg Apocalypse**; **Isabella psalter**.

Since this heading is a uniform title, it must be separately established in the name authority file. Do not use the corresponding heading for the textual content of the manuscript. For example, use **Isabella psalter**, *not* **Catholic Church. Psalter (Ms. Isabella psalter)**.

If the name of the manuscript is unknown, assign the repository designation as a heading. *Examples:*

```
610 20 $a Bodleian Library.  $k Manuscript.  $n Douce 180.
610 20 $a Biblioteca apostolica vaticana.  $k Manuscript.
          $n Cod. Cap. 63B.
```

Do not assign *both* the manuscript name and the repository designation to the same work. Assign the manuscript name whenever it is known.

If the focus of the work is on its illuminations, if the work consists only of selected illuminations, or if the work is a discussion of the illuminations, use the subdivision **–Illustrations** under either of these types of headings. Code **–Illustrations** as an $x subfield if the work discusses the illuminations. Code it as a $v subfield if the work consists of the actual illuminations. *Examples:*

```
630 00 $a Bamberg Apocalypse $x Illustrations.
610 20 $a Bodleian Library.  $k Manuscript.  $n Douce 180
        $v Illustrations.
```

H 1855 Manuscripts

1. Individual manuscripts and works about them. *(Continued)*

j. Institution where housed, etc. In order to bring out the location and ownership of a manuscript, assign one or more headings of the type described below to works that discuss a particular manuscript, including those that contain the text. Assign these headings when the required information is readily available.

(1) General rule. If a manuscript is not privately owned, bring out the name of the institution in which it is permanently housed, for example, **Biblioteca apostolica vaticana**.

If the manuscript is a part of a special collection of the institution, use a special collection subdivision under the heading for the name of the institution, as described in sec. 1.j.(2), below.

Omit this heading if, in accordance with sec. 1.i., above, a heading was assigned for the repository designation.

(2) Manuscripts in named collections. In addition to the heading for the institution where the manuscript is permanently housed, assign the heading for the name of the collection (cf. H 1427). *Examples:*

```
600 10 $a Bradfer-Lawrence, H. L. $q (Harry Lawrence) $x Art
        collections.
600 30 $a Barberini family $x Library.
610 20 $a New-York Historical Society $x Archives.
```

If the name of the collection consists of the name of the institution where the manuscript is housed followed by a collection subdivision, the one heading satisfies the requirements of both sec. 1.j.(1) and 1.j.(2).

(3) Original owner. If the original owner is often associated with a particular manuscript, also assign the heading for his or her name. Use a collection subdivision, such as **–Library**, under this heading only if it is known that the manuscript was originally stored as part of a collection. For example, in the case of *La Bibbia di Borso d'Este*, assign the heading **Borso d'Este, Duke of Ferrara, Modena and Reggio, 1413-1471**.

1. Individual manuscripts and works about them. *(Continued)*

k. Name of artist(s) discussed. To works that discuss the illuminations of a manuscript that are by a known artist, including works that contain the original text, assign the heading for the name of the artist or artists, for example, **Clovio, Giulio, 1498-1578**; **Limbourg family**. Also assign this heading to works that include only reproductions of selected illuminations, provided that the illuminations are discussed in the work. Omit the heading if a work contains reproductions with no discussion of the artwork.

2. Collections of manuscripts and works about them. Specific guidelines for cataloging collections of manuscripts or works about groups of manuscripts cannot be formulated because the diversity of such materials is too great, and because such collections share common features with so many other types of library materials. Insofar as possible, however, the same broad principles followed in cataloging individual manuscripts apply also to collections. Because of the difference in nature between individual manuscripts and collections of manuscripts, many of the specific provisions for individual manuscripts are not applicable to collections. For example, the requirement to assign a heading for the name of a manuscript or for the name of an artist would generally not apply to a collection. Conversely, because general cataloging practices for collections of publications apply also to collections of manuscripts, some headings not mentioned in connection with individual manuscripts are, nevertheless, required for collections. For example, the literary form headings required for collections of literary works, such as **English literature–Middle English, 1100-1500–Manuscripts–Facsimiles**, are also required for collections of manuscripts of literary works. Similarly, the headings required for catalogs of library materials (cf. H 1361) are also required for catalogs of manuscript collections.

3. Special cataloging situations.

Note: This section includes examples from the LC MARC bibliographic database. Most of these are AACR2 records, but in a few instances AACR1 records were used because no AACR2 examples were available to illustrate a point. Only condensed descriptions of the works are provided. The subject headings provided correspond to the provisions of this instruction sheet and are not necessarily the same as those found in the actual LC record for the title. Only the information available in each record was used for assigning subject headings; no attempt was made to examine the actual pieces. The subject headings are listed in the same order as the topics are discussed in this instruction sheet. This is not necessarily the order in which they would actually be assigned; the actual order would depend on the classification of the work in the LC Classification system and on the other provisions in H 80.

a. Text without important features.

(1) Original manuscript. If the work is the original manuscript, assign the following headings:

[*topic*] (–Early works to 1800)
Manuscripts, [*language*]–[*place*]

(2) Facsimile editions. If the work is a facsimile edition without commentary, assign the following headings:

[*topic*] (–Early works to 1800)
Manuscripts, [*language*]–[*place*]–Facsimiles

3. Special cataloging situations.

a. Text without important features. *(Continued)*

(3) Commentaries. If the work is a commentary on either the original manuscript or on a facsimile edition, with or without the text, assign the following headings:

[*topic*] (–Early works to 1800)
Manuscripts, [*language*]–[*place*]–Facsimiles
[*name of work, i.e. author/title or uniform title heading*]
[*name of manuscript; or repository designation*]
[*institution where housed; and/or private collection; owner*]

Examples:

Valturio, Roberto, 1405-1475.
De re militari. [Italy, 3d quarter of 15th cent.]
[Rosenwald Coll. Ms. no. 14]
Manuscript on paper. Humanistic script.

```
650 #0 $a Military art and science $v Early
          works to 1800.
650 #0 $a Manuscripts, Latin (Medieval and
          modern) $z Washington (D.C.)
```

Pepys Library. Manuscript. Pepys 1047.
Stere htt well: a book of medieval refinements, recipes and remedies, from a manuscript in Samuel Pepys's library. Introduction by Delia Smith. Facsimile ...

```
650 #0 $a Cooking, English $v Early works to
          1800.
650 #0 $a Medicine, Medieval.
650 #0 $a Manuscripts, English $z England
          $z Cambridge $v Facsimiles.
610 10 $a Pepys Library. $k Manuscript. $n Pepys
          1047.
600 10 $a Pepys, Samuel, $d 1633-1703
          $x Library.
```

3. Special cataloging situations.

a. Text without important features.

Examples: (Continued)

Alcock, N. W. (Nathaniel Warren)
Warwickshire grazier and London skinner, 1532-1555 : the account book of Peter Temple and Thomas Heritage.
Contains the complete text of Huntington Library Ms. ST 36.

```
650 #0 $a Agriculture $z England $z Warwickshire
          $x Accounting $v Early works to 1800.
650 #0 $a Wool industry $z England $z London
          $x Accounting $v Early works to 1800.
610 20 $a Henry E. Huntington Library and Art
          Gallery. $k Manuscript. $n ST 36.
600 10 $a Temple, Peter, $d ca. 1517-ca. 1588
          $x Archives.
600 10 $a Heritage, Thomas $x Archives.
```

Sächsische Landesbibliothek (Dresden, Germany).
Manuscript. C 80, fol. 368r-378v.
Die erste deutsche Algebra aus dem Jahre 1481. Erläutert von Kurt Vogel.
Consists of the Middle High German text of and notes on manuscript ...

```
650 #0 $a Arithmetic $v Early works to 1900.
610 20 $a Sächsische Landesbibliothek (Dresden,
          Germany). $k Manuscript. $n C 80, fol.
          368r-378v.
```

Domesday book / facsimiles with introduction.
6 p., ix p. of plates.
Includes bibliographical references.

```
651 #0 $a Great Britain $x History $y Norman
          period, 1066-1154.
630 00 $a Domesday book.
```

3. Special cataloging situations.

b. Texts of religious works; or works of belles lettres.

(1) Reprints of original text. If the work is a reprint of the original text, without commentary, assign the following headings:

[*topic*] (–Early works to 1800)
[*category of religious work*]–Texts
[*denomination*]–Liturgy–Texts

(2) Facsimile editions. If the work is a facsimile edition of the original text, without commentary, assign, in addition to any of the appropriate headings above, the following headings:

Manuscripts, [*language*]–[*place*]–Facsimiles
[*name of literary author*]–Manuscripts–Facsimiles

(3) Commentaries. If the work is a commentary on one of the above types of works, assign the following headings:

[*topic*] (–Early works to 1800)
[*category of religious work*]–Texts
[*denomination*]–Liturgy–Texts (–History and criticism)
Manuscripts, [*language*]–[*place*]–Facsimiles
[*name of literary author*]–Manuscripts–Facsimiles
[*name of work, i.e. author/title or uniform title heading*]
[*name of manuscript; or repository designation*]
[*institution where housed; and/or private collection; owner*]

Examples:

Durham Gospels.
The Durham gospels, Durham Cathedral Library.
Early English manuscripts in facsimile; text of gospels in Latin.

```
650 #0 $a Manuscripts, Latin (Medieval and
          modern) $z England $z Durham
          $v Facsimiles.
```

3. Special cataloging situtations.

b. Texts of religious works; or works of belles lettres.

Examples: (Continued)

Chaucer, Geoffrey, -1400.
Troilus and Criseyde.
St. John's College, Cambridge, Manuscript L.1 : a facsimile.
Introduction by Richard Beadle and Jeremy Griffiths.

```
650 #0 $a Manuscripts, English (Middle)
          $z England $z Cambridge $v Facsimiles.
600 10 $a Chaucer, Geoffrey, $d -1400
          $v Manuscripts $v Facsimiles.
600 10 $a Chaucer, Geoffrey, $d -1400.
          $t Troilus and Criseyde.
610 20 $a St. John's College (University of
          Cambridge). $b Library. $k Manuscript.
          $n L.1.
```

Catholic Church.
Echternacher Sakramentar und Antiphonar : vollständige Faksimile-Ausgabe im Originalformat der Handschrift 1946 aus dem Besitz der Hessischen Landes- und Hochschulbibliothek Darmstadt.
Facsim. vol. in Latin; commentary partly in German ...

```
650 #0 $a Sacramentaries $v Texts.
650 #0 $a Antiphonaries $v Texts.
610 20 $a Catholic Church $x Liturgy $v Texts.
650 #0 $a Manuscripts, Latin (Medieval and
          modern) $z Germany $z Darmstadt
          $v Facsimiles.
610 20 $a Hessische Landes- und
          Hochschulbibliothek Darmstadt.
          $k Manuscript. $n 1946.
```

Music Form/Genre Headings: Medium of Performance H 1917.5

BACKGROUND: *This instruction sheet provides guidance on headings for musical compositions, specifically, those music form/genre headings that include medium of performance. Its primary focus is on when authority records are required and how to formulate headings that include medium of performance when the headings are built from various elements according to patterns. It also touches on music form/genre headings that do not include medium of performance. For guidance on subdivisions for musical compositions, see H 1160.*

A large number of music form/genre headings that include medium of performance have been established in the subject authority file. With some exceptions (see H 250 and below), authority records for these types of headings are no longer made because: 1) cross references are no longer required; 2) the order of musical instruments given in the headings has been a pattern for some time; and 3) the patterns the headings follow are amply illustrated in the authority file.

1. Names of instruments, families, and ensembles.

a. Form of name.

(1) General guidelines. For general guidance on the creation of subject authority records for musical works, see H 250. For additional guidance on establishing names of musical instruments, see H 1918. When specifying an instrument in a heading, use the form of name for the instrument established in the subject authority file. If the name of the instrument has not been established, make two proposals, one for the name of the instrument and the other for its music, which will authorize the instrument to be used in bibliographic records as a medium of performance. Include a see also reference in the proposal for the music, where the authorized plural, if there is one, is shown, and a scope note. *Example:*

```
150 ## $a Flute

150 ## $a Flute music
360 ## $i headings for forms and types of music that include
          "flute" or "flutes" and headings with medium of
          performance that include "flute" or "flutes"
680 ## $i Here are entered compositions not in a specific
          form or of a specific type for solo flute, and
          collections of compositions in several forms or
          types for solo flute.
```

H 1917.5 Music Form/Genre Headings: Medium of Performance

1. Names of instruments, families, and ensembles.

a. Form of name. *(Continued)*

(2) Headings that include the instrument's key. When establishing headings, omit the key of the instrument even if it is typically included in the instrument's name. *Examples:*

```
150 ## $a Clarinet    [Includes the A, B flat and E flat clarinets]
150 ## $a Trumpet     [Includes the B flat, C, D, E flat, F, and A trumpets]
```

(3) Headings that include the instrument's range. Headings for instruments may be established that incorporate the instrument's range. (Retain the term for the range when the instrument is used as a medium of performance in form/genre headings for musical works only in headings for instrumental works, and only when the works are for one or two solo players, alone or accompanied by an ensemble.) In other form/genre headings use the generic term for the instrument. *Examples:*

```
150 ## $a Alto flute music
150 ## $a Alto flute and viola music
150 ## $a Sonatas (Alto flutes (2))
```

```
150 ## $a Alto trombone music
650 #0 $a Alto trombone with string orchestra.
```

```
150 ## $a Bass clarinet music
650 #0 $a Concertos (Bass clarinet and double bass
          with jazz ensemble)
```

but:

Title: Life a mad animal : for double bass, piano, violin, viola, alto flute, clarinet

```
150 ## $a Flute music
650 #0 $a Sextets (Piano, clarinet, flute, violin,
          viola, double bass)
```

1. Names of instruments, families, and ensembles.

a. Form of name.

(3) Headings that include the instrument's range. *(Continued)*

Include a scope note in the authority record for music of an instrument whose name incorporates the instrument's range, to state when the specific name of the instrument is used, and when the generic name is used, in form/genre headings that include the medium of performance. *Example:*

```
150 ## $a Bass clarinet music
680 ## $i The term "bass clarinet" is used as a medium of
          performance in headings for works for one or two
          solo instruments, alone or accompanied by an
          ensemble. In headings for other works that include
          bass clarinet, the generic term "clarinet" is used
          as the medium of performance.
```

(4) Non-musical objects used as musical instruments. When it is appropriate to establish a heading for music written for a non-musical object so that the object can be used as a medium of performance in a bibliographic record, in addition to creating a heading for the music of the object, also create a general see reference for the object to demonstrate how it may be used. Give at least one example. All examples must be authorized headings, so establish such as heading for the resource being cataloged to use in the general see reference, even when establishing the heading would not normally be necessary according to H 1917.5. *Examples:*

```
150 ## $a Leaf music
680 ## $i Here are entered musical compositions not in a specific
form or of a specific type consisting of sounds produced by
blowing air across a leaf, and collections of such compositions
in several forms or types

150 ## $a Leaves (Musical medium of performance)
260 ## $i headings for musical compositions containing the word
"leaf" or "leaves" as a medium of performance, e.g., $a Leaf
music
```

H 1917.5 Music Form/Genre Headings: Medium of Performance

1. Names of instruments, families, and ensembles. *(Continued)*

b. Singular/plural.

(1) Instruments. Names of instruments established in the plural (because more than one is usually played at a time by a single performer) may be singular or plural in headings for music of that instrument, where natural language should govern the choice. *Examples:*

Name of the instrument	***Music of the instrument***
Castanets	Castanet music
Clock chimes	Clock chime music
Panpipes	Panpipes music
Timpani	Timpani music

(2) Ensembles and families of instruments. When establishing a heading for music of an instrumental ensemble or a family of instruments whose name has been established in the plural, use the name of the ensemble or family in the singular in the heading for music of the ensemble or family. *Examples:*

Name of the ensemble or family	***Music of the ensemble or family***
Bands (Music)	Band music
Stringed instruments	Stringed instrument music

c. Doubling. If a solo performer doubles on two or more instruments of the same type, use the generic name for the instrument in headings that specify medium of performance. *Example:*

Title: Sonata a cinque : for clarinet in A (doubling on bass clarinet and clarinet in E-flat), violin, cello, bass trombone and piano

```
650 #0 $a Quintets (Piano, clarinet, trombone, violin,cello)
```

2. Solo instruments in headings: Order of solo instruments. Assign the names of solo instruments in the following order: (1) keyboard instruments, (2) wind instruments, (3) plucked or hammered stringed instruments without a keyboard, (4) percussion, electronic, and other instruments, (5) bowed stringed instruments, (6) unspecified instruments, and (7) continuo. Within each numbered category, give the instruments in alphabetical order with the exception of bowed stringed instruments: give these in score order, high to low, basing the order on the range of each instrument as described in standard music reference sources.

Do not include more than 9 instruments or 9 soloists in a heading, counting all categories. If the solo group is larger than 9, use an appropriate heading that incorporates the term "ensemble" (cf. sec. 5).

Examples:

```
650 #0 $a Clarinet, flute, violin, cello with chamber
          orchestra.
650 #0 $a Flute and violin music.
650 #0 $a Concertos (Piano, saxophone, double bass
          with instrumental ensemble)
650 #0 $a Nonets (Bassoon, clarinet, flute, horn,
          oboe, violin, viola, cello, double bass)
650 #0 $a Octets (Piano, clarinet, flute, guitar,
          mandolin, accordion, percussion, double
          bass)
650 #0 $a Piano, horn, glockenspiel, xylophone with
          orchestra
650 #0 $a Pianos (2), celesta, percussion, synthesizer
          with chamber orchestra
650 #0 $a Quartets (Flute, violin, viola, continuo)
650 #0 $a Sonatas (Flute and violin)
650 #0 $a Suites (Flute, harp, vibraphone, cello)
650 #0 $a Quartets (Pianos (3), computer)
650 #0 $a Quartets (Clarinet, flute, computer, double
          bass)
650 #0 $a Septets (Electronics, percussion)
650 #0 $a String quintets (Violin, viola d'amore,
          viola, cello, violone)
650 #0 $a Trios (Piano (4 hands), reed organ)
650 #0 $a Variations (Organ and piano)
```

For the order of solo instruments when there are two, one of which is chordal, see sec. 3 and sec. 6.

2. Solo instruments in headings: Order of solo instruments. *(Continued)*

For guidelines on headings for two or more solo instruments combined with a term for an accompanying ensemble, see sec. 5.

3. Solo instruments in headings: Combinations of two different instruments or of one unspecified and one specified instrument.

a. Standard order. Follow the general guidelines in sec. 2. Create an authority record for the combination; provide a reference with the instruments in reverse order. *Examples:*

```
150 ## $a Balloon and electronic music
450 ## $a Electronic and balloon music

150 ## $a Bassoon and flute music
450 ## $a Flute and bassoon music
```

b. One unspecified instrument. In headings for works where one of the instruments is unspecified, establish the heading beginning with the term **Duets**. Provide references with both of the other possible ways of expressing the combination. *Example:*

```
150 ## $a Duets (Unspecified instrument and piano)
450 ## $a Duets (Piano and unspecified instrument)
450 ## $a Piano and unspecified instrument music
```

c. Chordal instruments; accompanying instrument. For Western music performed entirely on Western instruments, and optionally for one Western and one non-Western instrument, if one of the instruments is chordal (keyboard or plucked instruments, on which chords are easily played), or if one serves as an accompaniment to the other, give the chordal or accompanying instrument in the *second* position. *Examples:*

1 chordal instrument as accompaniment:

```
150 ## $a Trombone and piano music
450 ## $a Piano and trombone music
```

2 chordal instruments, the second as accompaniment:

```
150 ## $a Mandolin and piano music
450 ## $a Piano and mandolin music
```

4. Solo instruments in headings: Two or more of the same solo instrument or of the number of players of the instrument.

a. Two or more of the same instrument in a mixed group. When there are two or more different parts for the same instrument, or for unspecified instruments, in a group where other solo instruments are also required, specify the number of instruments with an arabic numeral in parentheses following the instrument's name. Use the plural form of the name. No authority record is necessary to establish the number. *Examples:*

```
650 #0 $a Concertos (Euphonium, horns (4) with band)
650 #0 $a Concertos (Flutes (3), harp)
650 #0 $a Concertos (Harpsichord, guitars (2), harp, double
          bass)
650 #0 $a Horns (3), violin with chamber orchestra.
650 #0 $a String nonets (Violins (4), violas (2), cellos (2),
         double bass)
```

b. Music of individual instruments. Headings representing music of an individual instrument (**Clarinet music**, **Harp music**, etc.), or an unspecified instrument, may be modified as shown below. Authority records are required for the modified headings. These authority records authorize use of the modifications in all pattern headings described in this instruction sheet for works that feature the instruments, either as soloists alone or as soloists serving as accompaniment.

Do not confuse the provisions in this section with sec. a. above, which provides for headings in which there are two or more parts for the instrument and the instrument is in a mixed group statement of the medium of performance.

(1) Wind, plucked, and bowed stringed instruments.

(a) Number of instruments. The heading for music for the instrument may be modified for music for two of the same instrument. *Examples:*

```
150 ## $a Flute music (Flutes (2))
150 ## $a Cello music (Cellos (2))
```

H 1917.5 Music Form/Genre Headings: Medium of Performance

4. Solo instruments in headings: Two or more of the same solo instrument or of the number of players of the instrument.

b. Music of individual instruments.

(1) Wind, plucked, and bowed stringed instruments. *(Continued)*

(b) Number of hands. If a work calls for the instrument to be played with a number of hands other than two, an authority record for music of the instrument with the exceptional number of hands is required. Indicate the number of hands in parentheses after the name of the instrument. *Examples:*

```
150 ## $a Lute music (4 hands)
650 #0 $a Songs (High voice) with lute (4 hands)

150 ## $a Viola music (3 hands)
650 #0 $a Sonatas (Viola, 3 hands)
```

(2) Keyboard instruments.

(a) Number of hands. If a work calls for the instrument to be played with a number of hands other than two, an authority record for music of the instrument indicating the exceptional number of hands is required. Give the number of hands in parentheses after the name of the instrument, or, if there is more than one instrument, following the number of instruments.
Examples:

```
150 ## $a Piano music (1 hand)
450 ## $a Left-hand piano music
450 ## $a Right-hand piano music

650 #0 $a Concertos (Piano, 1 hand)
650 #0 $a Quintets (Piano (1 hand), clarinet,
          violin, viola, cello)

150 ## $a Piano music (Pianos (2), 6 hands)
```

4. Solo instruments in headings: Two or more of the same solo instrument or of the number of players of the instrument.

b. Music of individual instruments.

(2) Keyboard instruments.

(a) Number of hands.

Examples: (Continued)

```
150 ## $a Organ music (4 hands)


650 #0 $a Canons, fugues, etc. (Organ, 4 hands),
          Arranged
650 #0 $a Septets (Organ (4 hands), horn, trombone,
          trumpets (2), tuba)
```

Do not enclose the number of hands in parentheses if the keyboard instrument is part of the accompaniment in vocal music headings (cf. sec. 10).

Example:

```
150 ## $a Piano music (4 hands)


650 #0 $a Songs (High voice) with piano, 4 hands.
650 #0 $a Choruses, Secular (Mixed voices) with
          piano, 4 hands.
```

H 1917.5 Music Form/Genre Headings: Medium of Performance

4. Solo instruments in headings: Two or more of the same solo instrument or of the number of players of the instrument.

b. Music of individual instruments.

(2) Keyboard instruments.

(b) Number of instruments.

i. Two keyboard instruments. If a work features two of the same solo keyboard instrument, make an authority record for music of the instrument, modified to show the number. *Examples:*

```
150 ## $a Electronic organ music (Electronic
          organs (2))
650 #0 $a Chorale preludes (Electronic organs
          (2))
```

```
150 ## $a Harpsichord music (Harpsichords (2))
650 #0 $a Concertos (Harpsichords (2) with
         string orchestra)
```

```
150 ## $a Organ music (Organs (2))
650 #0 $a Organs (2) with orchestra.
```

```
150 ## $a Pianos (2)
650 #0 $a Quartets (Pianos (2), percussion)
650 #0 $a Choruses, Secular (Children's voices)
        with pianos (2)
```

ii. Three or more keyboard instruments. Three or more keyboard instruments constitute an ensemble. If the instruments are the same, the ensemble bears that instrument's name. *Example:*

```
150 ## $a Piano ensembles
650 #0 $a Piano ensembles, Arranged.
650 #0 $a Suites (Piano ensemble)
```

4. Solo instruments in headings: Two or more of the same solo instrument or of the number of players of the instrument.

b. Music of individual instruments.

(2) Keyboard instruments.

(b) Number of instruments.

ii. Three or more keyboard instruments. *(Continued)*

Works for keyboard instruments that differ, or that are not specified, are assigned the heading **Keyboard instrument ensembles**. This heading, and those for ensembles of specific keyboard instruments, authorize the construction of pattern headings for works that feature three or more of the instrument or whose accompaniment is for three or more of the instrument. See also sec. 5.b.(4).

iii. One performer playing more than one instrument. If a work calls for one performer to play more than one of the same keyboard instrument, an authority record incorporating both the number of instruments and the number of performers is required. Indicate the performer as the last element in the heading. *Example:*

```
150 ## $a Piano music (Pianos (2), 1 performer)
```

(3) Two or more unspecified instruments. For two through nine unspecified instruments the headings **Duets (Unspecified instruments (2))** through **Nonets Unspecified instruments (9))** have been established. The number of unspecified instruments in these and related headings is indicated even when the headings begin with the number of players (**Trios**, **Quartets**, etc.). *Examples:*

```
650 #0 $a Canons, fugues, etc. (Unspecified
          instruments (5))
650 #0 $a Trio sonatas (Unspecified instruments
          (2), continuo)
```

4. Solo instruments in headings: Two or more of the same solo instrument or of the number of players of the instrument.

b. Music of individual instruments. *(Continued)*

(4) Percussion instruments.

(a) Number of hands. When two or more players perform on a mallet instrument or on the celesta, instruments normally played with two hands, specify the number of hands if other than two. Make an authority record for the music for each exceptional number of hands.

Example:

```
150 ## $a Vibraphone music (4 hands)
650 #0 $a Trios (Flute, vibraphone (4 hands))
```

(b) Number of players. Do not specify the number of percussion players. One player often plays more than one instrument, so a number representing the players can be confused with the number of instruments. This proscription leads to some ambiguity, as the term "percussion" is used in two ways in headings: 1) "percussion" stands for a solo percussionist in duet combinations where the percussionist plays two or more different instruments: *Examples:*

```
150 ## $a Percussion music
650 #0 $a Electronic and percussion music.
650 #0 $a Songs (Low voice) with percussion.
```

and 2) in headings for three or more solo instruments from various families, "percussion" stands for one *or more* solo percussionists playing two or more different instruments. However, the number of percussion players can sometimes be inferred from the heading. See also sec. 5.b(6).

4. Solo instruments in headings: Two or more of the same solo instrument or of the number of players of the instrument.

b. Music of individual instruments.

(4) Percussion instruments.

(b) Number of players. *(Continued)*

Examples:

Title: A cycle for voice and percussion / John Cage.
[1 percussionist plays four instruments]
`650 #0 $a Songs with percussion.`

Title: Images : para percusión / Siegfried Fink
[Flute or soprano and 4 percussionists]
`650 #0 $a Quintets (Flute, percussion)`
`650 #0 $a Songs (High voice) with percussion ensemble.`

Title: Sonata for two pianos and percussion / Béla Bartók.
[2 percussionists play 11 instruments]
`650 #0 $a Quartets (Pianos (2), percussion)`
`650 #0 $a Sonatas (Pianos (2), percussion)`

Title: Music of amber / Joseph Schwantner.
[1 percussionist plays 13 instruments]
`650 #0 $a Sextets (Piano, clarinet, flute, percussion, violin, cello)`

(5) Electronic music; Computer music. Do not modify these headings or the term "electronics" in a heading to indicate the number of instruments.

H 1917.5 Music Form/Genre Headings: Medium of Performance

5. Instrumental ensembles.

a. Types of instrumental ensemble. There are two principal types of instrumental groups: large ensembles with more than one player to a part, and smaller ensembles with one player to a part. Both types have the same two subtypes: ensembles of different instruments and ensembles of the same instrument. Subject heading practice for each type and subtype is described below. Terms for the names of specific types of ensemble may be used alone in headings or as an element that indicates medium of performance. Authority records are required for the type of ensemble and for music of the ensemble. For further guidance, see sec. 5.c below.

(1) Large ensembles (more than one player to a part), such as orchestra, string orchestra, band, clarinet choir. The word "ensembles" is not part of headings in this category.

(a) Large ensembles of different instruments. *Examples:*

Ensemble type as heading	*Ensemble type as medium of performance*
Orchestra	Violin with orchestra Suites (Orchestra) Songs (High voice) with orchestra
String orchestra	Concertos (String orchestra)
Bands (Music)	Choruses, Sacred (Mixed voices) with band Suites (Piano with band)

(b) Large ensembles of the same instrument. *Example:*

Ensemble type as heading	*Ensemble type as medium of performance*
Clarinet choir	Variations (Piano with clarinet choir) Piano with clarinet choir

5. Instrumental ensembles.

a. Types of instrumental ensemble. *(Continued)*

(2) Ensembles with one player to a part.

(a) Ensembles of different instruments. *Examples:*

Ensemble type as heading	*Ensemble type as medium of performance*
Instrumental ensembles	Harp with instrumental ensemble Variations (Instrumental ensemble) Choruses, Sacred (Mixed voices) with instrumental ensemble
Brass ensembles	Symphonies (Brass ensemble) Brass ensemble with orchestra Choruses, Secular (Mixed voices) with brass ensemble
Wind ensembles	Clarinet with wind ensemble Concertos (Tuba with wind ensemble)
String ensembles	Variations (Clarinet with string ensemble) Songs (Medium voice) with string ensemble

5. Instrumental ensembles.

a. Types of instrumental ensemble. *(Continued)*

(2) Ensembles with one player to a part.

(b) Ensembles of the same instrument. *Examples:*

Ensemble type as heading	*Ensemble type as medium of performance*
Clarinet ensembles	Clarinet with clarinet ensemble
Recorder ensembles	Suites (Recorder ensemble)
Violin ensembles	Canons, fugues, etc. (Violin ensemble)

b. Number of instruments represented by the word "ensemble."

(1) Collections. For collections, the word "ensemble(s)" in headings for the type of ensemble may represent works that differ in their specific instrumentation or number of players.

(2) Individual works. For individual works, the word "ensemble(s)" stands for 10 or more instruments in headings for the type of ensemble, except as indicated in sec. (3)-(6). *Examples:*

```
650 #0 $a Brass ensemble with orchestra.
650 #0 $a String ensembles.
650 #0 $a Symphonies (Brass ensemble)
650 #0 $a Variations (Instrumental ensemble)
```

5. Instrumental ensembles.

b. Number of instruments represented by the word "ensemble." *(Continued)*

(3) Certain other ensembles. The following headings for types of ensemble stand for three or more instruments of that type. Check scope notes in subject authority records to ascertain whether ensemble headings for other instruments have been added to this small group.

```
150 ## $a Accordion ensembles
150 ## $a Carillon ensembles
150 ## $a Concertina ensembles
150 ## $a Harmonica ensembles
150 ## $a Harpsichord ensembles
150 ## $a Keyboard instrument ensembles
150 ## $a Piano ensembles
```

(4) Solo instruments as accompanying ensemble. With one exception, two or more instruments that serve as accompaniment are described in headings as a type of ensemble, even though some of the combinations would be described by a different term otherwise. Indication of accompaniment follows the connecting word **with** (cf. sec. 6). See also sec. 10. *Examples:*

```
            650 #0 $a Choruses, Sacred (Mixed voices) with
                    keyboard ensemble.
[not, e.g.,  650 #0 $a Choruses, Sacred (Mixed voices) with organ
                    and piano.]

            650 #0 $a Songs (High voice) with string ensemble.
[not, e.g.,  650 #0 $a Songs (High voice) with string quartet.]

            650 #0 $a Songs (Medium voice) with instrumental
                    ensemble.
[not, e.g.,  650 #0 $a Songs (Medium voice) with piano trio.]
```

Exception: When the accompaniment is for two of the same keyboard instrument, the instrument is specified. *Example:*

```
650 #0 $a Vocal trios with pianos (2)
```

5. Instrumental ensembles.

b. Number of instruments represented by the word "ensemble." *(Continued)*

(5) Percussion ensemble(s). **Percussion ensemble(s)** stands for two or more performers, each playing one or more instruments, in works solely for percussion or where the accompaniment is solely for percussion. *Examples:*

```
650 #0 $a Percussion ensembles.
650 #0 $a Vibraphone with percussion ensemble.
```

(6) Jazz ensembles. The term "jazz ensembles" is not used as a main heading (cf. the see also reference in the authority record **Jazz**). However, it may be used as a medium of performance to designate a group of two or more solo instruments with other accompaniment, or to designate the accompanying group itself. *Examples:*

```
650 #0 $a Concertos (Jazz ensemble with band)
650 #0 $a Guitar and piano with jazz ensemble.
```

c. Authority records.

(1) Large ensembles (more than one player to a part). An authority record is required for the music for the type of ensemble. Include a scope note in the proposal and a see also reference, which authorizes the term for the ensemble to be used in bibliographic records as a medium of performance. *Examples:*

```
150 ## $a String orchestra music
680 ## $i Here are entered compositions not in a
          specific form or of a specific type for
          string orchestra, and collections of
          compositions in several forms or types for
          string orchestra.
360 ## $i headings for forms and types of music that
          include "string orchestra" and headings
          with medium of performance that include
          "string orchestra"
```

5. Instrumental ensembles.

c. Authority records.

(1) Large ensembles (more than one player to a part).

Examples: (Continued)

```
150 ## $a Band music
680 ## $i Here are entered compositions not in a specific
          form or of a specific type for band, and collec-
          tions of compositions in several forms or types
          for band.
360 ## $i headings for forms and types of music that
          include "band" and headings with medium
          of performance that include "band"

150 ## $a Trombone choir music
680 ## $i Here are entered compositions not in a specific
          form or of a specific type for trombone choir, and
          collections of compositions in several forms or
          types for trombone choir.
360 ## $i headings for forms and types of music that
          include "trombone choir" and headings with medium
          of performance that include "trombone choir"
```

(2) Ensembles with one player to a part. An authority record is required for the name of the ensemble. Include a scope note and a general see also reference, which authorizes the term for the ensemble to be used in bibliographic records as a medium of performance. *Examples:*

```
150 ## $a Instrumental ensembles
680 ## $i Here are entered compositions not in a specific
          form or of a specific type for ten or more
          different solo instruments, and collections of
          compositions for various numbers of solo instru-
          ments belonging to different families.
360 ## $i headings for forms and types of music that include
          "instrumental ensemble" and headings with medium
          of performance that include "instrumental
          ensemble"
```

5. Instrumental ensembles.

c. Authority records.

(2) Ensembles with one player to a part.

Examples: (Continued)

```
150 ## $a Brass ensembles
680 ## $i Here are entered compositions not in a
          specific form or of a specific type for ten
          or more different solo brass instruments,
          and collections of compositions in several
          forms or types for various numbers of solo
          brass instruments.
360 ## $i headings for forms and types of music that
          include "brass ensemble" and headings
          with medium of performance that include
          "brass ensemble"
```

```
150 ## $a Clarinet ensembles
680 ## $i Here are entered compositions not in a
          specific form or of a specific type for ten
          or more solo clarinets and collections of
          compositions in several forms or types for
          various numbers of solo clarinets.
360 ## $i headings for forms and types of music that
          include "clarinet ensemble" and headings
          with medium of performance that include
          "clarinet ensemble"
```

d. Orchestra assumed as the medium of performance. Full orchestra is typically the medium of performance of certain musical forms, including overtures, symphonic poems, and symphonies, and of the accompanying ensemble in concertos. Therefore, the large ensemble "orchestra" is assumed in headings for these forms, and is not added as a medium of performance. Similarly, the parenthetical qualifier in headings for concertos accompanied by full orchestra contains only the solo instrument(s). When assigning headings in this category to works where the assumed orchestral medium of performance is *other* than full orchestra, include the medium in the heading. Check scope notes in authority records to ascertain which headings should not have the medium of performance "orchestra" added when the heading is used for a work requiring full orchestra.

5. Instrumental ensembles.

d. Orchestra assumed as the medium of performance. *(Continued)*

Examples:

```
650 #0 $a Concertos (Clarinet)
```
[Accompaniment of orchestra is assumed]

```
650 #0 $a Symphonic poems.
```
[Performance by orchestra is assumed]

```
650 #0 $a Symphonies.
```
[Performance by orchestra is assumed]

but:

```
650 #0 $a Concertos (Clarinet with band)
650 #0 $a Concertos (Percussion with instrumental ensemble)
650 #0 $a Concertos (Violins (2) with string orchestra)
650 #0 $a Overtures (Dance orchestra)
650 #0 $a Symphonic poems (Organ)
650 #0 $a Symphonies (Electronics)
```

e. The headings Concertos (Orchestra [Band, etc.]). Headings of this type are assigned when the composer has indicated in the title or subtitle that the work is a concerto for the entire large ensemble. Concerto headings are not assigned to chamber music, where there is only one player to a part, even if the composer has used the term "concerto." *Examples:*

Title: Concerto for orchestra

```
650 #0 $a Concertos (Orchestra)
```

but:

Title: Concerto : per clavicembalo (o pianoforte), flauto, oboe, clarinetto, violino e violoncello

```
650 #0 $a Sextets (Harpsichord, clarinet, flute, oboe,
        violin, cello)
```

H 1917.5 Music Form/Genre Headings: Medium of Performance

6. Connecting words: "and" and "with."

a. The connecting word "and." The connector **and** is used to connect two solo instruments.

Examples:

```
650 #0 $a Violin and piano music.
650 #0 $a Suites (Violin and piano)
650 #0 $a Concertos (Violin and viola)
```

It is also used to connect sung vocal parts and a solo instrument when they appear together in a parenthetical qualifier for medium of performance formulated according to the provisions of sec. 8.b and 9.b.

Example:

```
650 #0 $a Canons, fugues, etc. (Chorus and trumpet
          with string orchestra)
```

The connector **and** is not used either when there are three or more elements in the heading that precede the connecting word **with**, or when the total number of soloists is more than two. Instead, commas separate those elements.

Examples:

```
650 #0 $a Clarinet, flute, violin, cello  with instrumental
        ensemble
650 #0 $a Monologues with music (Voices (2), oboe, trumpet
          with orchestra)
650 #0 $a Wind trios (Oboes (2), trumpet)
```

6. Connecting words: "and" and "with." *(Continued)*

b. The connecting word "with." Solo instruments used as accompaniment, and instrumental ensemble accompaniment, are given following the connector **with**. List solo instruments as instructed in sec. 2; indicate the accompaniment as instructed in sec. 4.b(2)(a), sec. 4.b(2)(b)(iii), sec. 5.b(5), sec. 5.d., and sec. 10. *Examples:*

```
650 #0 $a Concertos (Piano with string orchestra)
650 #0 $a Choruses, Secular (Mixed voices) with orchestra.
650 #0 $a Electronics and piano with percussion ensemble.
650 #0 $a Piano with band.
650 #0 $a Songs (High voice) with piano.
```

c. "And" and "with" in the same heading. Both connecting words may appear in the same heading. When two different solo instruments are indicated, their order must be established according to the provisions of sec. 3. When the terms "voice(s)" or "chorus" appear as a medium of performance in a parenthetical qualifier, follow the provisions of sec. 8.b. or 9.b. *Examples:*

```
150 ## $a Saxophone and guitar music
650 #0 $a Saxophone and guitar with jazz ensemble.

650 #0 $a Symphonies (Chorus and viola with chamber
         orchestra)
```

7. Arranged works: the qualifier ", Arranged."

a. Free-floating usage. The qualifier **, Arranged** is free-floating with form/genre headings for arranged instrumental music to indicate that the medium of performance specified represents an arrangement and not the original instrumentation (see also H 1160). *Examples:*

```
650 #0 $a Piano music, Arranged.
650 #0 $a Violin and piano music, Arranged.
650 #0 $a Variations (Violin and piano), Arranged.
650 #0 $a Quartets (Flute, violin, viola, cello), Arranged.
```

*7. **Arranged works: the qualifier ", Arranged."** (Continued)*

b. Authority record required. This qualifier may be added to headings for larger vocal forms and to instrumental forms that do not indicate medium of performance (cf. sec. 10). However, this usage is not free-floating; each such term must be established. *Examples:*

```
150 ## $a Operas, Arranged
150 ## $a Oratorios, Arranged
150 ## $a Motion picture music, Arranged
150 ## $a Incidental music, Arranged
```

Do not add this qualifier to form/genre headings for the following vocal forms:

- Forms whose headings are usually qualified by type of chorus. (Cf. sec. 9) *Examples:*

```
150 ## $a Cantatas
150 ## $a Masses
150 ## $a Choruses
150 ## $a Requiems
```

- Works for solo singers or for one singer to a part. *Examples:*

```
150 ## $a Sacred vocal duets [trios, etc.]
150 ## $a Songs
150 ## $a Sacred songs
150 ## $a Vocal duets [trios, etc.]
150 ## $a Solo cantatas
150 ## $a Vocalises
```

c. Special provision for excerpts. When a heading with the qualifier **, Arranged** could be modified by the free-floating subdivision **–Excerpts** (cf. H 1160), use instead the free-floating subdivision **–Excerpts, Arranged**.

Parks, Reserves, National Monuments, etc. H 1925

***BACKGROUND**: Most of the provisions for formulating and qualifying geographic names, presented in H 690 and H 810, apply also to names of parks. There are certain aspects of parks, however, that require special provisions not applicable to other types of geographic features. This instruction sheet presents these special provisions for formulating, qualifying, and providing references for names of parks. It also discusses various special provisions for assigning names of parks, and entities within parks, as subject headings. For instructions on constructing and assigning headings for regions based on geographic features, including parks, see H 760. For instructions on establishing names of dwellings with extensive grounds, such as National Trust properties, see H 1572.*

*The term **park** is used in this instruction sheet in the generic sense to include the following types of entities:*

Public and private parks of any type
Nature conservation areas, natural areas, natural history reservations, nature reserves
Wild areas, wilderness areas, roadless areas
Forest reserves and preserves
Seashores, marine parks and reserves, wild and scenic rivers
Wildlife refuges, bird reservations and sanctuaries, game ranges and preserves, wildlife management areas
Historic sites, national monuments, etc.
Indian reservations and reserves
Amusement parks
Gardens
Trails, etc.

*Until 2005, headings for entities of the above types were established as subject headings tagged **151** unless they were needed as descriptive access points. In the latter case, they were established as name headings but followed subject cataloging conventions as to the tagging and form of the headings. Beginning in 2005, a new practice was adopted. A heading for a park as a physical entity is now established only as a subject heading, never as a name heading. It is tagged **151** and qualified according to the provisions in this instruction sheet. A heading that is needed as a descriptive access point for a park as a corporate entity is established as a separate name heading, tagged **110** and qualified by the term **(Agency)** and further geographic qualifier if needed. For example, the following pairs of headings could potentially exist:*

***BACKGROUND**: (Continued)*

Subject heading: 151 ## Yellowstone National Park
Name heading: 110 2# Yellowstone National Park (Agency : U.S.)

Subject heading: 151 ## Yosemite National Park (Calif.)
Name heading: 110 2# Yosemite National Park (Agency : U.S.)

The subject heading is never valid for use as a name heading, but the name heading is valid for use either as a name heading or as a subject heading that may be assigned to a work that is about the agency that administers the park.

1. Establishing headings for parks.

a. Formulating the heading. Establish a heading for a park directly under its own name in the vernacular of the country in which it is located, unless the park is so well known that it appears in a conventional English form in most English-language reference sources. Use the form of name found to be in predominant usage after doing authority research. If the vernacular form cannot be found in the work cataloged or in readily available reference sources, establish the heading "provisionally," as described in H 1334, sec. 2.d.(3). Qualify the heading in accordance with the general rules for qualifying geographic features (see H 810). Tag the heading **151**.

National parks. If, according to the above guidelines, a heading for a nationally owned and administered park or reserve is to be established in the vernacular, establish it in the vernacular of the country as a whole, even if it is located in a republic or province where another language prevails. If the country recognizes more than one official language, and one of them is English, establish the park in English. For example, establish Canadian national parks located in Québec in English rather than French.

Wilderness areas. Establish headings for wilderness areas in the form **[...] Wilderness ([*geographic qualifier*])**.

1. Establishing headings for parks. *(Continued)*

b. Used for references (451 fields). Add 451 fields for any variant forms found. If an English form is found in any source, but the heading is still being established in the vernacular, add a 451 field for the English form. If the park name has a generic term in the initial position, also add a 451 field from the inverted form with the proper name in the initial position. Omit this field, however, if any of the 451 fields in straight order begin with the same word. If the initial words of a park consist of a forename and surname, also add a 451 field with the surname in the initial position. *Examples:*

```
151 ## $a Parque Nacional El Avila (Venezuela)
451 ## $a Avila, Parque Nacional El (Venezuela)
451 ## $a El Avila, Parque Nacional (Venezuela)
```

```
    151 ## $a Parque Nacional Iguazú (Argentina)
➤   451 ## $a Iguazú, Parque Nacional (Argentina)
    451 ## $a Iguazú National Park (Argentina)
```

Omit this 451 since the next 451 begins with the same word.

```
151 ## $a Louise McKinney Riverfront Park (Edmonton, Alta.)
451 ## $a McKinney Riverfront Park (Edmonton, Alta.)
```

Generally, do not add 451 fields in which the only variation is the abbreviation of the generic words in the heading. For example, do not add the 451 field **Red Rock Lakes N.W.R. (Mont.)** to the heading **Red Rock Lakes National Wildlife Refuge (Mont.)**.

c. Broader terms (550 fields). Add a 550 (broader term) field for the most specific generic heading for the type of park being established, subdivided by the name of the country in which the park is located. In the case of Canada, Great Britain, and the United States, subdivide this heading by the name of the first order political division in which the park is located. *Examples:*

```
151 ## $a Timbavati Game Reserve (South Africa)
550 ## $w g $a Game reserves $z South Africa

151 ## $a Duck Mountain Provincial Park (Man.)
550 ## $w g $a Parks $z Manitoba

151 ## $a Muddy Run Recreation Park (Pa.)
550 ## $w g $a Recreation areas $z Pennsylvania

151 ## $a Central Park (New York, N.Y.)
550 ## $w g $a Parks $z New York (State)
```

H 1925 Parks, Reserves, National Monuments, etc.

1. Establishing headings for parks.

c. Broader terms (550 fields). *(Continued)*

National parks. If the park is nationally owned and administered, also add a 550 (broader term) field for the heading **National parks and reserves** subdivided by the name of the country in which the park is located, or, in the case of Canada, Great Britain, and the United States, by the first order political division. *Examples:*

```
151 ## $a Tiger Haven Reserve (India)
550 ## $w g $a National parks and reserves $z India
550 ## $w g $a Wildlife refuges $z India

151 ## $a Apalachicola National Forest (Fla.)
550 ## $w g $a Forest reserves $z Florida
550 ## $w g $a National parks and reserves
          $z Florida
```

Exception: If the most specific generic heading for the type of national park being established is **Parks—[*place*]**, omit that 550 and add only the 550 **National parks and reserves—[*place*]**. *Examples:*

```
151 ## $a Mount Cook National Park (N.Z.)
550 ## $w g $a National parks and reserves
          $z New Zealand
```

[*not*

```
151 ## $a Mount Cook National Park (N.Z.)
550 ## $w g $a National parks and reserves
          $z New Zealand
550 ## $w g $a Parks $z New Zealand]
```

```
151 ## $a Badlands National Park (S.D.)
550 ## $w g $a National parks and reserves
          $z South Dakota
```

[*not*

```
151 ## $a Badlands National Park (S.D.)
550 ## $w g $a National parks and reserves
          $z South Dakota
550 ## $w g $a Parks $z South Dakota]
```

BACKGROUND: *In subject cataloging practice the term* ***periodical*** *is defined as a publication other than a newspaper that is actually or purportedly issued according to a regular schedule (monthly, quarterly, biennially, etc.) in successive parts, each of which bears a numerical or chronological designation, and that is intended to be continued indefinitely. This definition is broader than the traditional definition, which states that a periodical is generally published more frequently than annually and normally contains separate articles. The term* ***serial*** *is frequently used in a broader sense to refer to any title cataloged as a serial, including periodicals, newspapers, monographic series, etc. The subdivision* ***–Periodicals*** *is used under headings assigned to serials that conform to the subject cataloging definition of periodicals. Furthermore, by long-standing practice,* ***–Periodicals*** *is not used as a further form subdivision under those form subdivisions listed in sec. 2 of this instruction sheet.*

For provisions relating to catalogs of periodicals, see H 1361. For provisions relating to electronic serials, see H 1580.5. For provisions relating to indexes to periodicals, see H 1670. For provisions relating to newspapers on special topics and newspapers of ethnic groups in the United States, see H 1920. For classification of periodicals, see F 210 and F 220.

1. General rule. Use **–Periodicals** as a form subdivision under all headings assigned to works that conform to the definition of periodicals given above, including annual reports. Use this subdivision under topical headings, personal name headings, corporate body headings, geographic headings, etc., without restriction.

> ***Regularity of publication.*** In the event that the serials cataloger has not been able to determine with certainty the frequency of publication, use judgment to decide whether or not to use the subdivision **–Periodicals.** Base this judgment on whether or not the periodical *appears* to be issued regularly. In case of doubt, assume that it *is* issued regularly and assign the subdivision **–Periodicals.** If a publication is known to be issued irregularly but contains articles, etc., and in all other ways appears to be a periodical as defined above, use the subdivision **–Periodicals**.
>
> ***Juvenile periodicals.*** When using this subdivision in conjunction with **–Juvenile literature,** construct the heading as follows: **[*topic*]–Periodicals–Juvenile literature.**

H 1927 Periodicals

1. General rule. *(Continued)*

Serials that are not periodicals. Do not use the subdivision under headings assigned to publications that are revised and reissued in full on a regular basis, and are therefore cataloged as serials for convenience, but are not periodicals as defined above. For example, *Library of Congress subject headings* was published annually and is cataloged as a serial, but the subdivision **–Periodicals** is inappropriate for this work.

Monographic series. Do not use the subdivision under headings assigned to monographic series.

2. –Periodicals under form headings and other form subdivisions. Use **–Periodicals** as a further subdivision under most form headings and form subdivisions, for example, **American poetry–Periodicals; Tuberculosis–Statistics–Periodicals.**

Exception: Do not use **–Periodicals** as a further subdivision under the following form subdivisions:

–Amateurs' manuals
–Atlases
–Calendars
–Cases
–Congresses
–Databases
–Dictionaries
–Digests
–Directories
–Encyclopedias
–Gazetteers
–Guidebooks
–Handbooks, manuals, etc.
–Juvenile films
–Juvenile literature
–Juvenile sound recordings
–Laboratory manuals
–Maps
–Newspapers
–Observers' manuals
–Outlines, syllabi, etc.
–Photo maps
–Registers
–Telephone directories

7. Assigning additional headings. *Examples: (Continued)*

Title: Burke and the nature of politics.

```
600 10 $a Burke, Edmund, $d 1729-1797.
651 #0 $a Great Britain $x Politics and government $y 1760-
          1820.
```

Title: Running for office : how women can win.

```
650 #0 $a Political campaigns $z United States.
650 #0 $a Politics, Practical $z United States.
650 #0 $a Women $x Political activity $z United States.
651 #0 $a United States $x Politics and government $y 1989-
```

Title: Democracy and empire : Britain, 1865-1914.

```
651 #0 $a Great Britain $x Politics and government
          $y 1837-1901.
651 #0 $a Great Britain $x Politics and government
          $y 1901-1936.
```

Title: Drama in the People's Republic of China.

```
650 #0 $a Theater $z China $x History $y 20th century.
650 #0 $a Chinese drama $y 20th century $x History and
          criticism.
650 #0 $a Theater $x Political aspects $z China.
650 #0 $a Theater and society $z China.
```

Title: Priests, sisters, and political office in the United States.

```
610 20 $a Catholic Church $x Clergy $x Political activity
          $z United States $x History $y 20th century.
650 #0 $a Nuns $x Political activity $z United States
          $x History $y 20th century.
650 #0 $a Church and state $z United States $x History
          $y 20th century.
650 #0 $a Church and state $x Catholic Church $x History
          $y 20th century.
651 #0 $a United States $x Politics and government $y 1989-
```

Title: Wake us when it's over : presidential politics of l984.

```
650 #0 $a Presidents $z United States $x Election $y 1984.
651 #0 $a United States $x Politics and government
          $y 1981-1989.
```

***BACKGROUND**: Radio programs are defined as sound recordings of material that has been or that is intended to be broadcast over radio waves. This instruction sheet provides special guidelines for the assignment of genre/form terms to radio programs, or to portions of radio programs, that are cataloged by the Library of Congress. For guidelines on assigning subject headings to bring out the content of individual radio programs, consult the appropriate instruction sheet(s).*

1. Assignment of genre/form headings.

a. General rule. Assign genre/form terms to both fiction and nonfiction works. Terms may be assigned from different levels of the same hierarchy if desired.

b. Limiting to fiction or non-fiction. Some radio genre/form terms are inherently fiction or nonfiction (e.g., **Historical radio dramas**, **Public affairs radio programs**). Other terms may be used for either fiction or nonfiction works (e.g., **Children's radio programs**). When using a term in the latter category, assign an additional genre/form term to distinguish between fiction and nonfiction treatments.

Examples:

Title: The Story of Dr. Kildare.

```
655 #7 $a Medical radio programs. $2 lcgft
```

Title: The art of positive thinking.

```
655 #7 $a Inspirational radio programs. $2 lcgft
655 #7 $a Nonfiction radio programs. $2 lcgft
```

Title: A flight to the moon.

```
655 #7 $a Children's radio programs. $2 lcgft
655 #7 $a Radio docudramas. $2 lcgft
```

c. Multiple genres. Assign as many genre/form terms as necessary to bring out important forms and genres to which the work belongs. *Example:*

Title: The Wizard of Oz.

```
655 #7 $a Fantasy radio programs. $2 lcgft
655 #7 $a Children's radio programs. $2 lcgft
655 #7 $a Radio adaptations. $2 lcgft
```

H 1969.5 Radio Genre/Form Terms

2. Construction of headings.

a. General rule. The process for proposing genre/form terms follows the general guidelines on the creation of subject authority records, see H 200.

b. Form of heading.

(1) Use of terms already in LCSH. Before proposing a new genre/form term, search LCSH to determine whether there is a topical subject heading that is appropriate for use as a genre/form term. If there is, propose that the new genre/form term be identical to the topical heading.

(2) Construction of new headings. Prefer the formula **[. . .] radio programs**, although terms of the type **Radio [. . .]** may also be proposed if appropriate. If neither of the above options is practical (e.g., due to common usage or literary warrant), then terms may be constructed by using the qualifier **(Radio programs)**. *Examples:*

```
155 ## $a Horror radio programs
155 ## $a Radio outtakes
155 ## $a Variety shows (Radio programs)
```

c. References. Construct references according to the following guidelines, which follow the general principles for references presented in H 370 and H 373.

(1) Used for references. Add 455 fields for variant terminology and/or inverted forms of the authorized term.

(2) Broader term references. Judiciously add broader term references for explicit class/class member relationships. *Examples:*

```
155 ## $a Call-in radio shows
555 ## $w g $a Talk radio shows


155 ## $a Radio sermons
555 ## $w g $a Religious radio programs


155 ## $a Magazine format radio programs
555 ## $w g $a Radio programs
```

***BACKGROUND**: As a result of decisions described in detail in H 405 regarding the establishment of certain categories of named entities, practices that had been in effect from 1973 to 1984 for establishing individually named railroads were changed. Railroads were made "Group 1" headings, and accordingly may be established only as name headings tagged 110. It was also decided that a corporate body name heading for a railroad may be assigned as a subject heading for works about the line even if it includes the word **Company** or its equivalent in any language. This instruction sheet describes the procedures to be followed to implement these decisions, as well as other more general considerations in assigning headings to works about individual railroads.*

1. Assigning the heading for an individual railroad. If an AACR2 or RDA heading for an individual railroad has been established in the name authority file, assign it as established. If the heading is not established or is not coded as an AACR2 or RDA heading, establish it or change it as necessary.

2. Assigning additional headings to the work being cataloged. If the work deals only with administrative matters relating to the railroad company, such as business affairs, finances, personnel, etc., assign only the appropriate name heading as a subject. If, however, the work deals with the railroad as a physical entity, including the line, track, rolling stock, buildings associated with the railroad, etc., or if it deals with specific substantive aspects of the railroad, also assign the topical heading **Railroads–[*place*]** or a more specific heading of this type, such as **Narrow gauge railroads–[*place*]**. Bring out any specific topics by assigning additional headings, for example, **Locomotives–[*place*]**. *Examples:*

Title: Annual report of the Board of Directors to the Stockholders of the Pennsylvania Rail Road Company.

```
610 20 $a Pennsylvania Railroad $v Periodicals.
```

2. Assigning additional headings to the work being cataloged.

Examples: (Continued)

Title: The Ma & Pa : a history of the Maryland & Pennsylvania Railroad.

```
610 20 $a Maryland and Pennsylvania Railroad Company
          $x History.
650 #0 $a Railroads $z Maryland $x History.
650 #0 $a Railroads $z Pennsylvania $x History.
```

Title: Rio Grande diesels : a pictorial history.

```
610 20 $a Denver and Rio Grande Western Railroad Company
          $x History $v Pictorial works.
650 #0 $a Railroads $z West (U.S.) $x History $v Pictorial
          works.
650 #0 $a Diesel locomotives $z West (U.S.) $x History
          $v Pictorial works.
```

Title: Steam on the SNCF.

```
610 20 $a Société nationale des chemins de fer français.
650 #0 $a Railroads $z France.
650 #0 $a Steam locomotives $z France.
```

Title: The seashore's finest train.

```
650 #0 $a Blue Comet (Express train) $x History.
610 20 $a Central Railroad of New Jersey $x History.
650 #0 $a Railroads $z New Jersey $x History.
```

Title: A Catskill souvenir : scenes on the line of the Ulster and Delaware Railroad.

```
651 #0 $a Catskill Mountains (N.Y.) $x Description and
          travel.
610 20 $a Ulster & Delaware Railroad.
650 #0 $a Railroads $z New York (State)
```

Title: Baltimore and Ohio Railroad employees : 1842 and 1852, 1855 and 1857.

```
610 20 $a Baltimore and Ohio Railroad Company $x Employees
          $x History $y 19th century.
650 #0 $a Wages $x Railroads $z United States $x History
          $y 19th century.
651 #0 $a Middle Atlantic States $v Genealogy.
651 #0 $a Virginia $v Genealogy.
651 #0 $a West Virginia $v Genealogy.
651 #0 $a Ohio $v Genealogy.
```

1. General rule. Use the subdivision **–Regimental histories** as a free-floating topical subdivision under names of wars for histories of individual participating military organizations for the period of the war.

2. Generic usage. Use the subdivision in the generic sense for the history of any organizational unit *lower than a branch of the armed forces*, including individual divisions, regiments, fleets, squadrons, etc.

3. Geographic subdivision. Further subdivide the subdivision, if appropriate, by the name of the *country* to which the organization belongs; do not subdivide **–Regimental histories** by a jurisdiction smaller than a country.

Do not further subdivide the subdivision **–Regimental histories** or the subdivision **–Regimental histories–[*country*]** by the name of the military unit.

4. Usage under names of wars. When using the subdivision under names of wars, assign as an additional subject heading the corporate name of the individual military unit. *Examples:*

```
651 #0 $a United States $x History $y Civil War, 1861-1865
          $x Regimental histories.
610 10 $a United States. $b Army. $b Pennsylvania Cavalry
          Regiment, 7th (1861-1865) $x History.

650 #0 $a World War, 1939-1945 $x Regimental histories $z United
          States.
610 10 $a United States. $b Army. $b Armored Division, 3rd
          $x History.
```

In accordance with H 1200, sec. 3.b., for wars established as subdivisions under the United States, also assign the heading **[*name of state or locality*]–History–[*name of war*]–Regimental histories**, if the war has been established as a period subdivision under the state or locality in question and if appropriate for the work being cataloged.

H 1995 Regimental Histories

5. Branch of the armed forces. For a work that deals specifically and exclusively with the activities of a particular *branch* of a country's armed forces during a war, assign a heading of the type **United States. Army−History−World War, 1939-1945** in accordance with H 1159.

Headings of this type are assigned only in addition to a heading designating the particular war (with topical or local subdivisions, as appropriate). Do not assign in such cases a heading for the war with the subdivision **−Regimental histories**.

4. Individual persons.

a. Literary authors. Assign the free-floating subdivision **–Religion** under names of individual literary authors for works on the author's beliefs, practices, knowledge, views, etc., of religion, and for religion as a theme in the author's works.

b. Other persons.

(1) General. Assign the free-floating subdivision **–Religion** under names of persons, except individual theologians, for general works on the individual's religious beliefs, practices, knowledge, views, etc.

For individual theologians, assign the name heading for the person, without further subdivision.

(2) Special topics. For works on the individual's knowledge of a special aspect of religion, assign a heading of the type **[*name of person*]–Knowledge–[*special topic*]**. For works on other aspects of a religious topic in relation to a person, including the person's views on a topic, accomplishments in a religious field, or contributions to a religious topic, assign the heading for the person and an additional heading for the religious topic. *Examples:*

Title: Nietzsche's investigations into mysticism.

```
600 10 $a Nietzsche, Friedrich Wilhelm, $d 1844-1900
        $x Knowledge $x Mysticism.
```

Title: The clearest promises of God : the development of Calvin's eucharistic teaching.

```
600 10 $a Calvin, Jean, $d 1509-1564.
650 #0 $a Lord's Supper $x History of doctrines
          $y 16th century.
```

5. Assigning appropriate headings. Works on the religion of places, institutions, and people are sometimes multi-faceted, requiring an array of headings to bring out the major aspects of the subject matter. Assign additional headings, if appropriate, to cover the important topics discussed in a work. *Examples:*

Title: Shakespeare's religious background.

```
600 10 $a Shakespeare, William, $d 1564-1616 $x Religion.
650 #0 $a Religion in literature.
651 #0 $a Great Britain $x Church history $y 16th century.
```

5. Assigning appropriate headings. *Examples: (Continued)*

Title: Chi, the true god in the Igbo religion.

```
650 #0 $a Chi (Igbo deity)
650 #0 $a Igbo (African people) $x Religion.
651 #0 $a Africa, Sub-Saharan $x Religion.
```

Title: A history of Marxist-Leninist atheism and Soviet anti-religious policies.

```
650 #0 $a Persecution $z Soviet Union $x History.
650 #0 $a Atheism $z Soviet Union $x History.
651 #0 $a Soviet Union $x Religion.
```

Title: Kafka : Judaism, politics, and literature.

```
600 10 $a Kafka, Franz, $d 1883-1924 $x Religion.
600 10 $a Kafka, Franz, $d 1883-1924 $x Political and social
          views.
650 #0 $a Judaism in literature.
```

Title: Protestant reformers at Oxford.

```
610 20 $a University of Oxford $x Religion.
650 #0 $a Reformation $z England $z Oxford.
651 #0 $a Oxford (England) $x Church history $y 16th
          century.
651 #0 $a England $x Church history $y 16th century.
```

Title: Black Pentecostalism : Southern religion in an urban world.

```
610 20 $a Mt. Calvary Holy Church of America (Boston, Mass.)
650 #0 $a African Americans $z Massachusetts $z Boston
          $x Religion.
651 #0 $a Boston (Mass.) $x Church history.
```

Title: Irish famine refugees in New England.

```
650 #0 $a Irish Americans $z New England $x History $y 19th
          century.
650 #0 $a Irish Americans $z New England $x Religion.
650 #0 $a Immigrants $z New England $x History $y 19th
          century.
651 #0 $a Ireland $x Emigration and immigration $x History
          $y 19th century.
651 #0 $a New England $x Emigration and immigration
          $x History $y 19th century.
```

BACKGROUND: *Sermons are homilies or discourses for the purpose of religious instruction or exhortation, often based on texts of sacred works and delivered as part of religious services. This instruction sheet provides guidelines for assigning headings to individual sermons and collections of sermons to bring out the religion, denomination, language, topic, and occasion of the sermons, and to critical works about sermons.*

1. General. Assign the form heading **Sermons** to collections of sermons by two or more authors, not limited to one language or religion.

Assign a heading of the type **Sermons, [*language*]** to collections of sermons in one language not limited to one religion, establishing each phrase heading with language qualifier as needed, for example, **Sermons, English**; **Sermons, French**.

> *Note:* ***Sermons, American*** *is used for English sermons of the United States. However, headings with other national qualifiers should not be established.*

Establish subdivisions for special classes of authors, if appropriate, for example, **Sermons, American−Women authors**.

Establish chronological subdivisions without interposition of the subdivision **–History**, for example, **Sermons, English—21st century**.

2. Christianity.

a. General collections. Assign the form heading **Sermons** to collections of Christian sermons not limited to one language, topic, occasion, or Christian denomination.

Assign this heading to Christian sermons only in those exceptional cases where it is not possible to use a more specific heading.

b. By language. Assign headings of the type **Sermons, [*language*]** to individual sermons or collections of Christian sermons in one language, for example, **Sermons, -Welsh**; **Sermons, Spanish**.

Establish subdivisions for special classes of authors, if appropriate, for example, **Sermons, English−Women authors**.

2. Christianity. *(Continued)*

c. By denomination. In accordance with H 1187, assign a heading of the type **[*denomination*]–Sermons** to individual sermons or collections of sermons by one or more authors from that denomination, for example, **Catholic Church–Sermons**.

Do not add a language qualifier to headings of this type. Assign an additional heading to bring out the language of the sermons, as indicated in sec. 2.b.

d. By topic. To individual sermons or collections of sermons about a topic, individual person, or sacred work, assign a heading for the topic, uniform title for the sacred work, or the name of the person subdivided by the free-floating form subdivision **–Sermons**. *Examples:*

```
630 00 $a Bible. $p Genesis $v Sermons.
600 00 $a Francis, $c of Assisi, Saint, $d 1182-1226
          $v Sermons.
650 #0 $a Hope $x Religious aspects $x Christianity
          $v Sermons.
650 #0 $a Salvation $v Sermons.
```

When assigning **–Sermons** as a free-floating subdivision under names of individual persons, do not interpose a topical subdivision between the name of the person and the subdivision **–Sermons**. Establish any heading needed for sermons on a specific topic about a person, for example, **Jesus Christ–Passion–Sermons**.

e. By occasion. Assign an appropriate phrase heading for individual or collections of sermons delivered on a special occasion or prepared for a specific audience, for example, **Children's sermons**; **Christmas sermons**; **Funeral sermons.**

3. Other religions.

a. General collections. Assign a phrase heading of the type **[*religion*] sermons** to collections of sermons from a religion other than Christianity by two or more authors not limited to one language, for example, **Buddhist sermons**; **Jewish sermons**.

b. By language. Establish a phrase heading with language qualifier for individual sermons or collections of sermons of a particular religion in one language, for example, **Buddhist sermons, Korean**; **Islamic sermons, Indonesian**.

c. By sect. In accordance with H 1185, assign a heading of the type **[*name of sect*]–Sermons** to individual sermons or collections of sermons by authors from that sect.

Do not add a language qualifier to headings of this type. Assign an additional heading to bring out the language, as indicated in sec. 3.b.

d. By topic. To individual sermons or collections of sermons on a topic, assign a heading for the topic subdivided by the free-floating form subdivision **–Sermons**, for example, **Joy–Religious aspects–Hinduism–Sermons**.

e. By occasion. Assign a phrase heading for an individual sermon or collection of sermons delivered on a special occasion or prepared for a specific audience, for example, **Jewish occasional sermons**; **Rosh ha-Shanah sermons**.

4. Assigning an array of headings. To individual sermons or collections of sermons, assign an array of headings to bring out the religion, denomination, language, topic, and occasion of the sermons. *Examples:*

Title: Wesley's standard sermons.

```
650 #0 $a Methodist Church $v Sermons.
650 #0 $a Sermons, English.
```

4. Assigning an array of headings.

Examples: (Continued)

Title: Jewish funeral sermons.

```
650 #0 $a Jewish funeral sermons.
650 #0 $a Jewish sermons, Hebrew.
```

Title: Women and the word.

```
650 #0 $a Sermons, American $x Women authors.
```

Title: Thoughts for special occasions and days.

```
650 #0 $a Jewish occasional sermons.
650 #0 $a Jewish sermons, American.
```

Title: Jesus never said everyone was lovable.

```
650 #0 $a Love $x Religious aspects $x Christianity
          $v Sermons.
650 #0 $a Methodist Church $v Sermons.
650 #0 $a Sermons, American.
```

Title: Sermons on the prophecies of Micah.

```
630 00 $a Bible. $p Micah $v Sermons.
610 20 $a United Church of Canada $v Sermons.
650 #0 $a Sermons, English $z Canada.
```

Title: Marian sermons.

```
600 00 $a Mary, $c Blessed Virgin, Saint $v Sermons.
610 20 $a Catholic Church $v Sermons.
650 #0 $a Sermons, American.
```

5. History and criticism. Assign the free-floating subdivision **–History and criticism** under any type of heading or subdivision for sermons to works that critically evaluate the style and/or the contents of individual or collections of sermons, for example, **Sermons, French–History and criticism**.

Do not assign this type of heading to works on methods of writing and delivering sermons. To these works assign the appropriate heading for preaching, for example, **Preaching**; **Buddhist preaching**; **Islamic preaching**; **Methodist preaching**.

Software and Works about Software H 2070

***BACKGROUND**: Before 1987, headings for individual computer programs had been established as subject headings and were tagged 150 in authority records and 650 in bibliographic records. Since 1987, these headings are established, when needed, in the name authority file rather than the subject authority file. The headings are usually uniform titles tagged 130, but occasionally they are in author-title form tagged 100, 110, or 111. This instruction sheet describes the principles to be followed in assigning subject headings to computer software and to works about individual computer programs. For general procedures on classifying software, see F 710. For guidelines on assigning subject headings to databases, see H 1520.*

***1. Software**.*

> *Note: These provisions apply specifically to works cataloged as software, not to works cataloged as books with accompanying software. For principles to be followed in cataloging works of the latter type, see H 180, sec. 1.*

***a. Assigning subject headings**.* Assign at least one subject heading to every software title to bring out the topic(s) or genre of the software. Follow the same principles as to number and specificity of headings as are followed for books.

Use the free-floating form subdivision **–Software** under each heading assigned, for example, **Engineering–Software**, **Electronic spreadsheets–Software**, **Computer adventure games–Software**. If the title has been coded for intellectual level **a**, **b**, or **c** in field 008/22 (the box labeled **Audience** on the 008 input screen in the LC ILS), use the free-floating subdivision **–Juvenile software** under the headings assigned. Do not use the subdivision **–Computer programs** when cataloging software. Use **–Computer programs** only for works *about* computer programs.

b. Elements that are not brought out in subject headings. Do not assign subject headings to bring out the program language, the make or model of the computer, or the operating system, since access to these elements is provided in the descriptive cataloging data.

c. When to assign the heading for a named computer program. Do not assign the heading for a named computer program to the program itself. Do not, for example, assign **Lotus 1-2-3 (Computer file)** when cataloging the Lotus 1-2-3 software. Instead, assign the appropriate topical headings, for example, **Electronic spreadsheets–Software** and **Business–Software**. Assign **Lotus 1-2-3 (Computer file)** only to works *about* the program, for example, a book, a film, a periodical, or a package of software *about* Lotus 1-2-3 (see sec. 2, below).

***d. Establishing topical or genre headings**.* Establish new topical or genre headings as required, according to the same criteria followed in cataloging books and other media.

H 2070 Software and Works about Software

*2. **Works about individual computer programs**.*

LC practice:
***a**. **Assigning the name heading**.* When assigning the heading for a named computer program to a work about the program, first search the LC Database to determine whether a name authority record has been created for the program. The name heading is usually in the form **[*name of program*]** with no qualifier although occasionally a program may be established as an author-title combination. In the event of conflict, a qualifier may be added.

- *If an authority record is found*, assign the heading in the form provided in the record.

- *If an authority record is not found*, search the file of bibliographic records to determine whether the program itself has been cataloged by the Library of Congress.

  - *If a bibliographic record is found* and the main entry is under title, assign the title as a subject heading in the form found in the 245 field. Do not treat the general material designation **[computer file]** as part of the heading. If main entry is under a personal or corporate name, assign a name-title combination as the subject heading, in the same manner as for commentaries (cf. H 1435). If in doubt as to the form to use as subject heading, consult a descriptive cataloger.

  - *If a bibliographic record is not found*, establish a heading for the program in the name authority file.

***b. Assigning topical headings**.* In addition to the heading for the name of the program, assign at least one heading to bring out the topic or application of the program. *Examples:*

Title: The best book of Lotus 1-2-3.

```
630 00 $a Lotus 1-2-3 (Computer file)
650 #0 $a Business $x Computer programs.
```

Title: The WordPerfect book.

```
630 00 $a WordPerfect (Computer file)
650 #0 $a Word processing.
```

1. Musical works. *(Continued)*

- Music that is otherwise associated with the heading.

  Note: Check the subject authority file to ascertain whether a phrase heading has been established that would be used instead of ***–Songs and music*** *or that offers a choice between 2 or more similar headings.*

  Example:

  Title: Smoking and drinking. *[madrigals]*

```
650 #0 $a Smoking $v Songs and music.
650 #0 $a Drinking songs.
```

  Exception: Do not use this subdivision for dramatic works with music that can be staged, such as an opera or a ballet; for such works use the subdivision **–Drama**. *Examples:*

  Title: Nixon in China / John Adams. *[opera]*

```
600 10 $a Nixon, Richard M. $q (Richard Milhous)
        $d 1913-1994 $v Drama.
```

  Title: Cats / Andrew Lloyd Webber *[musical]*

```
650 #0 $a Cats $v Drama.
```

2. History and criticism. For works that discuss the songs or music about a topic or entity, further subdivide **–Songs and music** by **–History and criticism**. *Examples:*

Title: The Faust legend in music.

```
600 10 $a Faust, $d –approximately 1540 $x Songs and music
        $x History and criticism.
```

Title: La musique maçonnique et ses musiciens.

```
610 20 $a Freemasons $x Songs and music $x History and
        criticism.
```

H 2075 Songs and Music

2. History and criticism.

Examples: (Continued)

Title: The urban & industrial songs of the Black Country and Birmingham.

```
650 #0 $a Working class $z England $x Songs and music
          $x History and criticism.
```

Exception: Under headings for specific wars, etc., do not use **–Songs and music–History and criticism**. Use **[*name of war, revolution, etc.*]–Music and the war, [revolution, etc.]**, as described in H 1200.

2. Establishing headings for individually named strikes.

b. Strikes not limited to a single employer or firm but limited to a single city or U.S. county. *(Continued)*

Add a 550 (broader term) field from the heading **Strikes and lockouts–[*name of industry*]– [*country (or first order division, when appropriate)*]**. For general strikes, add the 550 from the heading **General strikes–[*place*]**. *Examples:*

```
150 ## $a Bookbinders' Strike, London, England, 1901
550 ## $w g $a Strikes and lockouts $x Bookbinders
          $z England

150 ## $a Coal Strike, Westmoreland County, Pa., 1910-1911
550 ## $w g $a Strikes and lockouts $x Coal mining
          $z Pennsylvania

150 ## $a Textile Workers' Strike, Río Blanco, Veracruz-
          Llave, Mexico, 1907
550 ## $w g $a Strikes and lockouts $x Textile industry
          $z Mexico
```

c. Strikes against a single employer or firm (not limited to a single city). Construct the heading as follows:

```
150 ## $a [heading for the firm as established in RDA form
          in the name authority file] Strike, [year(s)]
```

Add a 550 (broader term) field from the heading **Strikes and lockouts–[*name of industry*]– [*country (or first order division, when appropriate)*]**. *Examples:*

```
150 ## $a United Aircraft of Canada Strike, 1974-1975
550 ## $w g $a Strikes and lockouts $x Airlines
          $z Québec (Province)

150 ## $a Calvé (Firm) Strike, 1977
550 ## $w g $a Strikes and lockouts $x Food industry and
          trade $z Netherlands

150 ## $a Spicer, S.A. Strike, 1975.
550 ## $w g $a Strikes and lockouts $x Automobile
          industry $z Mexico
```

2. Establishing headings for individually named strikes. *(Continued)*

d. Strikes against a single employer or firm (limited to a single city). Construct the heading as follows:

```
150 ## $a [heading for the firm as established in RDA form
           in the name authority file] Strike, [city, larger
           jurisdiction], [year(s)]
```

Add a 550 (broader term) field from the heading **Strikes and lockouts–[*name of industry*]– [*country (or first order division, when appropriate)*]**. *Examples:*

```
150 ## $a Stocznia Gdańska im. Lenina Strike, Gdańsk,
           Poland, 1980
450 ## $a Lenin Shipyard Strike, Gdańsk, Poland,
           1980
550 ## $w g $a Strikes and lockouts $x Shipbuilding
           industry $z Poland

150 ## $a Marinette Knitting Mills Strike, Marinette, Wis.,
           1951
550 ## $w g $a Strikes and lockouts $x Clothing trade
           $z Wisconsin
```

e. Strikes against an educational institution. Establish strikes by employees against an educational institution according to the instructions in sec. 2.c. or 2.d., above, depending upon whether the educational institution is in a single city. For student strikes against an educational institution, subdivide the name heading for the institution by the free-floating topical subdivision **–Student strike, [*date*]** (cf. H 1151).

13. Examples. *(Continued)*

Title: Supervision and education-formation for ministry.

```
650 #0 $a Clergy $x Training of $z United States.
650 #0 $a Theology $x Study and teaching $z United States.
650 #0 $a Theology $x Study and teaching $x Supervision.
```

Title: Visual communication in science : learning through sharing images.

```
650 #0 $a Science $x Study and teaching (Secondary)
          $x Audio-visual aids.
650 #0 $a Visual communication.
```

Title: Internship training in applied anthropology.

```
650 #0 $a Applied anthropology $x Study and teaching
          (Internship) $z Florida.
610 20 $a University of South Florida. $b Center for Applied
          Anthropology.
```

Title: Approaching the Gospels together : a leaders' guide for group Gospels study.

```
630 00 $a Bible. $p Gospels $x Study and teaching.
650 #0 $a Church group work.
```

Title: Teaching the sciences in community colleges.

```
650 #0 $a Science $x Study and teaching (Higher) $z United
          States.
650 #0 $a Community colleges $x Curricula $z United States.
```

***BACKGROUND**: Territories and possessions are those parts of a country that are subject to its government but not fully integrated into the nation to which they belong. In countries such as the United States, Mexico, Brazil, and Australia, the federal government sets up governments for its territories, but these jurisdictions do not have representation in the national government. This instruction sheet provides guidelines for assigning the free-floating subdivision **–Territories and possessions**. For instructions on cataloging works on the colonies belonging to a region or country, see H 1149.5.*

1. General works. Use the subdivision **–Territories and possessions** under names of countries or regions larger than countries for works discussing collectively the territories and possessions belonging to a country or to a group of countries located within a particular region. Code the subfield **x**. *Example:*

Title: Australia's island territories.

```
651 #0 $a Australia $x Territories and possessions.
```

Do not use the subdivision **–Territories and possessions** for works on an individual territory or possession. For such works, assign the name of the territory or possession with appropriate subdivision or the topical subject divided by the name of the territory or possession, for example, **Puerto Rico–History–1898-1952**; **Groundwater–United States Virgin Islands**.

2. Topical subjects. For works on topics pertaining to the territories and possessions of a country or region larger than a country, subdivide headings of the type **[*topic*]–[*place*]** by **–Territories and possessions**. *Example:*

Title: Territorial energy assessment.

```
650 #0 $a Power resources $z United States $x Territories
          and possessions.
```

Testing H 2186

BACKGROUND: *Testing is a process or method of trying or demonstrating something to determine its quality, genuineness, or suitability, or the use of questions, problems, or tasks to measure and evaluate skills, abilities, traits, capacities, etc. This instruction sheet provides guidelines for assigning the headings* ***Testing*** *and* ***Psychological tests*** *and the subdivisions* ***–Testing****,* ***–Psychological testing****,* ***–Intelligence testing****, and* ***–Ability testing****. For instructions on assigning the heading and subdivision* ***Evaluation****, see H 1591.*

1. General works. Assign the heading **Testing** to general works on processes or methods of testing.

2. Psychology.

a. General. Assign the heading **Psychological tests** *(May Subd Geog)* to general works on psychological tests and testing, including methods of test construction and application.

b. Psychological topics. Assign the free-floating subdivision **–Testing** under specific psychological topics, traits, etc., for works on the construction, application, and results of testing pertaining to these topics, for example, **Motivation (Psychology)–Testing**.

c. Classes of persons, ethnic groups, and animals. Assign the free-floating subdivision **–Psychological testing** *(May Subd Geog)* under classes of persons, ethnic groups, and animals to works on methods and results of conducting psychological tests of these groups, for example, **People with mental disabilities–Psychological testing**.

Assign the free-floating subdivision **–Intelligence testing** *(May Subd Geog)* under classes of persons and ethnic groups for works on methods and results of conducting intelligence tests of these groups, for example, **Children–Intelligence testing**.

3. Ability.

a. General. Assign the heading **Ability–Testing** to general works on tests and testing of ability, aptitude, or proficiency.

3. Ability. *(Continued)*

b. –Ability testing. Assign the free-floating subdivision **–Ability testing** *(May Subd Geog)* under topical headings for works on tests and testing of native aptitude or acquired proficiency in a particular topic, for example, **Reading–Ability testing**; **Soccer–Ability testing**.

c. Phrase headings for ability. Where phrase headings have been established for particular types of ability, for example, **Athletic ability**, **Creative ability**, **Mathematical ability**, use the free-floating subdivision **–Testing** under the heading for type of ability for works on tests and testing of these abilities instead of the subdivision **–Ability testing** under the heading for the corresponding topic. Example:

```
     650 #0 $a Athletic ability $x Testing.
[not 650 #0 $a Athletics $x Ability testing.]
```

4. Drugs. Assign the free-floating subdivision **–Testing** under **Drugs** and individual drugs to works on testing their effectiveness and/or safety, for example, **Aspirin–Testing**.

Assign the free-floating subdivision **–Therapeutic use–Testing** under other chemicals when their use as drugs is being tested, for example, **Lithium–Therapeutic use–Testing**.

To works on testing to identify the personal use or misuse of drugs, assign the general heading **Drug testing** *(May Subd Geog)* or the free-floating subdivision **–Drug testing** *(May Subd Geog)* under classes of persons being tested, for example, **Employees–Drug testing**.

5. Other topics. Assign the free-floating subdivision **–Testing** under headings for materials, instruments, equipment, products, chemicals, domestic animals, etc., to works on the testing of these items and/or the results of testing. *Examples:*

```
650 #0 $a Automobiles $x Testing.
650 #0 $a Concrete $x Testing.
650 #0 $a Copper $x Testing.
650 #0 $a Corn $x Varieties $x Testing.
650 #0 $a Road materials $x Testing.
```

Do not use this subdivision for works on examinations given on a particular subject or administered by an institution. To these works, assign a heading of the type **[*topic or individual corporate body*]–Examinations**.

BACKGROUND: *The heading* ***Translations*** *and the subdivisions* ***–Translations*** *and* ***–Translations into [name of language]*** *are assigned to collections of translations or to works about translations. Use of the subdivisions* ***–Translations from [name of language]****,* ***–Translations from foreign languages****,* ***–Translations into foreign languages****, and* ***–Translations, [name of language]*** *was discontinued in 1991. For specific instructions on translations of the Bible and other sacred works, see H 1300. For works on the technique of translating, see H 2219.*

1. Literary translations.

a. Literary form headings. Assign the free-floating subdivisions **–Translations** and **–Translations into [*name of language*]** under literary form headings for collections of translated works and translations of individual works in a specific form that have been assigned a literary form heading. For works translated into one language assign the subdivision **–Translations into [*name of language*]**, for example, **–Translations into French**. For works translated into several languages assign the subdivision **–Translations**. For works about translations assign the further subdivision **–History and criticism** or other subdivision as appropriate. *Examples:*

Title: Contemporary Portuguese poetry : an anthology in English.

```
650 #0 $a Portuguese poetry $y 20th century
          $v Translations into English.
```

Title: Translation as discovery and other essays on Indian literature in English translation.

```
650 #0 $a Indic literature $x Translations into
          English $x History and criticism.
```

Title: Aeneis. English

```
600 10 $a Aeneis $v Poetry.
650 #0 $a Epic poetry, Latin $v Translations into
          English.
```

Title: Estonian literature in foreign languages : a bibliography.

```
650 #0 $a Estonian literature $x Translations
          $v Bibliography.
```

H 2220 Translations

1. Literary translations. *(Continued)*

b. Individual literary authors and works. Assign the free-floating subdivisions **–Translations** and **–Translations into [*name of language*]** under names of individual literary authors or literary works entered under title for collections of translations. Do not assign these subdivisions under author-title subject headings. Do not assign these subdivisions under authors or uniform titles for single translations of one work. For works about translations assign the further subdivision **–History and criticism** or other subdivision as appropriate. *Examples:*

Title: Catullus : the complete poems for American readers.

```
600 10 $a Catullus, Gaius Valerius $v Translations
          into English.
```

Title: Poe in foreign lands and tongues.

```
600 10 $a Poe, Edgar Allan, $d 1809-1849
          $x Translations $x History and criticism.
```

Title: The German versions of Chekhov's Three sisters : a study in the theory and practice of translation.

```
600 10 $a Chekhov, Anton Pavlovich, $d 1860-1904.
          $t Tri sestry.
600 10 $a Chekhov, Anton Pavlovich, $d 1860-1904
          $x Translations into German $x History and
          criticism.
650 #0 $a Translating and interpreting.
```

2. Non-literary translations.

a. General works. Assign the heading **Translations** to works on translations from several languages not limited to a subject or form. For works on translations from one language assign the heading **[*name* of language] imprints** with free-floating subdivision **–Translations** or **–Translations into [*name of language*]** and further subdivisions as appropriate. *Examples:*

Title: Index translationum. International bibliography of translations.

```
650 #0 $a Translations $v Bibliography.
```

6. Radio program genre/form terms. See H 1969.5.

LC practice:
7. Treatment of "editions".

a. Audio or visual presentions of published works. If the contents of the printed edition and the sound recording or visual presentation are the same, the subject cataloging should match, even if it is necessary to assign new, more appropriate headings to the printed edition(s).

b. Identical works in different formats. A single work is sometimes issued in more than one format, for example, as a motion picture and as a video recording, or as a cassette and as a compact disc. The subject headings for the work in all formats with records in MARC should match, even if it is necessary to correct the subject headings that were assigned when the work was originally cataloged in another format.

7. 043 fields. Assign geographic area codes in the 043 field as appropriate.

Library of Congress Subject Headings. The printed list of headings produced from the *subject authority file* maintained by the Library of Congress and published annually. The term is frequently abbreviated as **LCSH** and is sometimes used interchangeably with the term *subject authority file*.

Local subdivision, *see* **Geographic subdivision**

Main entry. The name or title by which a work is chiefly identified. An AACR2 concept, the term is not used in RDA cataloging.

Name authority file. A file containing individual *name authority records*. As used in this manual, this term refers specifically to the name authority file created and maintained by the Library of Congress with contributions from participating libraries.

Name authority record. An *authority record* for a *name heading*.

Name heading. A heading that is a personal name, corporate name, meeting name, uniform title, or jurisdictional name.

Narrower term reference. A reference to a *subject heading* at a lower level in a hierarchy than the term referred from. Narrower term references do not appear in *subject authority record*s, but are generated by automated systems as the reciprocals of *broader term reference*s.

NT, *see* **Narrower term reference**

Parenthetical qualifier. A word or phrase placed in parentheses after a heading either to distinguish between two different meanings of an identical term or to clarify the meaning of the heading, as in the subject headings **Plates (Engineering)**; **Plates (Tableware)**; **BASIC (Computer program language)**; **Adonis (Greek deity)**.

Period subdivision, *see* **Chronological subdivision**

Place subdivision, *see* **Geographic subdivision**

Proposal. A suggested new subject heading or a suggested change to an existing heading, submitted by a cataloger in the form of a subject authority proposal record; or, a printout of an existing *subject authority record* marked up with proposed changes, for consideration through the editorial process in the Policy and Standards Division, which is responsible for overall development of the Library of Congress *subject authority file*.

Glossary

Qualifier, Adjectival, *see* **Adjectival qualifier**

Qualifier, Geographic, *see* **Geographic qualifier**

Qualifier, Parenthetical, *see* **Parenthetical qualifier**

Reference source. An authoritative published work or other source of information consulted to determine the appropriate terminology to be used in establishing a *subject heading* and creating an appropriate structure of cross-references to and from the heading.

Related term reference. A reference from one *subject heading* to another subject heading that is in a different hierarchy. Related term references appear in 5XX fields in *subject authority record*s, and are identifiable by the presence of the value **n** in the first character position of the $w control subfield.

RT, *see* **Related term reference**

Scope note. A note associated with a *subject heading* that provides information about the heading such as its definition, application, or relationship to other headings, in order to enable catalogers to use the heading consistently and users to determine what type of material may be found under the heading. Scope notes appear in 680 fields in *subject authority record*s.

See also reference. A cross-reference leading from one valid heading to another. In the Library of Congress *subject authority file*, a see also reference is in the form of a *broader term reference* (which can generate a *narrower term reference* as its reciprocal), or a *general see also reference*.

See reference, *see* **Use reference**

Straight heading. A heading established in direct, natural language word order. See also *Inverted heading*.

String. A term used to refer to the combination of a subject heading and one or more subdivisions. In the context of the MARC 21 format, a string is a 6XX field that has at least one $v, $x, $y, or $z subfield in addition to the $a subfield.

Subdivision. The portion of a subject heading *string* that appears in a $v, $x, $y, or $z subfield of the 6XX field and that is used to identify a specific aspect of the main *subject heading*, such as form, subtopic, time period, or place, in connection with the bibliographic work to which it is assigned. See also *Chronological subdivision*, *Form subdivision*, *Geographic subdivision*, and *Topical subdivision*.

Subdivision record. An *authority record* for a *subdivision* with the authorized form of the subdivision appearing in a 18X field. The Library of Congress uses subdivision records to control *free-floating subdivisions*.

Subheading. The portion of a corporate body name heading that is subordinate to the main heading. In printed or in nontagged displays, subheadings are conventionally separated from main headings by a period and two spaces. In the heading **United States. Congress. House**, for example, **Congress** and **House** are subheadings. In the MARC 21 format, subheadings appear in $b subfields of X10 fields.

Subject. The topic treated or matter discussed in a work. What a work is about.

Subject authority file. A file containing individual *authority records* for *subject headings* and *subdivisions*. As used in this manual, the term refers specifically to the subject authority file created and maintained by the Library of Congress and used to produce the publication *Library of Congress Subject Headings* (*LCSH*). The term is frequently used interchangeably with the terms *Library of Congress Subject Headings* or *LCSH.*

Subject authority record. An *authority record* for a *subject heading*.

Subject heading. A heading in a 6XX field in a MARC bibliographic record, consisting of either a single element in an $a subfield or of an $a subfield followed by subdivisions in $v, $x, $y, and/or $z subfields, that designates what a work is or what it is about.

Topical heading. A type of *subject heading* that expresses what a work is about.

Topical subdivision. A type of subject heading *subdivision* that appears in an $x subfield of a 6XX field and that designates a specific aspect, or subtopic, of the main heading other than period, place, or form.

UF, *see* **Use reference**

Glossary

Uniform title. The title by which a work is identified for cataloging purposes. It distinguishes one work from others, often in conjunction with the *main entry*. It may also collocate the works of a person, corporate body, etc. An AACR2 concept, the term is not used in RDA cataloging.

Use reference. A reference from a term that is not a valid for use as a subject heading to an equivalent term that is a valid heading. Use references are traced in 4XX fields in *subject authority records*.

10. Et cetera. Use the abbreviation **etc.** in headings and subdivisions. *Examples:*

```
650 #0 $a Law reports, digests, etc. $z United States.
650 #0 $a Surveying $v Handbooks, manuals, etc.
```

11. Geographic qualifiers. Most geographic headings are qualified by the name of the larger geographic unit. Jurisdictions that are to be abbreviated when used as geographic qualifiers are listed in H 810. *Examples:*

```
651 #0 $a West (U.S.)
651 #0 $a Harpers Ferry (W. Va.)
651 #0 $a Harry S. Truman Dam (Mo.)
651 #0 $a Red River (Tex.-La.)
```

12. Great Britain. Spell out in full. The abbreviation **Gt. Brit.** is not authorized by RDA. *Examples:*

```
     651 #0 $a Great Britain $x History.
[not 651 #0 $a Gt. Brit. $x Hist.]

     650 #0 $a Women artists $z Great Britain.
[not 650 #0 $a Women artists $z Gt. Brit.]

     610 20 $a Labour Party (Great Britain)
[not 610 20 $a Labour Party (Gt. Brit.)]

     610 10 $a Great Britain. $b Royal Navy.
[not 610 10 $a Gt. Brit. $b Royal Navy.]
```

13. Mount; Mountain; Mountains. Spell out in full in subject headings for geographic features. *Examples:*

```
651 #0 $a Fuji, Mount (Japan)
651 #0 $a Signal Mountain (Tenn.)
651 #0 $a Appalachian Mountains.
```

Use name headings with abbreviations if they appear in that form in name authority records. *Example:*

```
610 10 $a Mt. Lebanon School District (Mount Lebanon, Pa.)
```

14. Mr.; Mrs. Use name headings with the abbreviations **Mr.** or **Mrs.** if they appear in that form in name authority records. *Examples:*

```
610 20 $a Mr. A's Boys' Ranch $x History.
600 00 $a Mr. Lucky. $t Trick dog training.
600 10 $a Downing, Clyde, $c Mrs. $x Art collections $v Catalogs.
```

15. Numerals.

a. Cardinal and roman numerals. Spell out cardinal and roman numerals. *Examples:*

```
650 #0 $a One (The number)
650 #0 $a Three-dimensional display systems.
650 #0 $a Zero (The number)
```

Exceptions:

- When reference sources indicate that a numeral in a specific phrase is not normally spelled out, establish and assign the heading in that form. *Examples:*

```
650 #0 $a 35mm cameras.
650 #0 $a 4-H clubs.
650 #0 $a TRS-80 Model III (Computer)
```

- For buildings established under their street addresses, numerals may be used. *Example:*

```
610 20 $a 14 Wall Street (New York, N.Y.)
```

15. Numerals. *(Continued)*

b. Ordinal numerals. Spell out an ordinal numeral if it is the initial element of a heading. *Examples:*

```
650 #0 $a First communion.
650 #0 $a Fourth of July.
650 #0 $a Fifteenth century.
650 #0 $a Twenty-first century.
650 #0 $a Twelfth Avenue (Seattle, Wash.)
```

Exceptions:

- When reference sources indicate that a numeral in a specific phrase is not normally spelled out, establish and assign the heading in that form. *Example:*

```
650 #0 $a 20th Century Limited (Express train)
```

- For streets that have numerical names above one hundred, ordinal numerals may be abbreviated. *Example:*

```
651 #0 $a 114th Street (Edmonton, Alta.)
```

Record ordinal numerals not in the initial position in a heading in the form **lst**, **2nd**, **3rd**, **4th**, etc. *Examples:*

```
650 #0 $a Dacian War, 1st, 101-102.
650 #0 $a Dacian War, 2nd, 105-106.
650 #0 $a Church history $y 3rd century.
651 #0 $a United States $x Social life and customs
          $y 20th century.
```

16. Saint (including foreign equivalents). Spell out in full in subject headings. *Examples:*

```
650 #0 $a Saint Bernard dog.
651 #0 $a Saint Lawrence River.
651 #0 $a Saint Ninian's Island (Scotland)
600 30 $a Saint John family.
```

16. Saint (including foreign equivalents). *(Continued)*

When assigning name headings as subjects, use the headings exactly as they appear in name authority records. *Examples:*

```
610 20 $a Federal Reserve Bank of St. Louis.
610 20 $a Saint Louis Museum of Fine Arts.
630 #0 $a St. Louis post-dispatch.
610 20 $a Eglise de St-Joachim (Saint-Joachim, Québec)
                    [no period after St]
651 #0 $a St. Andrews (Scotland)
```

17. United States. Spell out in full in subject headings. *Examples:*

```
651 #0 $a United States $x Economic conditions.
651 #0 $a France $x Foreign relations $z United States.
650 #0 $a Progressivism (United States politics)
650 #0 $a Certificate of Merit (United States Army)
```

Exception: As a *geographic* qualifier, **United States** is abbreviated **(U.S.)**. *Examples:*

```
651 #0 $a Atlantic Coast (U.S.)
651 #0 $a West (U.S.)
650 #0 $a Coal Miners' Strike, U.S., 1949-1950.
650 #0 $a Distinguished Service Cross (U.S.)
```

When assigning name headings as subjects, use the headings exactly as they appear in name authority records. *Examples:*

```
610 10 $a United States. $b Congress. $b House.
610 10 $a United States. $b Department of Agriculture.

610 20 $a U.S. Army Engineer Topographic Laboratories.
610 20 $a U.S. Nuclear Regulatory Commission.

610 20 $a US Army Military Police School.
610 20 $a US-USSR Joint Symposium on Myocardial Metabolism.

610 20 $a Chemical Center and School (U.S.)
610 10 $a Ryukyu Islands (United States Civil
          Administration, 1950-1972). $b Office of the High
          Commissioner.
```

Appendix B: Capitalization

BACKGROUND: *This instruction sheet provides capitalization guidelines for establishing headings for named entities, including structures, events, movements, places, geographical features, etc. As a general rule, when a new heading for a named entity is established, all words in the heading are capitalized, including common nouns or adjectives which form an integral part of the name. Subject headings and subdivisions already established are assigned as they appear in the subject authority file.*

1. Policy for name headings used as subject headings. When using valid personal, corporate, and jurisdictional names and uniform titles as subject headings, transcribe them exactly as they appear on name authority records, including capital letters as indicated.

2. Policy for subject headings established in the subject authority file. Transcribe existing headings and subdivisions exactly as they appear in subject authority records, using capital letters as indicated.

3. Proper nouns and adjectives. Capitalize proper nouns and adjectives in subject headings, subdivisions, or references regardless of whether they are in the initial position. *Examples:*

```
150 ## $a !Kung (African people)

150 ## $a *Naborr (Horse)

150 ## $a 97 Sen (Fighter planes)

150 ## $a Tariff on X-ray equipment and supplies

100 0# $a Jesus Christ $x Views on the Old Testament

150 ## $a Gosannen kassen ekotoba (Scrolls)
450 ## $a Hachiman Tarō ekotoba (Scrolls)
```

Appendix B: Capitalization

4. Initial words. Capitalize the first word of a subject heading, subdivision, or reference regardless of whether it is a proper name. *Examples:*

```
150 ## $a Teenage boys
450 ## $a Adolescent boys

150 ## $a Writing $x Materials and instruments

150 ## $a Serbo-Croatian language $y To 1500

151 ## $a Beauce (France)
451 ## $a La Beauce (France)

151 ## $a Cévennes Mountains (France)
451 ## $a Les Cévennes (France)
```

Exception: When a term is found in reference sources with the initial letter consistently lowercased, establish the heading (or reference) in that form. *Examples:*

```
150 ## $a p-adic numbers

150 ## $a p-divisible groups

150 ## $a 35mm cameras
450 ## $a 35 mm cameras

150 ## $a Three-manifolds (Topology)
450 ## $a 3-dimensional manifolds (Topology)
```

5. Capitalization according to reference sources. Capitalize any letter within a heading that appears as such in reference sources. Use this rule in establishing named systems, computer languages, tests, etc. *Examples:*

```
150 ## $a 4-H clubs
150 ## $a Agent Orange
150 ## $a California Basic Educational Skills Test
150 ## $a DC-to-DC converters
150 ## $a DDT (Insecticide)
151 ## $a IJssel Lake (Netherlands)
150 ## $a UNIMARC
150 ## $a PostScript (Computer program language)
150 ## $a SdKfz 251 (Half-track)
150 ## $a SP/k (Computer program language)
```

6. Conjunctions, prepositions, and articles. Do not capitalize conjunctions, prepositions and the articles **a, an,** and **the** and their equivalents in other languages if they are not the first word in the heading, subdivision, or reference. *Examples:*

```
150 ## $a Colors in the Bible

151 ## $a Chesapeake and Ohio Canal (Md. and Washington, D.C.)
```

Exception: Capitalize **The** if it is the first word in a parenthetical qualifier, or the first word following a comma in an inverted heading. *Examples:*

```
150 ## $a Jota (The Serbo-Croatian letter)

151 ## $a Geysers, The (Calif.)
```

7. Inverted headings and subdivisions. Capitalize the word following a comma that would be in the initial position if the heading, subdivision, or reference were expressed as a phrase in direct word order. Capitalization is especially important to clarify inverted headings. *Examples:*

```
150 ## $a Sculpture, Mandingo

150 ## $a Medicine, Magic, mystic, and spagiric

150 ## $a Coral Sea, Battle of the, 1942

151 ## $a United States $x History, Naval

150 ## $a Measuring instruments
450 ## $a Instruments, Measuring
```

Appendix B: Capitalization

8. Parenthetical qualifiers. Capitalize the first word in a parenthetical qualifier, as well as any proper nouns or adjectives within a parenthetical qualifier. Also capitalize the first word that follows a colon within a parenthetical qualifier. *Examples:*

```
150 ## $a Chambri (Papua New Guinea people)
150 ## $a Citizenship as point of contact (Conflict of laws)
150 ## $a Wu (The Chinese word)
151 ## $a Thebes (Egypt : Extinct city)
```

Note: In the past, certain headings and subdivisions were established with parenthetical qualifiers beginning with lowercased prepositions or with other lowercased words. Continue using and establishing headings of this type in situations where a pattern for their use exists, but do not propose new headings of this type where no previous pattern exists. Example:

```
150 ## $a English language $v Conversation and phrase books
        (for secretaries)
```

9. Hyphenated compounds. When capitalizing the first part of a hyphenated compound, capitalize the second part also if it is a proper noun or proper adjective. Do not capitalize the second part of a hyphenated compound if it modifies the first or if the two parts constitute a single word. *Examples:*

```
150 ## $a Ecuador-Peru Conflict, 1981
150 ## $a Sabazius (Thraco-Phrygian deity)
```

[*but*
```
150 ## $a Twelve-tone system
150 ## $a Twenty-first century]
```

10. Armed Forces. Capitalize the word **Forces** in the heading **Armed Forces** and in the subdivision **–Armed Forces**. *Examples:*

```
150 ## $a Armed Forces $x Civic action
151 ## $a United States $x Armed Forces $z Foreign countries
```

11.* [...] *countries. Lowercase the word **countries** in phrase headings and subdivisions. *Examples:*

```
651 #0 $a Arab countries $x History $y 20th century.
650 #0 $a Canary Islanders $z Foreign countries.
651 #0 $a Communist countries.
651 #0 $a European Economic Community countries $x Economic
        conditions.
```

12. Terms attached to dates.

a. Anno Domini; Before Christ. Capitalize the abbreviations **A.D.** and **B.C.** (For details on the use of **A.D.** and **B.C.**, see App. A, sec. 8.a.) *Example:*

```
151 ## $a China $x History $y Han dynasty, 202 B.C.-220 A.D.
```

b.* [...] *century. Do not capitalize the word **century**. *Examples:*

```
150 ## $a English literature $y 20th century
150 ## $a Twenty-first century
```

c. Circa. Do not capitalize the abbreviation **ca.** in period subdivisions. *Examples:*

```
151 ## $a United States $x History $y Colonial period, ca.
        1600-1775
```

13. Named dynasties. Do not capitalize the word **dynasty**. *Example:*

```
100 3# $a Achaemenid dynasty, $d 559-330 B.C.
```

14. Family names. Do not capitalize the word **family**. *Examples:*

```
100 3# $a Miller family
100 3# $a Pasêk Kayu Sêlêm family
```

Appendix B: Capitalization

15. Family names with initial particles. Headings for individual families derived from French, Spanish, Portuguese, Italian, German and Dutch may include the initial particles **De, Du, La, L', Von, Van,** etc. Capitalize initial particles in family names in both headings and references. *Examples:*

```
100 3# $a Baden family
400 3# $a Von Baden family

100 3# $a De Groot family
400 3# $a De Groote family
```

16. Named events. Capitalize all significant words in headings, subdivisions, or references that designate named events. *Examples:*

```
150 ## $a Watergate Affair, 1972-1974

150 ## $a Marinette Knitting Mills Strike, Marinette, Wis., 1951

151 ## $a Harpers Ferry (W. Va.) $x History $y John Brown's Raid,
          1859
450 ## $a John Brown's Raid, Harpers Ferry, W. Va., 1859

151 ## $a Transylvania (Romania) $x History $y Peasant Uprising,
          1784
550 ## $w g $a Peasant uprisings $z Romania

151 ## $a China $x History $y Qing Dynasty Restoration Attempt,
          1917
450 ## $a Qing Dynasty Restoration Attempt, China, 1917
```

16. Named events. *(Continued)*

Exception: The generic terms in the following subdivisions have, by convention, been lowercased. Continue to follow this convention when establishing new headings for any of these events. Do not, however, propose any new subdivisions to be added to this list.

–[. . .] colony, [date]
–[. . .] conquest, [date]
–[. . .] dynasties, [date]
–[. . .] dynasty, [date]
–[. . .] intervention, [date]
–[. . .] movement, [date]
–[. . .] occupation, [date]
–[. . .] period, [date]
–[. . .] periods, [date]
–[. . .] rule, [date]

Examples:

```
150 ## $a Painting, Chinese $y Three kingdoms-Sui dynasty,
          220-618
151 ## $a Lebanon $x History $y Israeli intervention,
          1982-1984
151 ## $a India $x History $y British occupation, 1765-1947
151 ## $a United States $x History $y Colonial period, ca.
          1600-1775
```

17. Cultural and archaeological periods. Do not capitalize headings for cultural and archaeological periods, except for the initial word. *Examples:*

```
150 ## $a Bronze age
150 ## $a Iron age
150 ## $a Mesolithic period
150 ## $a Paleolithic period, Lower
150 ## $a Stone age
```

Appendix B: Capitalization

18. Named movements. Capitalize only the initial word of a named movement. *Examples:*

```
150 ## $a Anti-Nazi movement
151 ## $a China $x History $y Reform movement, 1898
150 ## $a Ecumenical movement
150 ## $a Gay liberation movement
150 ## $a Pro-life movement
150 ## $a Stakhanov movement
150 ## $a Symbolism (Literary movement)
```

19. Named schools. Capitalize only the initial word when establishing headings or subdivisions for named schools (i.e., groups of painters, economists, architects, etc., that are under a common local or personal influence producing a general similarity in their work). *Examples:*

```
150 ## $a Chicago school of theology
150 ## $a Classical school of economics
150 ## $a Marxian school of sociology
150 ## $a Flower arrangement, Japanese $x Ko school
```

LC practice:
Some headings of this type have been established with the word ***school*** *uppercased. Change these headings as they are encountered in the subject authority file to the form specified above.*

20. Scientific names of plants and animals. Capitalize only the initial word of the scientific name of a plant or animal species or subspecies, even if subsequent words include proper nouns or adjectives. *Examples:*

```
150 ## $a Anguilla japonica

150 ## $a Litchi chinensis
450 ## $a Nephelium litchi

150 ## $a Pinus sibirica
450 ## $a Pinus cembra sibirica
```

Retain capitalization of initial or single words when a scientific name is included in another heading. *Examples:*

```
150 ## $a Captive Cyanoramphus unicolor
150 ## $a Captive Felidae
```

21. Geographic headings. Capitalize both generic and proper nouns and adjectives in names of places, regions, sites, metropolitan areas, and named geographic and geological features, including coasts, islands, rivers, valleys, watersheds, etc., in English headings or references. For non-English headings and references apply the appropriate capitalization rules according to Appendix A of RDA and reference sources. *Examples:*

```
151 ## $a Alaska, Gulf of (Alaska)
151 ## $a Assateague Island National Seashore (Md. and Va.)
151 ## $a Atlantic Coast (Canada)
151 ## $a Beluga Lake (Alaska)
151 ## $a Boundary Waters Canoe Area (Minn.)
151 ## $a Dakota Aquifer
151 ## $a Death Valley (Calif. and Nev.)
151 ## $a Ionian Islands (Greece)
151 ## $a Kostromskai͡a taezhnai͡a biologicheskai͡a stant͡sii͡a Region
          (Russia)
151 ## $a McKinley, Mount, Region (Alaska)
151 ## $a Beijing Metropolitan Area (China)
151 ## $a Pennsylvania Dutch Country (Pa.)
151 ## $a Po River Valley (Italy)
151 ## $a Stone Creek Site (Alta.)
151 ## $a Tokyo Region (Japan)
151 ## $a Valley Forge National Historical Park (Pa.)
151 ## $a Washington Region
```

```
151 ## $a Parco naturale della Maremma (Italy)
451 ## $a Maremma, Parco naturale della (Italy)
451 ## $a Parco della Maremma (Italy)
```

```
151 ## $a Tatar Strait (Russia)
451 ## $a Tatarskiĭ proliv (Russia)
```

*Note: Lowercase the word **regions** in the heading **Arctic regions**. Example:*

```
151 ## $a Arctic regions $x Aerial exploration
```

Appendix B: Capitalization

22. Capitalization rules for languages other than English. Use the current, appropriate rules for capitalization for the language concerned when establishing headings and making references. For guidance consult such sources as Appendix A of RDA and reference sources. In cases of conflict, generally prefer the capitalization rule in Appendix A of RDA. *Examples:*

```
151 ## $a Tatar Strait (Russia)
451 ## $a Tatarskiĭ proliv (Russia)
```

> ***Strait*** *is capitalized in the English heading* ***Tatar Strait (Russia)*** *in accordance with sec. 21, above. The Russian word for strait,* ***proliv****, as part of the vernacular UF reference, is lowercased because it appears as such in Russian encyclopedias and because lowercasing is consistent with the capitalization rules for Russian geographic names in Appendix A of RDA.*

```
151 ## $a Balkan Mountains (Bulgaria)
451 ## $a Stara planina (Bulgaria)
```

```
110 2# $a Hôtel de ville (Marseille, France)
410 2# $a City Hall (Marseille, France)
```

```
110 2# $a Neues Rathaus (Leipzig, Germany)
410 2# $a New City Hall (Leipzig, Germany)
```

```
151 ## $a Parc provincial des Laurentides (Québec)
451 ## $a Laurentides Provincial Park (Québec)
451 ## $a Parc national des Laurentides (Québec)
```

Appendix C: Diacritics and Special Characters

***BACKGROUND**:* **Diacritics** are marks placed over, under, or through letters or combinations of letters that indicate differences in pronunciation and meaning between the marked letter and its unmarked counterpart. Common diacritics are the umlaut (for example, ü), the acute (for example, ó), the grave (for example, à), and the macron (for example, ō). **Double diacritics** are two diacritics modifying a single letter, for example, Nguyễn. **Special characters** occupy a place of their own rather than modifying a letter. Common special characters include the Polish l (ł), mi͡agkiĭ znak (′), the ayn (ʻ), and the alif (ʼ). **Superscript characters** are letters, numbers, or symbols written or printed higher on a line of text; **subscript characters** are letters, numbers, or symbols written or printed lower on a line of text.

***PLACEMENT OF DIACRITICS IN LCSH**:* In *LCSH* diacritics and special characters are generally printed in accordance with either the LC romanization conventions for a particular language or with a conventional form found in reference sources.

1. Policy for headings established in the name authority file and used as subject headings. Transcribe from name authority records valid personal, corporate, and jurisdictional names and uniform titles, with all indicated diacritics and special characters placed in accordance with LC's transcription or romanization conventions for a particular language.

> ***Accent marks over uppercased letters in French, Portuguese, and Spanish***. In February 2006 the previous prohibition on use of accent marks over uppercased letters in French, Portuguese, and Spanish was rescinded. Name headings established or revised after that date reflect the changed policy.

2. Policy for headings established in the subject authority file. Transcribe existing headings and subdivisions exactly as they have been established in the subject authority file, using diacritics and special characters as indicated.

3. Establishing subject headings with or without diacritics. When, as a result of doing authority research, a choice must be made between a term without diacritics and the otherwise identical term with diacritics, generally prefer the term without diacritics if it is *clearly* the conventional English form. If there is no conventional English form, prefer the form of the term as found in the *Encyclopaedia Britannica* or in reference sources of the particular discipline or language, using diacritics to conform to LC's transcription or romanization conventions.

4. Diacritic use and LC practice. If it is determined that a heading or reference is to have diacritics, use diacritics that conform to LC transcription or romanization conventions, even if reference sources, including BGN, indicate different diacritics. Use judgment in determining whether to make UF references from forms with variant diacritics that are spelled differently from the proposed heading. (For forms that have variant diacritics but are spelled the same as the proposed heading, see sec. 5, below.) *Examples:*

BGN approved form: Jabal Sāʼid, mountain

Heading as established:

```
151 ## $a Sāʼid Mountain (Saudi Arabia)
```

[BGN left hook under S *changed to dot under* S *to conform to LC romanization practice; reference not made from* Saʼid *since spelling is identical.]*

BGN approved form: Nísos Andíparos

Heading as established:

```
151 ## $a Antiparos Island (Greece)
451 ## $a Andiparos Island (Greece)
451 ## $a Nísos Andíparos (Greece)
```

[Accent marks supplied by BGN in second 451 field]

Encyclopaedia Britannica: Ksatriya

Heading as established:

```
150 ## $a Kshatriyas
450 ## $a Ksatriyas
```

[Since spelling is not identical, UF reference made from the form based on Sanskrit with dot under s *to conventional English plural form.]*

Appendix D: Punctuation

1. Period at the end of a heading. Place a period at the end of a subject heading. *Examples:*

```
600 10 $a Reagan, Ronald.
650 #0 $a Presidents $z United States $v Biography.
```

Exception: Omit the final period if the final element in the heading is a closing parenthesis, an open date, or a mark of ending punctuation. *Examples:*

```
650 #0 $a Seasonal variations (Economics)
650 #0 $a Education $z Washington (D.C.)
651 #0 $a United States $x Economic policy $y 2009-
600 10 $a Clinton, Bill, $d 1946-
600 10 $a Sienkiewicz, Henryk, $d 1846-1916. $t Quo vadis?
```

2. Spaces within abbreviations.

Note: For general guidelines on the use of abbreviations in subject headings, see Appendix A.

a. General rule. Leave no space after any periods within an abbreviation. *Examples:*

```
650 #0 $a C.O.D. shipments.
651 #0 $a Egypt $x History $y To 332 B.C.
651 #0 $a Washington (D.C.)
```

b. Initials within a corporate name. Leave no space within adjacent initials where a personal name forms part of a corporate name or part of a subject heading. *Example:*

```
610 20 $a C.S. Wertsner & Son.
```

c. Acronyms. Leave no space after letters within an acronym. *Examples:*

```
650 #0 $a DYNAMO (Computer program language)
650 #0 $a MARC formats.
```

d. Abbreviations within date spans. Leave no space after an abbreviation and the hyphen of a date span. *Example:*

```
651 #0 $a China $x History $y Han dynasty, 202 B.C.-220 A.D.
```

2. Spaces within abbreviations. *(Continued)*

e. Space after final period of an abbreviation. Leave one space between the final period of an abbreviated term and a word that follows. *Examples:*

```
650 #0 $a C.O.D. shipments.
650 #0 $a Breakage, shrinkage, etc. (Commerce)
650 #0 $a Church finance $x History $y Early church,
        ca. 30-600
```

f. Initials in personal name headings. Leave one space within adjacent initials in personal name headings. *Examples:*

```
600 10 $a Manchester, P. W. $q (Phyllis Winifred)
600 10 $a Smith, J. J., $q (Jim J.), $d 1910-
```

g. Abbreviations consisting of more than a single letter. Leave one space between preceding and succeeding initials if part of an abbreviation consists of more than a single letter. *Examples:*

```
651 #0 $a Charleston (W. Va.)
600 10 $a Rast, A. Th. B.
```

h. Ampersands. Leave one space before and after an ampersand. *Example:*

```
610 20 $a Columbus & Greenville Railway.

651 #0 $a J & R Landfill (Ill.)
```

LC practice:
3. Open dates. Do not add a blank space after an open date that is followed by a $v, $x, or $t subfield. *Examples:*

```
600 10 $a Rodríguez, Gabriel, $d 1974- $v Exhibitions.
```

↑
Do not add a blank space here

```
600 10 $a King, Stephen, $d 1947- $t Shining
```

↑
Do not add a blank space here

If an open date is followed by a $k subfield, add a blank space and a comma after the date. *Example:*

```
400 1# $w nnen $a Woods, Donald, $d 1933- , $k in motion pictures.
```

↑
Add a blank space and comma here

4. Name headings used as subject headings. Use the same punctuation, capitalization, diacritics and spacing indicated on valid AACR2 name authority records. *Examples:*

```
610 20 $a Eglise de St-Joachim (Saint-Joachim, Québec)
```
[no period after St]

```
610 20 $a C.S. Wertsner & Son.
```

If a name heading ends with a closing parenthesis or mark of ending punctuation other than a period, retain this punctuation before adding the subdivision. *Examples:*

```
610 20 $a Association of Flight Attendants (U.S.) $v Periodicals.

600 10 $a Sienkiewicz, Henryk, $d 1846-1916. $t Quo vadis?
          $v Illustrations.
```

Appendix D: Punctuation

5. Subheadings. Subheadings are used in name headings to designate relationships between units and subunits, and function like subdivisions in subject headings. Like a subdivision, a subheading appears in a separate subfield which is indicated by a delimiter. For this discussion of punctuation, titles in author/title entries are also treated as subheadings. *Examples:*

```
610 20 $a Yale University. $b Library.
610 10 $a United States. $b Army. $b Chaplain Corps.
600 10 $a Shakespeare, William, $d 1564-1616. $t Sonnets.
630 00 $a Bible. $p Mark.
```

If the $a subfield includes a parenthetical qualifier, place a period after the parentheses. *Example:*

```
610 10 $a New York (N.Y.). $b Department of Social Services.
```

6. Use of commas before free-floating terms and phrases. See H 362, sec. 2.

Appendix E: Geographic Area Codes

BACKGROUND**: MARC Geographic Area Codes (GACs) provide for broad retrieval of cataloging records by geographic areas of interest. Codes exist for countries, regions, some first order political divisions, mountain ranges, bodies of water, etc. GACs are selected on the basis of the headings assigned to the work being cataloged. Codes are required for headings that imply geographic orientation, as well as for those that are explicitly geographical. Codes are entered by catalogers in the 043 field. This instruction sheet provides guidelines for assigning GACs. The complete list of GACs is published in the* ***MARC Code List for Geographic Areas.

> *Note: Until 2010, the Library of Congress assigned a maximum of three GACs to any one bibliographic record. In 2010, that restriction was lifted. There is currently no limit on the number of GACs that may be assigned to a record.*

1. General rule. Bring out by code the geographic areas that appear or are implied in the headings assigned to the work being cataloged. If a heading is tagged 651 or contains a geographic subdivision (a $z subfield), assign a code. Assign codes for ethnic groups, nationalities, civilizations, topics qualified by ethnic groups or nationalities, individual named entities, including corporate bodies, and events.

> *Note: Although there is no limit on the number of codes that may be assigned to any individual bibliographic record, if a large number of codes would be required to cover all of the places that the subject headings encompass, consider assigning one or more GACs at a broader level that would include all of the individual places.*

	Code for:
Japan–Commerce	Japan
Education–France	France
Country music [*UF Country music–United States*]	United States
African Americans	United States
British	Great Britain
Civilization, Germanic	Europe
University of Illinois	Illinois
Biennale di Venezia (Venice, Italy)	Italy

Appendix E: Geographic Area Codes

2. Coding for local entities. Assign the appropriate code for the country or the first order political division for a work about a local geographic feature, region, or jurisdiction that is located within a country or first order political division.

	Code for:
Rabat (Morocco)	Morocco
Bloke Plateau (Slovenia)	Slovenia
Children−New York (State)−New York	New York (State)
Education−Washington (State)−Seattle	Washington (State)
Architecture−Australia−Sydney (N.S.W.)	New South Wales
Vladivostok (Russia)	Russia (Federation)

Note: Separate codes for the first order divisions of the following countries have been provided: Australia, Canada, China, Great Britain, and the United States.

Codes have also been provided for some individual regions within Russia. For any work dealing with one of these Russian regions as a whole, assign the code indicated. For an entity, such as a city, located within one of these regions, assign the code for Russia (Federation) instead. For example, for a work about Siberia as a whole, assign ***e-urs****, but for a work about the city of Irkutsk, located in Siberia, assign* ***e-ru****.*

3. Regions, valleys, watersheds, etc. For a region, valley, watershed, etc., associated with a particular feature for which a code exists, assign the code for the corresponding feature.

	Code for:
Great Lakes Region	Great Lakes
Mississippi River Valley	Mississippi River

4. Entities located in several countries. Code for each country or for the larger geographic area if appropriate.

	Code for:
Euphrates River	Turkey; Iraq; Syria
European Economic Community countries	Europe

4. Entities located in several countries. *(Continued)*

If an entity is located in several first order political divisions, for countries having separate codes for political divisions, apply the above rule at the division level.

	Code for:
Yellowstone River	Wyoming; North Dakota; Montana
Colorado River	West (U.S.)

5. Historic jurisdictions, empires, kingdoms, etc. Assign codes that correspond to modern-day jurisdictions or areas.

	Code for:
Byzantine Empire	Mediterranean Region
Rome	Europe; Africa, North; Middle East
Confederate States of America	Southern States

Note: These examples illustrate coding for the greatest territorial extent of these entities. For works that discuss a jurisdiction during a period when its territory was more limited and for works focusing on a specific location within a historical jurisdiction, assign the appropriate code for the particular place.

6. Parts of regions. If a work discusses only part of a large geographic region for which a code exists, code for both the region and the locality if subject headings for both are assigned. *Example:*

Title: Water resource problems and priorities in the Appalachian region counties of North Carolina.

```
650 0 $a Water-supply $z Appalachian Region.
650 0 $a Water-supply $z North Carolina.
```

Code for: Appalachian Region; North Carolina

If a single code does not exist specifically for the region, code only for the part of the region covered by the work being cataloged.

7. Ethnic groups, nationalities, civilizations, etc. Assign codes for the jurisdictions or areas where they are located. For an individual element in the population, assign a code only for the present locality, not the place of origin, as long as the people are citizens or permanent residents.

	Code for:
Ashantis (African people)	Ghana; Togo; Ivory Coast
Hopi Indians	Arizona
Indians of North America–Alaska	Alaska
British	Great Britain
Japanese Americans–Ohio	Ohio
African Americans	United States
Civilization, Germanic	Europe

Foreign members of a population. Assign codes for both the place of origin and current location of peoples who are in an area other than their permanent homeland, including travelers, temporary residents, aliens, and foreign students.

	Code for:
British–United States	Great Britain; United States
African American students–France	United States; France
Americans–France [*as unnaturalized expatriates*]	United States; France

Influence of one nation on another. For the impact of one place on another, code for both.

	Code for:
Great Britain–Colonies–America	Great Britain; America
Japan–Intellectual life–American influences	Japan; United States

7. ***Ethnic groups, nationalities, civilizations, etc.*** *(Continued)*

Special topics modified by names of ethnic groups or nationalities. Code for the ethnic group or nationality. If the work is limited to a specific locality, code for the locality only. If it deals with an area outside of the area normally associated with the people, code for both places.

	Code for:
Technical assistance, American	United States
African American authors	United States
Art, English	Great Britain
Poets, American–Ohio	Ohio
Pottery, Chinese–Canada	China; Canada

8. Language. Code for the location of a language if the work deals with geographic aspects of the language.

	Code for:
French language–Dialects [*a work on the distribution of the dialects of France*]	France
French language–Dialects–Belgium	Belgium
Hopi language [*a distribution study*]	Arizona

Assign no code to grammars, textbooks for learning the language, histories of linguistic changes such as changes in phonology, etc.

Assign no code if the heading assigned is intended to bring out the language of a publication, e.g.,

Sermons, German
English poetry
Buddhism–Prayer-books and devotions–English

9. Literature. Assign no code to the *texts* of belles lettres or folk literature unless a subject heading that has a geographic element is assigned to the work. Assign GACs, however, to works that *discuss* particular literatures.

	Code for:
American poetry–California	California
American poetry–History and criticism	United States
United States–History–War of 1812–Fiction	United States
Folk poetry, Tamil–Burma	Burma
Canadian drama	[*no code*]

10. Named entities. Code for the location of individual named entities, including corporate bodies (i.e., entities tagged 610 in bibliographic records), buildings and structures, roads, waterways, railroads, monuments, camps, parks, gardens, etc. For government agencies, code for the jurisdictions the agencies serve.

	Code for:
University of Illinois	Illinois
Folger Shakespeare Library	Washington (D.C.)
Library of Congress	Washington (D.C.)
American Water Works Association	United States
New England Library Association	New England
Great Atlantic & Pacific Tea Co.	United States
Old Manse (Concord, Mass.)	Massachusetts
Brooklyn Bridge (New York, N.Y.)	New York (State)
Southern Pacific Railroad	United States
Yellowstone National Park	Idaho; Montana; Wyoming
United States. Department of Agriculture	United States
Baltimore County Public Schools	Maryland
Presbyterian Church (U.S.A.)	United States

11. Events, exhibitions, movements, etc. Assign a code for the location of the occurrence. Do not code for participating countries unless the country is brought out in a heading assigned to the work being cataloged.

	Code for:
Dunkirk, Battle of, Dunkerque,, France, 1940	France
World War, 1914-1918	Europe
World War, 1939-1945	[*no code*]
World War, 1939-1945–Germany	Germany
Reformation–Germany	Germany
Reformation	Europe
United States–History–War of 1812	United States
Maryland–History–War of 1812	Maryland
Canadian Grand Prix Race	Canada
Expo (International Exhibitions Bureau) (1967 : Montréal, Québec)	Québec (Province)
Occitan movement	France
United States–History–Revolution, 1775-1783	United States

12. Biography and genealogy. Assign codes to any work of biography, individual or collective, and to any work of genealogy, to which headings covered by the general rule are assigned.

> Do not assign a code to genealogical works to which the only heading assigned is a family name.

13. Specific types of material and specific places. Many individual instruction sheets in this manual include information about assigning GACs when cataloging either specific types of material or material about specific places. These instruction sheets are listed below.

Specific types of material

- Core level records. See H 170, sec. 4
- Genealogical works. See H 1631, sec. 4
- Microforms. See H 1893, sec. 3
- Jazz; Popular music. See H 1916.5, sec. 2.d.
- Non-music sound recordings; Visual materials. See H 2230, sec. 7

13. Specific types of material and specific places. *(Continued)*

Specific places

- Bosnia and Hercegovina; Croatia; Former Yugoslav Republics; Kosovo; Macedonia; Montenegro; Serbia; Serbia and Montenegro; Slovenia; Yugoslavia. See H 1055, sec. 5
- Congo. See H 928, sec. 5
- Former Soviet Republics; Soviet Union. See H 1023, sec. 6
- Gaza Strip; Golan Heights; Jerusalem; Palestine; West Bank. See H 980, sec. 5
- Hong Kong. See H 978, sec. 5
- Vatican City. See H 1045, sec. 4

INDEX

Subject headings and subdivisions are displayed in bold type. Where multiple references are provided under a topic, the primary reference, if any, is displayed in bold type. References to lists of free-floating subdivisions in H 1095 - H 1200 are not included.

008 field for subject-related codes
    Books: Appendix F
    Continuing resources (Serials): Appendix G
043 field for geographic area codes
    SEE Geographic area codes
653 field for uncontrolled subject terms: H 160
781 field for geographic subdivision form: H 200, H 830, H 835, H 836

- A -

AACR2 name headings
    SEE RDA name headings
Abbeys
    Established as name headings: H 405
Abbreviations
    Capitalization of: Appendix B
    Geographic qualifiers: H 810
    Geographic subject headings: H 690
    Spaces within: Appendix D
    Used as subject headings: Appendix A, H 373
Ability: H 2186
Ability testing as a subdivision: H 2186
Abstracting and indexing as a subdivision: H 1205, H 1670
Abstracts: H 1205
    Distinguished from annotated bibliographies: H 1205
Abstracts as a subdivision: H 1205
    Not used under —**Congresses:** H 1460
Academies
    Established as name headings: H 405
Accidents
    Formulating headings for specific accidents: H 1592

Accompaniment
Instrumental music headings: H 250, H 1917.5
Vocal music headings: H 250, H 1917.5
Accounting as a subdivision: H 1624
Acquisition of government publications: H 1643
Acronyms
Establishing as subject headings: Appendix A
UF references: H 373
Plurals: Appendix A
Usage of the subject heading **Acronyms:** H 1206.5
Acronyms as a subdivision: H 1206.5
Activity programs: H 2110
Acts, Legislative: H 1715
Adaptations, Film: H 2230
Added entries, Partial title
SEE Partial title added entries
Addenda: H 2145
Addresses, essays, lectures as a subdivision
Discontinued: H 1210
Addresses, Street
Buildings established as street addresses: H 1334
Aerial photography: H 1210.5
Aerial views as a subdivision: H 1210.5
Affairs, Political
Formulating headings: H 1592
African Americans
--Music: H 1917
Airplanes, Named
Established as name headings: H 405
Airports
Assigning headings for names of individual airports: H 1211
Established as name headings: H 405
Aliens
Definition and use: H 1581
Almshouses
Established as name headings: H 405
Amateurs' manuals as a subdivision: H 1943.5
Amendments, Constitutional: H 1465
America--Discovery and exploration: H 1564

[. . .] Americans
United States not used as geographic subdivision under: H 1919.5
Ampersands: Appendix C, Appendix A
Amusement parks
SEE ALSO Parks
Established as subject headings: H 405
Analog computer simulation: H 2040
Ancient and classical works: H 1412
Ancient cities (pre-1500)
SEE Extinct cities (pre-1500)
Ancient jurisdictions (other than cities)
As geographic subdivisions: H 830
Established as name headings: H 405
Ancient peoples
Assigning headings: H 1225
Civilizations: H 1370
and
In music form/genre headings: H 1917.5
[. . .] and [. . .] headings: H 310
Broader terms: H 370
Religion headings: H 1998
[. . .] and state
SEE **Government policy** as a subdivision
Anecdotes as a subdivision
Pets: H 1720
Animals
SEE ALSO Domestic animals
[. . .] as [. . .] headings: H 360
Assigning classification numbers: H 1332
Assigning headings for fictional works: H 1790
Headings previously unprinted in *Library of Congress Subject Headings*: H 1332
Free-floating subdivisions in H 1110 not used: H 1110
Geographic subdivision allowed at any taxonomic level: H 1332
Individual named animals established as name headings: H 405, H 1332
—**Legends and stories** not used: H 1627, H 1720
Pattern heading: H 1147
Subdivisions for legends and stories: H 1720
Subject heading proposals: H 1332
Individual animals with proper names: H 1332
Annotated bibliographies
Distinguished from collections of abstracts: H 1205

Antarctica
As geographic qualifier: H 810
Geographic subdivision: H 830
Antiquities as a subdivision: H 1225
Not used under extinct cities: H 715
Apartment houses
Established as subject headings: H 405
Apologetic works as a subdivision: H 1472
Appendices: H 2145
Appropriations and expenditures as a subdivision: H 1624
Aquariums, Public
Established as name headings: H 405
Aqueducts
Established as subject headings: H 405
Arab as a qualifier: H 1223
Arab countries: H 1223
Arabian as qualifier: H 1223
Arabic as a qualifier: H 1223
Arabic subject headings: H 181
Arboretums
Established as name headings: H 405
Archaeological collections as a subdivision: H 1427
Archaeological periods and cultures: H 1225
Archaeological sites
Assigning subject headings: H 1225
Contrasted with extinct cities: H 715
Established as subject headings: H 690
Geographic subdivision: H 830
Subject heading proposals: H 1225
Archaeological works
Assigning subject headings: H 1225
Specific named peoples: H 1225
Arches
Established as subject headings: H 405
Archival resources as a subdivision: H 1230
Archives as a subdivision: H 1230
Manuscript catalogs: H 1361
Area studies: H 2110
Arenas
Established as subject headings: H 405

Aristocratic families
Subject heading proposals: H 1574
Armed forces
Pattern heading: H 1159
Regimental histories: H 1995
Armenia (Republic): H 1023
Armories
Established as name headings: H 405
Arranged as a qualifier of music form/genre headings: H 250, H 1160, H 1917.5
Arsenals
Established as name headings: H 405
Art
Historical periods: H 1250
Pattern heading: H 1148
Qualifiers for art headings: H 306, H 1250
Single works of art: H 1250
Style: H 1250
Works of art by a single artist: H 1250
Works of art by more than one artist: H 1250
Art, Chinese
Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1148
Art, Italian
Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1148
Art, Japanese
Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1148
Art, Korean
Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1148
Art collections: H 1250
Art collections as a subdivision: H 1427
Manuscript collections: H 1855
Art movements: H 1250
Art objects
Catalogs: H 1360
Art works, Individual
Established as name headings: H 405
Arthurian romances: H 1795
Articles in the initial position in subject headings
Geographic names: H 690
Titles of publications used as subject headings: H 290
Topical headings: H 290

Artificial languages
—**Textbooks for English, [French, etc.] speakers:** H 2187
Artificial satellites
Established as name headings: H 405
Artillery as a subdivision: H 1159
Artistic photography: H 1255
Artistic style qualifiers for subject headings: H 306
Artists
SEE ALSO Manuscript illuminators
Qualifying art headings to show nationality, ethnic, or religious affiliation of artists: H 1250
Artists' groups
Established as subject headings: H 405
Arts, The
SEE ALSO Art
Literatures
Performing arts
Definition: H 1250
Usage of the heading **Arts**: H 1250
[. . .] as [. . .] headings: H 360
Broader terms: H 370
Asian conglomerate corporations
Established as subject headings: H 405
Assassinations
Formulating headings: H 1592
Dates in subdivisions: H 1078
Assignment of subject headings
SEE Subject heading assignment
Asteroids
Established as subject headings: H 405
Astronomical features
Established as subject headings: H 405
Asylums (Charitable institutions)
Established as name headings: H 405
Athletic contests
SEE ALSO Sports events
Established as name headings: H 405
Atlases: H 1865
Atlases, Scientific and technical: H 1935
Attitudes as a subdivision: H 1955

Audio cassettes, Catalogs of
SEE Juvenile films
Juvenile sound recordings
Audio-visual aids as a subdivision: H 1361
—Study and teaching—Audio visual aids: H 2110
Audiotape catalogs as a subdivision: H 1361
Audiovisual materials: H 2230
Catalogs: H 1361
Auditing as a subdivision: H 1624
Auditoriums
Established as subject headings: H 405
Australia
Qualification of geographic headings: H 810
Abbreviations of states: H 810
Author-title subject headings
SEE Name-title subject headings
Authority records, Descriptive
SEE Name authority records
Authority records for subject headings
SEE Subject authority records
Authority research for subject heading proposals: H 202
Authorization of headings for geographic subdivision: H 364
Authors, English
Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1155.2
Authors, Literary
SEE Authors, English
Literary authors, Groups of
Literary authors, Individual
Autobiography
SEE Biography
Automobiles
Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1195
Autonomous communities as a subdivision: H 713
Autonomous regions as a subdivision: H 713
Avalanches
Geographic subdivision to the city level: H 1560
Awards: H 1265
Established as subject headings: H 405
Azerbaijan: H 1023

- B -

Ballads
Language qualifiers for musical works: H 1916.3, H 1917
Music genre vs. folklore genre: H 1627
Banks
Established as name headings: H 405
Bars
Established as name headings: H 405
Basins, Geological
Formulating headings: H 800
Basins, River
SEE Watersheds
Bathhouses
Established as subject headings: H 405
Baths, Ancient
Established as subject headings: H 405
Battles
Assignment of subject headings: H 1285
Subject heading proposals: H 1285
Indian battles: H 1285
Bays
Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1145.5
Belarus: H 1023
Belles lettres
SEE Literatures
specific literatures and genres
Beowulf
Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1155.8
Berlin: H 945
Broader terms for entities in Berlin: H 375
Geographic area codes: H 945
Geographic subdivision: H 945
BGN decisions
Citing in subject authority records: H 203
Obtaining the approved form: H 690
Use in selecting the form of a heading: H 690
BIBCO Standard Record: H 170

Bible
SEE ALSO Sacred works
Assignment of subject headings: H 1295
Commentaries: H 1435
Establishing **[. . .] in the Bible** headings: H 1295
Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1188
Versions or translations: H 1300
Commentaries: H 1435
Biblical characters
Established as name headings: H 405
Biblical teaching as a subdivision: H 1295
Bibliographic file maintenance: H 165
Bibliographies, Annotated
SEE Annotated bibliographies
Bibliographies about individual persons: H 1322
Bibliographies of bibliographies: H 1325
Bibliographies of periodicals: H 1927
Bibliography—Early as a subdivision: H 1576
Bibliography—Exhibitions as a subdivision: H 1593
SEE ALSO **Bio-bibliography** as a subdivision
Bibliographies about individual persons: H 1322
Catalogs of library materials: H 1361
Government publications: H 1643
Lists of imprints on a topic: H 1660
Bilateral agreements: H 2227
Bilingual dictionaries: H 1540
Bio-bibliography as a subdivision: **H 1328**
Bio-bibliography—Dictionaries as a subdivision: H 1328
Biographical fiction: H 1790
Biography: H 1330
SEE ALSO Partial biography
Biographical fiction: H 1790
Coding in field 008
Books: Appendix F
Continuing resources (Serials): Appendix G
Composers: H 1438
Limitation of four personal names assigned to biographical works: H 1330
Personal narratives: H 1928

Biography as a subdivision
SEE ALSO **Bio-bibliography** as a subdivision
Animals: H 1720
Correspondence: H 1480
[. . .], House of—Biography not used: H 1574
Literary authors: H 1330
Non-free-floating usage: H 1330
Places: H 1845
Biography of women: H 1330
SEE ALSO Wives of famous men
Biological names
Assignment of classification numbers: H 1332
Capitalization: Appendix B
Headings previously unprinted in *Library of Congress Subject Headings*: H 1332
Geographic subdivision allowed at any taxonomic level: H 1332
Subject heading proposals: H 1332
Biological stations
Established as name headings: H 405
Blizzards
Geographic subdivision to the city level: H 1560
Blockades
Formulating headings: H 1592
Board on Geographic Names' decisions
SEE BGN decisions
Boards of trade (Chambers of commerce)
Established as name headings: H 405
Bodies of water
Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1145.5
Regions based on: H 1145.5
Bodies of water, International
SEE International bodies of water
Body, Organs of the
SEE Organs of the body
Body, Parts of the
SEE Parts of the body
Body, Regions of the
SEE Regions of the body
Bombardments: H 1560

Bombings
Formulating headings: H 1592
Geographic subdivision to the city level: H 1560
Bonsai collections as a subdivision: H 1427
Book collections, Private
SEE **Library** as a subdivision
Book of Mormon: H 1300
Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1188
Book reviews as a subdivision: H 2021
Books and reading: H 1333
Books and reading as a subdivision: H 1333
Bosnia and Hercegovina: H 1055
Botanical gardens
Established as name headings: H 405
Boundaries as a subdivision: H 1333.5
—**Treaties** not used: H 1333.5
Boundary disputes: H 1333.5
Bridges: H 1334
Broader terms: H 1334
Established as subject headings: H 405
British Virgin Islands
Abbreviation as geographic qualifier: H 810
Geographic subdivision practice: H 807
Broadcasting stations
Established as name headings: H 405
Broader terms: **H 370,** H 375
Changing references: H 195
Contrasted with "General see also" references: H 371
"Gaps" in the hierarchy: H 370
Geographic subject headings: H 690
Keying in subject authority records: H 200
Musical compositions: H 250
Musical instruments: H 1918
Subdivisions under headings with nationality, ethnic group, or language qualifiers: H 320
[*topic*]—[*place*] references: H 375
BTs
SEE Broader terms
Buddha
SEE Gautama Buddha

Buddhism
Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1185
Building details: H 1334
Established as subject headings: H 405
Buildings and structures
SEE ALSO specific types of buildings and structures
Assignment of subject headings: H 1334
Dwellings with extensive grounds: H 1572
Established as street addresses: H 1334
Established as subject headings: H 405
Geographic qualifiers: H 1334
Buildings in London, England: H 1334
Buildings on islands: H 1334
Occupied by corporate bodies: H 1334
Established as subject headings: H 405
Subject heading proposals: H 1334
Buildings, structures, etc. as a subdivision: H 832, H 1334, **H 1334.5**
Airports: H 1211
Not used as broader term for structures in cities: H 375, H 1334
Bus terminals
Established as subject headings: H 405
Business parks
Established as name headings: H 405

- C -

Campaigns as a subdivision: H 1285
Camps
SEE ALSO Concentration camps
Established as subject headings: H 405
Canadian provinces: H 713
As geographic subdivisions: H 830
As qualifiers in geographic headings: H 810
Abbreviations of provinces: H 810
Canals
Established as subject headings: H 405, H 690
Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1145.5
Cancelling subject headings: H 193
Adding 682 notes to explain cancellations: H 193.5
UF references from cancelled forms: H 193, H 373

Cancer
Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1150
Cantons as a subdivision: H 713
Capitalization: Appendix B
Awards, medals, prizes, etc.: H 1265
Geographic headings: Appendix B, H 690
Capitols
Established as subject headings: H 405
Capture, [*date*] as a subdivision: H 1560
Cardinal numerals
SEE Numerals
Caribbean Islands
SEE Islands of the Caribbean
Caricatures and cartoons
SEE Comic characters
Comic strips
Cartoon characters: H 1430
SEE ALSO Fictitious characters
Cartoons: H 1430
Case studies as a subdivision: H 1350
Cases as a subdivision: H 1350
Cases, clinical reports, statistics as a subdivision
Discontinued: H 1350
Cassettes, Catalogs of
SEE **Audiotape catalogs** as a subdivision
Film catalogs as a subdivision
Castles: H 1334
—Capture, [*date*]: H 1560
Established as subject headings: H 405
—Siege, [*date*]: H 1560
Casualties—Statistics as a subdivision: H 2095
Catalogs, Exhibition
Artistic photography: H 1255
Catalogs, Library
SEE Audiovisual materials—Catalogs
Library catalogs
Manuscript collections—Catalogs
Microform catalogs
Union catalogs
[*specific form*] as a subdivision, e.g. **Film catalogs** as a subdivision

Catalogs, Publishers'
SEE Publishers' catalogs
Catalogs, Union
SEE Union catalogs
Catalogs and collections as a subdivision
Musical instruments: H 1360, H 1427
Natural objects: H 1360, H 1427
Use of geographic subdivision for location of collection: H 1427
Catalogs as a subdivision: H 1360
Archives: H 1230, H 1361
Collections of objects: H 1360, H 1427, H 1670
Library materials: H 1361
Manuscript collections: H 1361
Source materials: H 2080
Catalogs of manuscript collections: H 1361
Categories of headings established as subject or name headings: H 405
Cathedrals
Established as name headings: H 405
Catholic Church
—**Foreign relations**: H 1629
Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1187
Cattle
Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1147
Cavalry as a subdivision: H 1159
Caves
Established as subject headings: H 690
Subject heading proposals: H 1225
Celebrations
Established as name headings: H 405
Celestial bodies
As geographic subdivisions: H 830
Established as subject headings: H 405
Subdivisions under places not used: H 1140
Cemeteries: H 1365
Established as name headings: H 405
Cemetery sites, Archaeological
Established as subject headings: H 405
Census as a subdivision: H 1366
Central, **Northern**, **Southern**, etc., as qualifiers
Headings for regions: H 760

Centuries: H 620
Chambers of commerce
Established as name headings: H 405
Changing existing subject headings: H 193
Changing references in subject authority records: H 195
Chapels
Established as name headings: H 405
Characters, Special
SEE Special characters
Checklist for authority research on subject heading proposals: H 202
Checklist for subject heading proposals: H 200
Chemicals
Pattern headings: H 1149
Children's fiction
SEE Juvenile fiction
Children's films
SEE Juvenile films
Children's literature
SEE **Juvenile literature** as a subdivision
Children's plays
SEE Juvenile drama
Children's poetry
SEE Juvenile poetry
Children's sound recordings
SEE Juvenile sound recordings
China: H 925
Chinese subject headings (Non-Roman): H 182
Chorus music headings
Construction: H 1917.5
Christian denominations
Adjectival qualifiers for subject headings: H 306
—Apologetic works: H 1472
Assigning subject headings: H 1187, H 1998, H 2015
—Controversial literature: H 1472
Corporate body headings established as name headings: H 405
—Directories: H 1558
Establishing [***topic***]**—Baptists, [Catholic Church, etc.]:** H 2015
Establishing [***topic***]**—Religious aspects—Baptists, [Catholic Church, etc.]**: H 1998
Headings naming a denomination's music not assigned: H 1917
—Liturgy—Texts: H 2190
Pattern heading: H 1187

Christian life: H 2015.5
Christian sects
SEE Christian denominations
Chronological headings: H 620
Chronological subdivisions: H 620, H 1075
Art: H 1148
—**Foreign relations**: H 870
—**History**: H 1647
Jazz and popular music: H 1916.5
Musical compositions: H 1160
Chronology: H 1367
Chronology as a subdivision: H 1367
Churches
Established as name headings: H 405
Circuses
Established as name headings: H 405
Cities
SEE ALSO City parks
City sections
Extinct cities (pre-1500)
Natural features in cities
names of specific cities
—**Buildings, structures, etc.:** H 832, **H 1334.5**
Airports: H 1211
Not used as broader term for structures in cities: H 375, H 1334
Cities assigned directly as geographic subdivisions: H 830
"City flip" discontinued: H 832
—**Description and travel**: H 1530
Disasters, riots, demonstrations, etc.: H 832, **H 1560**
Event headings as subdivisions under cities: H 1592
Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1140
Geographic qualifiers for entities in cities: H 810
Buildings: H 1334
Geographic subdivision to the city level: H 832
[. . .] Metropolitan Area: H 362, **H 790**
Geographic subdivision: H 830
[. . .] Region: H 362, **H 790**
Geographic subdivision: H 830
[. . .] Suburban Area: H 362, **H 790**
Subdivisions formerly used under cities: H 832

Citing sources in subject authority records: H 200, **H 203**
Authority research guidelines: H 202
Citizen participation as a subdivision: H 1942
City districts
SEE City sections
"City flip"
Discontinued: **H 832**, H 1560
City halls: H 1334
Established as subject headings: H 405
City parks
SEE ALSO Parks
Assignment of subject headings: H 1925
Geographic qualifiers: H 810
City sections: H 720
Established as name headings: H 405, H 720
Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1140
Geographic subdivision: H 720, **H 830**
City streets
Established as subject headings: H 405, H 690
Subject heading proposals: H 2098
Geographic qualifiers: H 2098
Use of vernacular: H 2098
Civic centers
Established as subject headings: H 405
Civil trials: H 2228
Civil wars
Pattern heading: H 1200
Civilization: H 1370
SEE ALSO Ethnic groups
Religious sects
Ancient peoples
Influence of one civilization on another: H 1370
Special civilizations of particular places: H 1370
[***topic***] **and civilization**: H 1370
Types of civilization: H 1370
Civilization as a subdivision: H 1370
Period subdivisions: H 1370
CJK subject headings: H 182
Clans
Established as subject headings: H 405

Clarinet
Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1161
Classes of persons
SEE ALSO Ancient peoples
Ethnic groups
Indians
Literary authors, Groups of
Nationalities
[. . .] as [. . .] headings: H 360
Biography: H 1330
Immigrants: H 1581
Persons with multifaceted careers: H 1330
—**Correspondence:** H 1480
—**Diaries**: H 1538
—**Directories:** H 1558
Ethnic groups as qualifiers: H 351
Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1100
[. . .] in [. . .] headings: H 360
Nationalities as qualifiers: H 350
—**Portraits:** H 1935
—**Psychological testing:** H 2186
—**Religious life:** H 2015.5
Classical and ancient works: H 1412
Classification as a subdivision
Folklore materials: H 1627
Classification numbers in subject authority records: **H 365**
Adding numbers to new records: H 200
Biological names: H 1332
Changing numbers in existing records: H 193, **H 196**
Literature headings: H 365
Musical instrument headings: H 365, H 1918
Club houses
Established as subject headings: H 405
Coding headings *(May Subd Geog)*, *(Not Subd Geog)*, etc.: H 364
Coin collections as a subdivision: H 1427
Coliseums
Established as subject headings: H 405
Collected works as a subdivision
Discontinued: H 1425

Collections, Public or Private
Established as subject headings: H 405
Collections as a subdivision: H 1425
Collections of documents: H 1643
Collections of manuscripts: H 1855
Collections of objects
Assignment of subject headings: H 1427
Catalogs: H 1360, H 1427
—**Indexes** not used: H 1670
Partial title added entries for names of collections: H 1427
Subdivisions for types of collections: H 1427
Collections of treaties: H 2227
Collective farms
Established as subject headings: H 405
Collective settlements
Established as name headings: H 405
Colleges
SEE ALSO Universities and colleges
Established as name headings: H 405
Colonies of individual countries
SEE ALSO **Territories and possessions** as a subdivision
Pattern heading: H 1149.5
Comarcas: H 760
Established as name headings: H 405
Comets
Established as subject headings: H 405
Comfort stations, Public
Established as subject headings: H 405
Comic characters: H 1430
SEE ALSO Fictitious characters
Comic strips: H 1430
Established as name headings: H 405
Commas
SEE Punctuation
Commentaries on commentaries: H 1435
Commentaries on individual works
Assignment of subject headings: H 1435
Anonymous classics: H 1435
Converting form headings to topical equivalents: H 1435
Sacred works: H 1435

Commentaries on individual works *(Continued)*
Treatment of a work as an edition or as a commentary: H 1435
Treatment of works consisting of both original text and commentary: H 1435
Commercial treaties as a subdivision: H 2227
Commonwealth of Independent States: H 1023
Communes
Established as name headings: H 405
Communities, Planned
Established as name headings: H 405
Community centers
Established as subject headings: H 405
Competitions
Established as name headings: H 405
Composers: H 1438
Biography: H 1438
—**Criticism and interpretation**: H 1438
Facsimiles of manuscripts: H 1595
Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1110, H 1438
Works about specific compositions: H 1438
Works about their music with a specific focus or on a specific form: H 1438
Compositions, Musical
SEE Musical compositions
Compound family names: H 1631
Compound subject headings: H 310
Computer languages
SEE ALSO **Machine translating** as a subdivision
Established as subject headings: H 405
Computer networks
Established as subject headings: H 405
Computer programs, Individual: H 2070
Established as name headings: H 405
Computer programs as a subdivision: H 2070
Computer simulation: H 2040
Computer software: H 2070
Individual programs established as name headings: H 405
Computer systems
Established as subject headings: H 405
Concentration camps
Established as name headings: H 405
Concert halls
Established as name headings: H 405

Concordances as a subdivision: H 1670
Concordats: H 2227
Concrete
Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1158
Conferences
Coding in field 008
Books: Appendix F
Continuing resources (Serials): Appendix G
Established as name headings: H 1592
Conglomerate corporations, Asian
SEE Asian conglomerate corporations
Congo: H 928
Congolese as an adjectival qualifier: H 928
Congresses: H 1460
Congresses as a subdivision: H 1205, **H 1460**
Congresses—Attendance as a subdivision: H 1460
CONSER Standard Record: H 170
Conservation districts
Established as name headings: H 405
Constitutional amendments: H 1465
Constitutional history: H 1465
Constitutional law: H 1465
Constitutions: H 1465
Corporate bodies: H 1465
Constructing subject headings: H 180
Music: H 250, H 1438, H 1916.3, H 1917.5
Musical instruments: H 1918
Construction industry
Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1153
Content designation
SEE Tagging subject headings
Subfield coding
Contests
Established as name headings: H 405, H 1592
Continents
As geographic subdivisions: H 830
Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1140
Contracts: H 1468
Contracts and specifications as a subdivision
Discontinued: H 1468, H 2083

Controversial literature as a subdivision: H 1472
Convention centers
Established as subject headings: H 405
Convents
Established as name headings: H 405
Conversion tables as a subdivision: H 2160
Cooking: H 1475
Cooking ingredients: H 1475
Establishing headings: H 1475
Cooking styles: H 1475
Copper
Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1149
Corn
Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1180
Corporate bodies
SEE ALSO specific types of corporate bodies
Biography: H 1330
Buildings occupied by corporate bodies: H 1334
Established as subject headings: H 405
Constitutions: H 1465
—**Directories:** H 1558
Dividing by place: H 364, **H 475**
Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1105
—**History—Chronology:** H 1367
Name changes: H 460
Named events focused on a corporate body: H 1592
[. . .] Region headings based on corporate bodies: H 760
Tagging in subject authority records: H 200
Corporate bodies, Jurisdictional
SEE Geographic name headings
Corporate bodies, Non-jurisdictional
SEE Corporate bodies
Correcting subject headings in bibliographic records: H 165
Correctional institutions
Established as name headings: H 405
Correspondence as a subdivision: H 1480
Classes of persons: H 1480
Ethnic groups: H 1480

Correspondence of individual persons: H 1480
—**History—Sources** not used under headings assigned to correspondence: H 2080
—**Sources** not used under headings assigned to correspondence: H 2080
Countries, cities, etc. as name headings
SEE Geographic name headings
Country clubs
Established as name headings: H 405
Counts: H 1574
Coups d'etat
Pattern heading: H 1200
Courthouses
Established as subject headings: H 405
Crematories
Established as name headings: H 405
Criminal trials: H 2228
Criticism and interpretation as a subdivision
Composers: H 1438
Croatia: H 1055
Crops
Pattern heading: H 1180
Cross-cultural studies as a subdivision: H 1510
Cross references
SEE Broader terms
Narrower terms
Related terms
"Used for" references
Cruises
Dates in headings for specific cruises: H 1078
Formulating headings: H 1592
Cuisines, National: H 1475
Cultural revolutions
Formulating headings: H 1592
Culture
Definition and comparison with **Civilization:** H 1370
Cultures
SEE Archaeological periods and culture
Civilization
Customhouses
Established as subject headings: H 405

Cyclones
Geographic subdivision to the city level: H 1560

- D -

Dams
Established as subject headings: H 690
Dance halls
Established as name headings: H 405
Databases: H 1520
Serially issued databases: H 1580.5
Databases as a subdivision: H 1520, H 1580.5
Dates
Abbreviations: Appendix A
Punctuation of open dates: Appendix D
Dates in subdivisions
SEE ALSO **Early works to 1800** as a subdivision
"Period subdivisions" as a subtopic under specific topics
Abbreviations: Appendix A
Headings for specific events: H 1078
Days, Special: H 1592
Decades, Special: H 1592
Decorations: H 1265
Deities
SEE ALSO Greek and Roman gods
Assignment of subject headings: H 1635, H 1795
Free-floating subdivisions in H 1110 not used: H 1110, H 1635
Groups of deities established as subject headings: H 405, H 1635
Individual deities established as name headings: H 405, H 1635
Deleting subject authority records: H 193
Adding 682 notes to explain deletions: H 193.5
UF references from deleted forms: H 193, H 373
Deltas
Formulating headings: H 800
Demonstrations
Formulating headings: H 1592
Geographic subdivision to the city level: H 1560
Denominations, Christian
SEE Christian denominations

Denominations, Religious: H 1998, H 2015
SEE ALSO Christian denominations
Religious sects
Established as name headings: H 405
Departments as a subdivision: H 713
Description and travel as a subdivision: H 1530
Descriptive authority records
SEE Name authority records
Descriptive name headings
SEE Name authority records
Name headings
Deserts
Established as subject headings: H 690
Design and construction as a subdivision: H 1532
Design as a subdivision: H 1532
Designs and plans as a subdivision: H 1532
Destruction, [*date*] as a subdivision: H 1560
Details, Building: H 1334
Established as subject headings: H 405
Diacritics: Appendix C
Diaries: H 1538
As a literary genre: H 1538
—History—Sources not used under headings assigned to diaries: H 2080
—Sources not used under headings assigned to diaries: H 2080
Diaries as a subdivision: **H 1538**
Dictionaries: H 1540
Dictionaries as a subdivision: **H 1540,** H 2184
Acronyms—Dictionaries not used: H 1206.5
—Terminology—Dictionaries not used: H 2184
—Terms and phrases—Dictionaries not used: H 2184
Dictionaries, Juvenile as a subdivision: H 1540
Dictionaries, Language
SEE Language dictionaries
Dictionaries, Picture
SEE Picture dictionaries
Dictionaries, Subject
SEE Subject dictionaries
Diet therapy—Recipes as a subdivision: H 1475
Digests as a subdivision: H 1550
Digital computer simulation: H 2040
Diplomatic relations
SEE **Foreign relations** as a subdivision

Direct subdivision: H 830
Direct word order
Topical subject headings: H 306
Directional qualifiers (**Northern**, **Southern**, **Central**, etc.)
Headings for regions: H 760
Directories: H 1558
Directories—Bibliography: H 1558
Directories, Telephone
SEE **Telephone directories** as a subdivision
Directories as a subdivision: H 1558
Archival resources: H 1230
—Periodicals not used as further subdivision: H 1558, H 1927
Disasters
SEE ALSO specific types of disasters
Formulating headings: H 1592
Geographic subdivision to the city level: H 1560
Discography as a subdivision: H 1361
Discontinued subdivisions
—Addresses, essays, lectures: H 1210
—Cases, clinical reports, statistics: H 1350
—Collected works: H 1425
—Contracts and specifications: H 2083
—Emigration and immigration—Biography: H 1581
—Exploring expeditions: H 1564
—Foreign population: H 1581
—Government publications: H 1643
—Influence of [. . .]: H 1675
—Influence on [. . .]: H 1675
—Legends and stories: H 1720
—Socioeconomic status: H 1578, H 2055
—Stories: H 1790
—Suburbs and environs: H 790
—Theater disaster, [*date*]: H 1560
—Yearbooks: H 2400
Discoveries in geography: H 1564
Discovery and exploration as a subdivision: H 1564
—History not used: H 1564
Diseases
Pattern heading: H 1150
Dispensaries
Established as name headings: H 405

Dissertations: H 1570
Dividing corporate name headings geographically: H 364, **H 475**
Division of the world of named entities: H 405
Docks
Established as subject headings: H 405
Documents, Collections of: H 1643
Domes as building details: H 1334
Domestic animals
SEE ALSO Animals
Biological names: H 1332
Pattern heading: H 1147
Domestic plants
SEE ALSO Plants
Biological names: H 1332
Dividing by place: H 1332
Doors as building details: H 1334
Established as subject headings: H 405
Doubling on two or more musical instruments: H 1917.5
Drama: H 1780
Period subdivisions: H 1156
Drama, English
SEE **English drama**
Drama, Folk
SEE **Folk drama**
Drama, Juvenile
SEE Juvenile drama
Drama as a subdivision: H 1780
Fiction films: H 2230
Fictitious characters: H 1610
Musical works: H 1916.3, H 2075
Place names: H 910
Dramatists
SEE Literary authors, Groups of
Literary authors, Individual
Drugs
Pattern heading: H 1149
—Testing: H 2186
Duets
Music form/genre headings: H 1917.5
Subject heading proposals: H 250, H 1917.5

Dukes: H 1574
Dwellings
SEE ALSO Buildings and structures
Broader terms: H 1334
Dwellings with extensive grounds: H 1572
Established as subject headings: H 405
Dynasties: H 1574
Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1120
Subject heading proposals: H 1574

- E -

Earls: H 1574
Early cities
SEE Extinct cities (pre-1500)
Early printed books: H 1576
Early works: H 1576
Early works to 1800 as a subdivision: H 1576
Commentaries: H 1435
Earthquakes
Establishing individual earthquakes: H 1560
Geographic subdivision to the city level: H 1560
East Germany
SEE Germany
Ecclesiastical entities that are also names of places
Established as name headings: H 405
Not treated as geographic headings: H 830
Not used as geographic subdivisions: H 830
Ecological stations
Established as name headings: H 405
Economic conditions as a subdivision: H 1578
Period subdivisions: H 1578
Editions: H 175
Deleting —**Addresses, essays, lectures** from earlier editions of a work: H 1210
Deleting —**Collected works** from earlier editions of a work: H 1425
Treatment of a work containing commentary as an edition or commentary: H 1435
Editions of visual materials: H 2230
Education as a subdivision: H 1579
Contrasted with —**Training of:** H 2217

Educational evaluation: H 1591
Educational institutions, Individual
Established as name headings: H 405
Pattern heading: H 1151
Yearbooks: H 2400
Educational institutions, Types of
Pattern heading: H 1151.5
[. . .], Effect of [. . .] on
Discontinued: H 1580
Effect of [. . .] on as a subdivision
Free-floating when established under pattern headings: H 1580
Subject heading proposals: H 1580
Effect on [. . .] as a subdivision
Not used: H 1580
Electronic discussion groups
Established as a name heading: H 405
Electronic serials: H 1580.5
Embassies
Established as name headings: H 405
Emigrants
SEE Immigrants
Emigration and immigration: H 1581
Emigration and immigration as a subdivision: H 1581
Emigration and immigration—Biography as a subdivision
Discontinued: H 1581
Emigration and immigration—Government policy as a subdivision: H 1581
Emigration policy
SEE **Emigration and immigration—Government policy** as a subdivision
Empires
Assigned directly as geographic subdivisions: H 830
Enactments, Legislative: H 1715
England
Contrasted with **Great Britain:** H 955
Geographic subdivision: H 955
Law cataloging: H 955
Qualification of geographic headings
Use of counties to resolve conflicts: H 810
English drama
Period subdivisions: H 1156

English language
SEE ALSO **Translating** as a subdivision
—Dictionaries: H 1540
Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1154
—Glossaries, vocabularies, etc.: H 1540
Period subdivisions: H 1154
—Terms and phrases: H 1540, H 2184
—Textbooks for foreign speakers: H 2187
—Texts: H 2190
English literature
Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1156
Period subdivisions: H 1156
Epidemics
Formulating headings: H 1592
Eruptions of volcanoes
Formulating headings: H 1592
Establishing subject headings
SEE Subject heading proposals
"Subject heading proposals" as a subtopic under specific topics
Estates
Established as subject headings: H 405
Estonia: H 1023
Estuaries
Formulating headings: H 800, H 1145.5
Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1145.5
Ethics, Professional
SEE **Professional ethics**
Ethnic groups
SEE ALSO Ancient peoples
Clans
Ethnic groups in the United States
Indians
Tribes (Ethnic groups)
Biography: H 1330
—Civilization not used: H 1370
—Correspondence: H 1480
—Diaries: H 1538
—Directories: H 1558
Folklore: H 1627

Ethnic groups *(Continued)*
Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1103
Free-floating subdivisions under headings for classes of persons with ethnic qualifiers: H 1100
—Government relations: H 1942
—History—Chronology: H 1367
Immigrants: H 1581
—Languages—Texts: H 2190
Music: H 1916.3, **H 1917**
Philosophy: H 1929
—Politics and government: H 1942
—Psychological testing: H 2186
Qualifiers for subject headings: H 320, H 351
System of law: H 1718
—Treaties: H 2227
Ethnic groups in the United States: H 1919.5
SEE ALSO Ethnic groups
Newspapers: H 1920
Systems of law: H 1718
Ethnic qualifiers for subject headings
SEE Subject heading qualifiers—Ethnic qualifiers
Ethnic studies: H 2110
Ethnological collections as a subdivision: H 1427
Ethnomusicological collections as a subdivision: H 1427
Evaluation: H 1591
Evaluation as a subdivision: H 1591
SEE ALSO specific types of events
Capitalization: Appendix B
Biography: H 1330
Dates in subdivisions for specific events: H 1078
Drama: H 1780
Established as name or subject headings: H 405, H 1592
Established as subdivisions
Subfield coding: H 1592
Fiction: H 1790
Formulating subject headings as subdivisions: H 1592
Formulating subject headings in phrase form: H 1592
—Personal narratives: H 1928
Poetry: H 1800

Evaluation as a subdivision *(Continued)*
—**Songs and music**: H 2075
Subject headings to bring out subordinate jurisdictions when event headings are formulated as subdivisions under larger jurisdictions: H 1592
Examinations as a subdivision: H 2186
Excavations (Archaeology): H 1225
Excerpts, Arranged as a subdivision: H 1160, H 1917.5
Exhibition buildings
Broader terms: H 1334
Established as subject headings: H 405
Geographic qualifier: H 1334
Exhibition catalogs
Artistic photography: H 1255
Exhibitions: H 1593
Established as name headings: H 405, H 1592
Individual named exhibitions: H 1593
Exhibitions as a subdivision: H 1593
—**Catalogs** not used: H 1593
Expeditions, Military
Established as name or subject headings: H 405
Expeditions, Scientific
Established as name headings: H 405
Experiment stations
Established as name headings: H 405
Exploration, History of
SEE **Discoveries (in geography)**
Discovery and exploration
Exploration, Space: H 1564
Exploring expeditions as a subdivision
Discontinued: H 1564
Explosions
Formulating headings: H 1592
Geographic subdivision to the city level: H 1560
Expositions
Established as name headings: H 405
Express highway interchanges: H 2098
Extensive grounds, Dwellings with: H 1572
Extinct cities (pre-1500)
SEE ALSO Cities
Contrasted with archaeological sites: H 715
—**Description and travel** not used: H 1530

Extinct cities (pre-1500) *(Continued)*
Established as subject headings: H 405, H 690, H 715
Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1140
Geographic subdivision: H 830
Regions surrounding: H 715, H 760
Subject heading proposals: H 715
(Extinct city) as a qualifier: H 715

- F -

Fables: H 1627
Facsimiles as a subdivision: H 1595, H 1855
Facsimiles of manuscripts: H 1595, H 1855
Facsimiles of maps: H 1595
Factories
Established as name headings: H 405
Fairgrounds
Established as subject headings: H 405
Fairs
Established as name headings: H 405, H 1592
Fairy tales: H 1627
Families
SEE Family names
Families, Royal
SEE Royal houses
Family as a subdivision: H 1631
Family history
SEE Genealogy
Family names: H 1631
Capitalization: Appendix B
—**Directories**: H 1558
Established as subject headings: H 405
Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1120
—**Museums, relics, etc.:** H 1916
Subject heading proposals: H 200, H 1631
Aristocratic or noble families: H 1574
Famines
Formulating headings: H 1592
Geographic subdivision to the city level: H 1560

Farms
Established as subject headings: H 405, H 690
Feasts
Established as subject headings: H 405
Feature films: H 1913
Federal Republic of Germany
SEE Germany
Ferry buildings
Established as subject headings: H 405
Festivals
Established as name headings: H 405, H 1592
Festivals, Folk
Established as name headings: H 405, H 1592
Festschriften: H 1600
Fiction: H 1790
SEE ALSO Biographical fiction
Historical fiction
Juvenile fiction
Fiction as a subdivision: H 1790
Animals: H 1720
Place names: H 910
Fictitious characters: H 1610
Fiction films: H 1913
Fiction radio programs: H 1969.5
Fiction television programs: H 1913
Fictitious characters: H 1610
SEE ALSO Comic characters
Legendary characters
Collections of fiction featuring a character: H 1790
Criticism of fiction about a character: H 1790
Free-floating subdivisions in H 1110 not used: H 1110, H 1610
Groups of characters established as subject headings: H 200, H 405, H 1610
Individual characters established as name headings: H 405, H 1610
Individual works of fiction: H 1610
File maintenance, Bibliographic: H 165
Film catalogs as a subdivision: H 1361
Contrasted with —**Indexes:** H 1670
Films: H 1913, H 2230
SEE ALSO Juvenile films
Finance as a subdivision: H 1624
Finance, Personal as a subdivision: H 1624

Fine art
SEE Art
Fire stations
Established as subject headings: H 405
Fires
Formulating headings: H 1592
Geographic subdivision to the city level: H 1560
First order political divisions of countries
SEE Geographic name headings—First order political divisions of countries
Fish hatcheries
Established as name headings: H 405
Fishes
Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1147
Fleets
Use of **—Regimental histories:** H 1995
Floods
Geographic subdivision to the city level: H 1560
Folk drama: H 1627
Folk festivals and celebrations
Established as name headings: H 405
Folk literature: H 1627
Translations: H 1627
Folk music: H 1917
Music genre vs. folklore genre: H 1627
Folk poetry
Ethnic qualifiers not used: H 1627
Literary genre vs. folklore genre: H 1627
Folk songs
Language of text: H 1916.3, H 1917
Music genre vs. folklore genre: H 1627
Folklore: H 1627
Collections of folklore texts: H 1627
—History and criticism not used: H 1627
Works about folklore: H 1627
Folklore as a subdivision: **H 1627**, H 1720
Not used under inherently folkloric topics: H 1627
Foot
Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1164
Forecasting: H 1628
Subdivision preferred over phrase headings: H 1628

Forecasting as a subdivision: H 1628
Forecasts as a subdivision
Usage under centuries: H 1628
Foreign countries as a subdivision
Nationalities: H 1919.5
[. . .] in foreign countries discontinued: H 1919.5
Foreign influences as a subdivision: H 1675
Foreign language teaching films: H 2230
Foreign languages, Subject headings for
SEE ALSO Artificial languages
French language
Romance languages
Translating as a subdivision
—**Acronyms:** H 1206.5
—**Dictionaries:** H 1540
—**Glossaries, vocabularies, etc.:** H 1540
Pattern headings: H 1154
Qualifying subject headings by languages: H 320
UF references: H 373
—**Readers**: H 1975
—**Study and teaching:** H 2110
—**Terms and phrases:** H 1540
—**Textbooks for foreign speakers:** H 2187
—**Texts:** H 2190
Foreign languages, Subject headings in
Articles in the initial position in subject headings: H 290
Capitalization: Appendix B, H 690
Diacritics and special characters: Appendix C
Establishing subject headings in foreign languages
SEE ALSO "Subject heading proposals—Use of vernacular" as a subtopic under specific topics
Buildings and structures: H 1334
Geographic headings: H 690
Transliteration: H 690
Musical instruments: H 1918
Topical headings: H 315
Parallel Arabic/Persian non-Roman subject headings: H 181
Parallel CJK non-Roman subject headings: H 182
UF references in foreign languages: H 373

Foreign population as a subdivision
Discontinued: H 1581
Foreign public opinion as a subdivision: H 1955
Foreign relations as a subdivision: H 1629
Free-floating chronological subdivisions not used: H 1629
—History—[*period subdivision*] not used: H 1629
Use of chronological subdivisions: H 870
Foreign relations—[***dates***]: H 870
Foreign relations—Treaties as a subdivision: H 2227
Foreign terms
SEE Foreign languages, Subject headings in
Forest districts
Established as name headings: H 405
Forest reserves
SEE Reserves
Forests
Established as subject headings: H 405, H 690
Forests (Administrative agencies)
Established as name headings: H 405
Forks of rivers: H 800
Form/genre terms
Moving image works: H 1913
Subject heading proposals: H 1913
Music: **H 250**, H 1916.3, H 1916.5, H 1917, **H 1917.5**
Radio programs: H 1969.5
Subject heading proposals: H 1969.5
Form subdivisions: H 180, H 1075
Commentaries: H 1435
Literature about music: H 1160, H 1916.3
Music of ethnic, national, and religious groups: H 1916.3, H 1917
Musical compositions: H 1160, H 2075
Musical presentation or format: H 250, H 1160
Use of subfield code "v": H 1075
Former Soviet republics: H 1023
Fortresses (Structures): H 1334
Established as subject headings: H 405
Forts
SEE ALSO Buildings and structures
Military installations, Active
Military installations, Inactive
—Capture, [*date*]: H 1560
—Siege, [*date*]: H 1560

Fossils: H 1332
Inverted headings: H 306
Founders of religions
Biography: H 1330
Established subdivisions vs. free-floating subdivisions: H 1110
Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1110
Subdivisions for events focused on: H 1592
Fountains
Established as subject headings: H 405
Free-floating subdivisions: H 1095
SEE ALSO Free-floating terms phrases
Subdivisions
Broader terms: H 370
"General see also" references: **H 371**, H 1146
"General see" references: H 374
Subdividing by place: H 860
Used under:
Bodies of water, etc.: H 1145.5
Classes of persons: H 1100
Corporate bodies: H 1105
Ethnic groups: H 1103
Family names: H 1120
Musical compositions: H 1160
Musical instruments: H 1161
Names of literary authors: H 1110
Names of persons: H 1110
Names of places: H 1140
Nationalities: H 1103
Pattern headings: H 1146-H 1200
Rivers: H 1145.5
Free-floating terms and phrases: **H 362,** H 1140
[. . .] Metropolitan Area: H 362, **H 790,** H 1140
Geographic subdivision: H 830
[. . .] Region
City regions: H 362, **H 790**, H 1140
Extinct cities: H 715, H 760
Geographic regions: H 362, **H 760**
Geographic subdivision: H 830
Regions based on rivers: H 362, **H 800**, H 1145.5
[. . .] Suburban Area: H 362, **H 790**, H 1140

French language
SEE ALSO Foreign languages, Subject headings for
Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1154
Funds
Established as name headings: H 405
Funeral homes
Established as name headings: H 405

- G -

GACs
SEE Geographic area codes
Galaxies
Established as subject headings: H 405
Galleries
Established as name headings: H 405
Game preserves
SEE Reserves
Games (Events)
Established as name headings: H 405, H 1592
Gangs
Established as name headings: H 405
"Gaps" in hierarchical reference structure: H 370
Gardens
SEE ALSO Botanical gardens
Zoological gardens
Established as subject headings: H 405, H 690
Geographic subdivision: H 830
Gates: H 1334
Established as subject headings: H 405
Gautama Buddha
Established subdivisions vs. free-floating subdivisions: H 1110
Gaza Strip: H 980
Gazetteers: H 1630
Genealogy: H 1631
Census publications: H 1366
Source materials: H 1845
Headings requiring **[*place*]—Genealogy** as an additional heading: H 1845
Subdivisions under place names used for genealogical source materials: H 1845
Genealogy as a subdivision: H 1631, H 1845
Census publications: H 1366

Genealogy—Handbooks, manuals, etc. as a subdivision: H 1631
Genealogy—Methodology as a subdivision: H 1631
General see also references: H 371
Changing an existing subject authority record: H 195
Contrasted with broader terms: H 371
Keying in subject authority records: H 200
Music form/genre headings: H 1917.5
Musical instruments: H 1918
Pattern headings as examples in general see also references: H 371, H 1146
When to establish: H 370, **H 371**
General see references: H 200, **H 374**
Non-musical objects used as musical instruments: H 1918
Template for proposing: H 200
Genre/form terms
Moving image works: H 1913
Proposals: H 1913
Radio programs: H 1969.5
Proposals: H 1969.5
Music: **H 250**, H 1916.3, H 1916.5, H 1917, **H 1917.5**
Template for proposing: H 200
Genres, Literary
SEE ALSO specific literary genres
Period subdivisions used under: H 1156
Geographic area codes: Appendix E
Bosnia and Hercegovina: H 1055
Congo: H 928
Core level records: H 170
Croatia: H 1055
Families: H 1631
Former Soviet republics: H 1023
Former Yugoslav republics: H 1055
Gaza Strip: H 980
Genealogical works: H 1631
Golan Heights: H 980
Hong Kong: H 978
Jazz: H 1916.5

Geographic area codes *(Continued)*
Jerusalem: H 980
Kosovo (Republic): H 1055
Macedonia (Republic): H 1055
Microforms: H 1893
Montenegro: H 1055
Non-music sound recordings: H 2230
Palestine: H 980
Popular music: H 1916.5
Serbia: H 1055
Serbia and Montenegro: H 1055
Slovenia: H 1055
Soviet Union: H 1023
Vatican City: H 1045
Visual materials: H 2230
West Bank: H 980
Yugoslavia: H 1055
Geographic headings, Jurisdictional
SEE Geographic name headings
Geographic headings, Non-jurisdictional
SEE Geographic subject headings
Geographic name headings
SEE ALSO Geographic subject headings
Place names
First order political divisions of countries: H 713
Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1140
Geographic subdivision information in name authority records: H 835
Linear name changes in political jurisdictions
Recording subject usage information in name authority records: H 708
Use of latest name: H 708, H 830
Mergers of two or more jurisdictions into one: H 710
Proposing 781 fields for name authority records: H 835
Splits of jurisdictions into multiple entities: H 710
Used as topical subdivisions
Subfield coding: H 830
Geographic qualifiers: H 810
Abbreviations: H 810
Buildings and structures: H 1334
CJK records: H 182

Geographic qualifiers *(Continued)*
Deletion of generic terms in headings for regions: H 760
Deletion of qualifiers in geographic subdivision: H 830
Entities in cities: H 810
Extinct cities: H 715
Islands: H 807
Region headings: H 760
Deleting generic terms from qualifiers: H 760
Rivers: H 800
Geographic regions
SEE Regions, Geographic
Geographic subdivision information
In name authority records: H 835
In subject authority records: H 364, H 836
Geographic subdivisions: H 830, H 1075
Arabic/Persian records: H 181
Authorizing headings to be divided geographically: H 364
CJK records: H 182
Corporate bodies: H 364, **H 475**
Proposals to subdivide by place: H 475
Dividing topical subdivisions by place: H 860
Exceptions: H 830
History of geographic subdivision practice: H 830
Interposing place between subject headings and topical subdivisions: H 870
Jazz and popular music headings: H 1916.5
Limit of two levels of geographic subdivision: H 830
Music, General: H 1916.3
Music of ethnic, national, and religious groups: H 1917
Musical compositions: H 250, H 1160, H 1916.5, H 1917
Musical instruments: H 1917, H 1918
Brands and models: H 1918
Parks as geographic subdivisions: H 1925
Subdivisions
Further dividing by place: H 860
Subfield coding: H 830
Subject headings
Authorizing headings to be divided geographically: H 364
Dividing to the city level: **H 832,** H 1560
Proposals to divide existing headings: H 193, **H 194**
Subfield coding: H 830

Geographic subdivisions *(Continued)*
Subject usage information
Name authority records: H 835
Subject authority records: H 836
Geographic subject headings
SEE ALSO Geographic name headings
Geographic qualifiers
Place names
types of geographic features
Abbreviations: H 690
Articles in the initial position in subject headings: H 690
Capitalization: Appendix B, H 690
Free-floating subdivisions
Used under
Bodies of water, streams, etc: H 1145.5
Names of places: H 1140
Free-floating terms and phrases: H 362, H 1140
[. . .] Metropolitan Area: H 362, H 790, H 1140
Geographic subdivision: H 830
[. . .] Region
City regions: H 362, **H 790**, H 1140
Extinct cities: H 715, H 760
Geographic regions: H 362, **H 760**
Geographic subdivision: H 830
Regions based on rivers: H 362, **H 800**, H 1145.5
[. . .] Suburban Area: H 362, **H 790**, H 1140
Subject heading proposals: H 690
Authority research: H 690
BGN decisions: H 690
Broader terms: H 690
English vs. vernacular forms: H 690
Template: H 200
UF references: H 690
Transliteration: H 690
Used as topical subdivisions
Subfield coding: H 830
Geographical names [i.e. **Names, Geographical** as a subject heading]
SEE **Names, Geographical**
Geography as a subdivision: H 1530

Geologic basins
Established as subject headings: H 690
Georgia (Republic): H 1023
German Democratic Republic
SEE Germany
German Federal Republic
SEE Germany
Germany: H 945
Glossaries, vocabularies, etc. as a subdivision: H 1540, H 2184
Gods
SEE Deities
Greek and Roman gods
Golan Heights: H 980
Golf courses
Established as subject headings: H 405
Government agencies
Catalogs of publications: H 1965
Government policy as a subdivision: H 1642
Government publications: H 1643
Publishers' catalogs: H 1965
Grain elevators
Established as subject headings: H 405
Grasslands
Established as subject headings: H 690
Graveyards
SEE Cemeteries
Great Britain: H 955
Assignment of constituent countries directly as geographic subdivisions: H 830
Geographic subdivision through names of constituent countries: H 955
Geographic subdivision in law cataloging: H 955
Qualification of geographic headings: H 810
Use of county or region names to resolve conflicts: H 810
Great Britain—Colonies
Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1149.5
Greek and Roman gods: H 1636
Groups of deities
Established as subject headings: H 405, H 1635
Groups of fictitious characters
Established as subject headings: H 405, H 1610
Groups of legendary characters
Established as subject headings: H 405, H 1795

Groups of mythological figures
Established as subject headings: H 405, H 1635

Groups of islands
SEE Islands
Groups of languages, Subject headings for
SEE Foreign languages, Subject headings for
Groups of persons
SEE Classes of persons
Guidebooks as a subdivision: H 1645
Gymnasiums
Established as subject headings: H 405

- H -

Haiti
As a geographic qualifier: H 810
Halfway houses
Established as name headings: H 405
Hamlet
Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1155.6
Handbooks, manuals, etc. as a subdivision: H 1646
SEE ALSO **Guidebooks** as a subdivision
Tables as a subdivision
Genealogical works: H 1631
Harvard University
Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1151
Hawaii: H 975
Use as a geographic qualifier: H 810, H 975
Hazardous waste sites
Established as subject headings: H 405
Headings established as name or subject headings: H 405
Heads of state
SEE Rulers and statesmen
Hearing impaired, Visual materials for: H 1913
Heart
Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1164
Helplines
Established as name headings: H 405
Herbarium as a subdivision: H 1427

Herbariums
Established as name headings: H 405
Hierarchical references
Broader terms: **H 370,** H 375
Changing references: H 195
Contrasted with "General see also" references: H 371
"Gaps" in the hierarchy: H 370
Geographic names: H 690
Keying in subject authority records: H 200
Moving image genre/form terms: H 1913
Radio genre/form terms: H 1969.5
Subdivisions under headings with nationality, ethnic group, or language qualifiers: H 320
[*topic*]—[*place*] references: H 375
Narrower terms
Changing references: H 195
Procedure for making: H 200
Highway interchanges: H 2098
Highways
Established as subject headings: H 405
Subject heading proposals: H 2098
Geographic qualifiers: H 2098
Use of vernacular: H 2098
Hijackings
Formulating headings: H 1592
Hispaniola
Not used as a geographic qualifier: H 810
Historic districts
In cities
Established as name headings: H 405
Not in cities
Established as subject headings: H 405
Historic kingdoms
Geographic subdivision: H 830
Historic sites
Established as subject headings: H 405
Subject heading proposals: H 1925
Historical events
SEE Events
Historical fiction: H 1790

History
Definition and comparison with **Civilization:** H 1370
History and criticism as a subdivision
Comic strips and single panel cartoons: H 1430
Drama: H 1780
Fiction: H 1790
Folklore materials: H 1627
Not used under **Folklore:** H 1627
Legends and romances: H 1795
Liturgical texts: H 2190
Music headings
Ethnic, national, and religious groups: H 1917
Literature and other materials about music: H 1160, H 1916.3
Musical compositions: H 1160
Not used under the heading **Musical instruments** or under headings for specific instruments: H 1917
Vocal music texts: H 2190
Poetry: H 1800
Sermons: H 2032
—**Songs and music**: H 2075
History as a subdivision: H 1647
—**Bombardment, [*date*]**: H 1560
—**Capture, [*date*]**: H 1560
Chronological subdivisions: H 1647
—**Destruction, [*date*]:** H 1560
Musical instruments: H 1917
Philosophy headings: H 1647
—**Siege, [*date*]:** H 1560
Subdivisions not further subdivided by —**History:** H 1647
History—Chronology as a subdivision: H 1367
History, Constitutional: H 1465
History—Sources as a subdivision: H 2080
Government publications: H 1643
Not used under headings assigned to correspondence: H 1480
Homes and haunts as a subdivision
Works about buildings: H 1334
Homilies
SEE Sermons
Hong Kong (China): H 978

Hospitals
Established as name headings: H 405
Hotels
Established as name headings: H 405
Hotlines
Established as name headings: H 405
Houses: H 1334
Houses, Noble
SEE Noble houses
Houses, Royal
SEE Royal houses
Housing projects
Established as name headings: H 405
Hurricanes
Establishing individual hurricanes: H 1560
Husbands of famous women
Biography: H 1330

- I -

Illumination artists
SEE Manuscript illuminators
Illumination of manuscripts: H 1855
Illustrations as a subdivision: H 1659, H 1935
Contrasted with —**Pictorial works:** H 1659
Manuscripts: H 1855
Illustrators
Artists as illustrators: H 1250
Imaginary persons
SEE Fictitious characters
Immigrants: H 1581
Biography: H 1581
Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1100
Geographic subdivision: H 1581
Particular ethnic groups: H 1581
Immigrants' descendants
Particular ethnic groups: H 1581
Immigration
SEE Emigration and immigration

Immigration policy
SEE **Emigration and immigration—Government policy** as a subdivision
Immigration stations
Established as subject headings: H 405
Imprints as a subdivision: H 1660
In art as a subdivision: H 362, H 910, H 1935
[. . .] in art: H 362, H 910, H 1935
[. . .] in [. . .] headings
[*class of persons*] in [*discipline*]: H 360
[*nationality*] in [*place*]
Replaced by **[*nationality*] *(May Subd Geog):*** H 1919.5
[*place*] in [. . .]: H 910
[*topic*] in [*topic*]
Broader terms: H 370
Contrasted with parenthetical qualifiers: H 357
In literature as a subdivision: H 362, H 910, H 1780, H 1790, H 1800
[. . .] in literature: H 362, H 910
In motion pictures as a subdivision: H 910
[. . .] in motion pictures: H 910
[. . .] (in religion, folklore, etc.)
Discontinued: H 1998
In-service training as a subdivision: H 2217
[. . .] in textbooks: H 2187
[. . .] in the Bible: H 1295
Incunabula
SEE Early works
Indexes
Treated as supplementary works: H 2145
Indexes as a subdivision: **H 1670**
Indian reservations
Established as subject headings: H 405, H 1925
Indians
SEE ALSO Tribes (Ethnic groups)
Folklore: H 1627
—History—Chronology: H 1367
Indigenous tribes of the United States
As geographic subdivisions: H 830
—Music: H 1917

Indians *(Continued)*
—**Philosophy:** H 1929
Qualifiers for subject headings: H 320, H 351
Systems of law: H 1718
—**Wars**
As broader term for battles: H 1285
Indians of the United States, Newspapers of: H 1920
Indigenous peoples: H 1103
Indigenous tribes of the United States
As geographic subdivisions: H 830
Indirect subdivision
SEE Geographic subdivisions
Individual deities
Established as name headings: H 405, H 1635
Individual fictitious characters
Established as name headings: H 405, H 1610
Individual legendary characters
Established as name headings: H 405, H 1795
Individual mythological figures
Established as name headings: H 405, H 1635
Individual persons
SEE Names of persons
Individual named animals
Established as name headings: H 405, H 1332
Individual works of art: H 1250
Established as name headings: H 405
Industrial districts
Established as name headings: H 405
Industries
Based on products: H 1673
—**Directories:** H 1558
Pattern headings: H 1153
Influence as a subdivision: H 1580, **H 1675**
[. . .], Influence of: H 1580
Influence of as a subdivision
Discontinued: H 1580, H 1675
[. . .], Influence of [. . .] on: H 1580
Influence on [. . .] as a subdivision
Discontinued: H 1580, H 1675

[. . .] influences as a subdivision: H 1370, H 1580, H 1675
Broader terms: H 1675
Folklore materials: H 1627
Information services: H 1675.5
Information services as a subdivision: H 1675.5
Ingredients for cooking: H 1475
Establishing headings: H 1475
Initial articles in subject headings
SEE Articles in the initial position in subject headings
Initialisms: Appendix A
Inquisition: H 1676
Inspection as a subdivision: H 1676.5
Institutions, Educational
SEE Educational institutions, Individual
Educational institutions, Types of
Instruction and study as a subdivision: H 2110
Musical compositions: H 1160
Musical instruments: H 1161
Instructional materials, Music: H 1916.3
Instrumental ensembles in music form/genre headings: H 250, H 1917.5
Instruments, Musical
SEE Musical instruments
Insulin
Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1149
Insurrections
Pattern heading: H 1200
Intelligence testing as a subdivision: H 2186
Interchanges, Express highway: H 2098
Internal migration
SEE **Migration, Internal**
International agency publications: H 1643
International bodies of water
Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1145.5
Geographic qualifiers: H 810
Geographic subdivision: H 830
International conventions (Treaties): H 2227
International organizations
Regions based on: H 760
International relations: H 1942

Internet resources
Citing in subject authority records: H 203
Interviews as a subdivision: H 1678
Invasions
Formulating headings: H 1592
Inverted word order
Topical subject headings: H 306
Islam: H 1680
[. . .], Islamic: H 1680
Islamic law
Dividing headings geographically: H 1718
Islands: H 807
Buildings and structures on: H 1334
Entities on: H 810, H 807
Established as name headings if jurisdictional: H 807
Established as subject headings if non-jurisdictional: H 405, H 807
Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1140
Geographic qualifiers: H 807
Geographic subdivision: H 807
Subject usage information
In name authority records: H 835
In subject authority records: H 836
Parks coextensive with islands: H 1925
[. . .] Region
Headings not constructed for regions based on islands: H 760
Subject heading proposals: H 807
Islands of the Caribbean
Geographic subdivision: H 807

- J -

Japanese subject headings (Non-Roman): H 182
Jazz: **H 1916.5**, H 1917.5
Jerusalem: H 980
Geographic subdivision: H 830
Metropolitan Area: H 790
Jesuits
Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1186

Jesus Christ
Established subdivisions vs. free-floating subdivisions: H 1110
—Trial: H 2228
Jewish as a qualifier: H 306, H 320
Jewish way of life: H 2015.5
Jurisdictional mergers and splits: H 710
Jurisdictions
SEE Geographic name headings
Jurisdictions, Ancient (other than cities)
Established as name headings: H 405
Juvenile dictionaries
SEE **Dictionaries, Juvenile** as a subdivision
Juvenile drama: H 1690, H 1780
Juvenile fiction: H 1690, H 1790
Juvenile literature as a subdivision: H 1690
—Juvenile literature—Bibliography: H 1690
—Periodicals—Juvenile literature: H 1927
Juvenile materials: H 180, **H 1690**
Coding for target audience in field 008: Appendix F
Juvenile poetry: H 1690, H 1800
Juvenile software: H 1690
Juvenile textbooks: H 1690, H 2187

- K -

Kazakstan: H 1023
Kingdoms
SEE Historic kingdoms
Kings and rulers as a subdivision: H 1574
SEE ALSO Rulers and statesmen
Koran: H 1300
Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1188
Korean subject headings (Non-Roman): H 182
Kosovo (Republic): H 1055
Kyrgyzstan: H 1023

- L -

Labor laws and legislation
Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1154.5
Laboratories
Established as name headings: H 405
Lakes
Established as subject headings: H 690
Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1145.5
Geographic qualifiers: H 810
Lakes in cities: H 810
Land grants
Established as subject headings: H 405
Land vehicles
Pattern heading: H 1195
Landslides
Geographic subdivision to the city level: H 1560
Language dictionaries: H 1540
Language of vocal texts: H 250, H 1916.3, H 1917
Language qualifiers for subject headings: H 306
Language teachers
—**Training of:** H 2217
Languages
SEE **English language**
Foreign languages, Subject headings for
French language
Romance languages
Languages, Computer
SEE ALSO **Machine translating** as a subdivision
Established as subject headings: H 405
Latest name of political jurisdictions: H 708, H 830
Latin America: H 985
Latvia: H 1023
Law and legislation as a subdivision: H 1705
Not used in headings qualified by legal systems: H 1718
Law, Constitutional: H 1465
Law headings
SEE Legal headings
Law, Systems of: H 1718
LC data base
Citing in subject authority records: H 203

LC patterns for subject heading proposals
Citing in subject authority records: H 200, H 202
LCSH
SEE Subject authority records
Legal headings
SEE ALSO **Cases** as a subdivision
Digests as a subdivision
Law and legislation as a subdivision
Legal research as a subdivision
Legal status, laws, etc. as a subdivision
Research as a subdivision
Safety regulations as a subdivision
Treaties
Trials
Broader terms
Headings qualified by legal systems: H 370
Great Britain as geographic subdivision: H 955
—History—Sources: H 2080
—Legal research: H 1710
—Legal status, laws, etc.: H 1705
Pattern heading: H 1154.5
—Sources: H 2080
Systems of law: H 1718
—Terminology: H 2184
Legal materials: H 1705-H1715
Legal research as a subdivision: H 1710
Legal status, laws, etc. as a subdivision: H 1705
Not used in headings qualified by legal systems: H 1718
Legendary characters: H 1627, H 1795
SEE ALSO Fictitious characters
Free-floating subdivisions in H 1110 not used: H 1110, H 1795
Groups established as subject headings: H 405, H 1795
Individual characters established as name headings: H 405, H 1795
Legendary objects: H 1627, H 1795
Legends: H 1627, H 1795
SEE ALSO **Romances**
History and criticism: H 1795
Legends involving religious objects: H 1627, H 1795
Qualifying by names of religions: H 1627

Legends, Medieval
SEE **Legends**
Legends as a subdivision
Legends and stories as a subdivision
Discontinued: H 1720
Legends as a subdivision: H 1627, H 1795
SEE ALSO **Romances** as a subdivision
Legislation: H 1715
Legislative enactments: H 1715
Legislative bodies
Pattern heading: H 1155
Legislative history as a subdivision: H 1715
Legislative histories: H 1715
Letters, Foreign: Appendix C
Letters as a literary genre: H 1480
Letters of individual persons
SEE Correspondence of individual persons
Libraries
Established as name headings: H 405
Library as a subdivision: H 1361, H 1427, H 1855
Library catalogs: H 1361
SEE ALSO Audiovisual materials—Catalogs
Manuscript collections—Catalogs
Microform catalogs
Union catalogs
[*specific form of library material*] as a subdivision
Periodicals: H 1361
Library districts
Established as name headings: H 405
Library of Congress Subject Headings
SEE Subject authority records
Librettos as a subdivision: H 1160, H 2190
Lighthouses
Established as subject headings: H 405
Literary authors, Groups of
Pattern heading: H 1155.2
Qualifying by ethnic group: H 351
Qualifying by nationality: H 350
Literary authors, Individual
"Base heading" for authors who write under various names: H 430
Biography: H 1330
Facsimiles of manuscripts: H 1595

Literary authors, Individual *(Continued)*
Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1110
—**History—Chronology:** H 1367
—**Sources:** H 2080
Translations: H 2220
Literary collections as a subdivision
Fictitious characters: H 1610
Place names: H 910
Literary form
Coding in field 008: Appendix F
Literary prizes: H 1265
Literary works, Individual
SEE ALSO Literatures
specific literary genres
Entered under author
Pattern heading: H 1155.6
Entered under title:
Pattern heading: H 1155.8
Manuscripts: H 1855
Literature
Classification numbers in subject authority records for literature headings: H 365
Collections from one place in two or more languages: H 1828
General overview of subject heading assignment: H 1775
Literature, English
SEE **English literature**
Literature, Folk
SEE Folk literature
Literature, Juvenile
SEE **Juvenile literature** as a subdivision
Literature teachers
—**Training of:** H 2217
Literatures
SEE ALSO Literary works, Individual
specific literatures and genres
Pattern heading: H 1156
Period subdivisions: H 1156
—**Sources:** H 2080
Translations: H 2220
Literatures as a subdivision: H 1828
Lithuania: H 1023

Liturgical texts set to music: H 250, H 1916.3
Liturgical works
SEE Religious works
Liturgy as a subdivision: H 1855
—Texts: H 2190
Local history: H 1845
Headings requiring **[*place*]—[*topic*]** as an additional heading: H 1845
Subdivisions under place names for local history materials: H 1845
Local subdivision of subject headings
SEE Geographic subdivisions
Locks (Hydraulic engineering)
Established as subject headings: H 405
Locomotives
Established as subject headings: H 405
London, England:
Buildings and structures in: H 1334
Longitudinal studies as a subdivision: H 1848

- M -

Macedonia (Republic): H 1055
Machine translating as a subdivision: H 2219
Malay as an adjective: H 987
Malaya: H 987
Malayan as an adjective: H 987
Malaysia: H 987
Qualification of geographic headings: H 810
Abbreviations of states: H 810
Malaysian as an adjective: H 987
Manners and customs: H 2057
Manors
Established as subject headings: H 405
Mansions
Established as subject headings: H 405
Manuals, Amateurs'
SEE **Amateurs' manuals** as a subdivision
Manuscript collections: H 1855
Catalogs: H 1361
Manuscript illuminators: H 1855

Manuscripts, Facsimile editions of
SEE Facsimiles of manuscripts
Manuscripts, Illumination of
SEE Illumination of manuscripts
Manuscripts, Individual: H 1855
Text with important illustrations: H 1855
Manuscripts, Music: H 1595
Map collections as a subdivision: H 1427
Maps: H 1865
—**Early works to 1800**: H 1576
Facsimiles: H 1595
MARC tagging
Subject authority records: H 200
Market buildings
Established as subject headings: H 405
Marketing as a subdivision: H 1870
Markets
Established as name headings: H 405
Mary, Blessed Virgin, Saint
Established subdivisions vs. free-floating subdivisions: H 1110
Mass media
—**Reviews**: H 2021
Massacres
Formulating headings: H 1592
Geographic subdivision to the city level: H 1560
Materials
Pattern heading: H 1158
(May Subd Geog)
SEE Geographic subdivisions
Medals: H 1265
Medical statistics: H 2095
Medicine, Popular: H 1943.5
Medieval cities
SEE Extinct cities (pre-1500)
Medieval legends
SEE **Legends**
Legends as a subdivision
Medium of performance of musical works: H 250, H 1916.3, **H 1917.5**, H 1918
Headings governed by patterns: H 250

Meetings
SEE Congresses
Mental health as a subdivision: H 1890
Mental health services as a subdivision: H 1890
Mergers of two or more jurisdictions into one: H 710
Metals
Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1158
Methodology as a subdivision
Forecasting: H 1628
Genealogy: H 1631
Methods as a subdivision: H 1161
[. . .] Metropolitan Area: H 362, **H 790**, H 1140
Geographic subdivision: H 830
Microform catalogs: H 1361
Publishers' catalogs: H 1965
Microforms: H 1893
Migration, Internal: H 1581
Migration, Return: H 1581
Military engagements
Formulating headings: H 1592
Military expeditions
Established as name headings: H 405
Military installations, Active
Established as name headings: H 405
Military installations, Inactive
Established as subject headings: H 405
Military invasions
SEE Invasions
Military occupations
Formulating headings: H 1592
Military raids
SEE Raids
Military relations as a subdivision: H 1996
Military services
Pattern headings: H 1159
Regimental histories: H 1995
Military units
Regimental histories: H 1995
Mine buildings
Established as subject headings: H 405

Mines
Established as subject headings: H 405
Miniature books: H 1895
—**Specimens:** H 1895
Miniature paintings of manuscripts
SEE Illumination of manuscripts
Mining districts
Established as name headings: H 405
Mints
Established as subject headings: H 405
Miscellanea as a subdivision: H 1910
Model headings
SEE Pattern headings
Moldova: H 1023
Monasteries
Established as name headings: H 405
Monastic orders
Adjectival qualifiers for subject headings: H 306
—**Controversial literature:** H 1472
Monastic and religious life: H 2015.5
Pattern heading: H 1186
Montenegro: H 1055
Months, Special: H 1592
Monuments: H 1334
Established as subject headings: H 405
Geographic subdivision to the city level: H 1334.5
Subject heading proposals for national monuments: H 1925
Monuments as a subdivision
Individual persons: H 1334
Moon
SEE Celestial bodies
Moral and ethical aspects as a subdivision: H 1949, H 1998
Morgues
Established as name headings: H 405
Mosques
Established as name headings: H 405
Motels
Established as name headings: H 405
Motion pictures: H 2230
Established as name headings: H 405

Mountain ranges
Geographic subdivision: H 830
Mountains
Established as subject headings: H 690
Muḥammad, Prophet, d. 632
Established subdivisions vs. free-floating subdivisions: H 1110
Multifaceted careers, Persons with
Biography: H 1330
Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1110
Multilingual dictionaries: H 1540
Multiple subdivisions: H 1090
Religion headings: H 1998, H 2015
Subject heading proposals: H 1090
Religion headings: H 1998, H 2015
Museums: H 1916
Established as name headings: H 405, H 1916
Museums as a subdivision: H 1916
Music
SEE ALSO Folk music
Jazz
Popular music
Accompaniment in form/genre headings: H 250, H 1917.5
Authority records: H 250, H 1917.5
By individual composers: H 1438
Common concepts in subject headings: H 1916.3
Dance music headings: H 250
Ethnic, national, and religious groups: H 1917
For occasions (religious seasons, holidays, festivals, etc.): H 1160, H 1916.3
Form/genre headings: H 250, H 1160, H 1916.3, **H 1917.5**
General: H 1916.3
Headings governed by patterns: H 250
—Instruction and study: H 1160, H 2110
Instructional materials: H 1916.3, H 1918
Inverted headings: H 306
Literature and other materials about: H 1160, H 1161, H 1916.3, H 1917, H 1918
Medium of performance in headings: H 250, H 1916.3, **H 1917.5**, H 1918
Pattern headings
For free floating subdivisions
Musical compositions: H 1160, H 2075, H 2190
Musical instruments: H 250, H 1161
For musical compositions: H 250

Music *(Continued)*
Qualifiers for music headings: H 250, H 306, H 1917.5
Subject heading assignment: H 250, H 1160, H 1161, H 1438, H 1916.3, H 1917, H 1917.5, H 1918, H 2075, H 2190
Subject heading proposals: H 250, H 1917.5, H 1918
Music, Folk
SEE Folk music
Music, Popular: H 1916.5
Music, Vocal
SEE Vocal music headings
Music and songs
SEE **Songs and music** as a subdivision: H 2075
Music and the war [revolution, etc.] as a subdivision: H 2075
(Music) as a qualifier: H 250, H 1916.3, H 1918
Music as a subdivision: H 1917
Music halls
Established as subject headings: H 405
Music heading authority records: H 250
SEE ALSO "Subject heading proposals" under Music
Music manuscripts: H 1595
Music of ethnic groups: H 1916.3, **H 1917**
Music of national groups: H 1916.3, **H 1917**
Music of religious groups: H 1916.3, **H 1917**
Musical compositions
SEE ALSO Folk music
Jazz
Music
Popular music
Pattern heading: H 1160
Musical format subdivisions: H 250, H 1160, H 1916.3
(Musical instrument) as a qualifier: H 1918
Musical instrument collections as a subdivision: H 1427
Musical instruments: H 1918
Brands and models: H 1918
—Catalogs and collections: H 1360, H 1427
Classification numbers in subject authority records: H 365, H 1918
Ethnic and national: H 1917
Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1161
In music form/genre headings: H 1917.5
Keyboard: H 1917.5

Musical instruments: H 1918 *(Continued)*
Non-musical objects used as: H 1918
Number of the same solo instrument in music form/genre headings: H 1917.5
Order, in music form/genre headings: H 1917.5
Parts of instruments and accessories: H 1918
Pattern heading: H 1161
Percussion: H 1917.5
Qualifiers: H 1917.5, H 1918
Subject heading assignment: H 1917, H 1918
Subject heading proposals: H 250, H 1917.5, H 1918
Unspecified: H 1917.5
Musical presentation subdivisions: H 250, H 1160, H 1916.3
Musical settings as a subdivision: H 1160, H 2075
Musical style: H 250, H 1160, H 1161, H 1916.3, H 1916.5, H 1917
Qualifiers for subject headings: H 306
Musicians
Composers: H 1438
Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1110
Muslim as an adjective: H 1680
Mutinies
Formulating headings: H 1592
Mythological figures
Assignment of headings: H 1795
Establishing groups as subject headings: H 405, H 1635
Establishing individual figures as name headings: H 405, H 1635
Free-floating subdivisions in H 1110 not used: H 1110, H 1635
Mythology as a subdivision: H 1998

- N -

Name as a subdivision: H 1919
Name authority record proposals made by subject catalogers
SEE Proposals for name authority records made by subject catalogers
Name authority records
SEE ALSO Name headings
RDA coding: H 405, H 430
Categories of headings established as name or subject headings: H 405
Citing name authority records in subject authority records: H 203

Name authority records *(Continued)*
Corporate bodies
Dividing by place: H 364, **H 475**
Name changes: H 460
Provisional, Name headings coded: H 436
Requests by subject catalogers for name authority records: H 405
"Subj Headings Manual/RDA" notation: H 405
Subject usage information: H 432, H 708
Geographic subdivision information: H 835
Validity of headings for subject use: H 430
Name changes
Corporate bodies: H 460
Political jurisdictions: H 708, H 830
Name headings
SEE ALSO Geographic name headings
Name authority records
Abbreviations: Appendix A
Capitalization: Appendix B
Diacritics and special characters: Appendix C
Categories of headings established as name or subject headings: H 405
"General see also" references to types of name headings: H 371
Name changes
Corporate bodies: H 460
Political jurisdictions: H 708, H 830
Punctuation: Appendix D
Requests by subject catalogers for name authority records: H 405
Validity for subject use: H 430
Name headings, Provisional: H 436
Name-title subject headings
SEE ALSO Uniform titles as subject headings
Commentaries: H 1435
Composers and works about music of individual composers: H 1438
—**History** not used: H 1647
—**Indexes:** H 1670
Named entities
Buildings and structures: H 1334
Established as name or subject headings: H 405
Events: H 1592
Geographic entities: H 690
Parks: H 1925

Named entities *(Continued)*
—**Songs and music**: H 1160, H 1916.3, **H 2075**
Street and roads: H 2098
Strikes and lockouts: H 2100
Names, Biological
SEE Biological names
Names, Family
SEE Family names
Names, Geographical: H 1630
SEE ALSO Geographic name headings
Geographic subject headings
Names, Personal
SEE Names of persons
Names as a subdivision: H 1919
Names of corporate bodies
SEE Corporate bodies
Geographic name headings
Name headings
Names of families
SEE Family names
Names of legislative acts: H 1715
Names of persons
SEE ALSO Correspondence of individual persons
Name authority records
Name headings
Literary authors, Individual
Assignment as subject heading: H 1110
Bibliographies: H 1322
Biography: H 1330
Assignment as subject heading to non-biographical works: H 1330
Drama: H 1780
Fiction: H 1790
Music: H 1438, H 1916.3, H 2075
Poetry: H 1800
Composers and works about music of individual composers: H 1438
Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1110
Persons with multifaceted careers: H 1110
—**History—Chronology:** H 1367
—**Museums:** H 1916
Named events focused on an individual person: H 1592
Pictorial works: H 1935
—**Sources:** H 2080

Names of places
SEE ALSO Geographic name headings
Geographic subject headings
Dictionaries (Gazetteers): H 1630
Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1140
Narrower terms
Changing references: H 195
Procedure for making: H 200
NARs
SEE Name authority records
National monuments
SEE Monuments
National parks: H 1925
Nationalities: H 1919.5
Folklore: H 1627
—**Foreign countries:** H 1919.5
Free-floating subdivisions under: **H 1103**, H 1919.5
Free-floating subdivisions under headings for classes of persons with national qualifiers: H 1100
Qualifiers for subject headings: H 320, H 350
National and ethnic qualifiers not used for headings in the field of music: H 1917
Subject heading proposals: H 1919.5
Nationalities, Music of
SEE Music of national groups
Nationalities in the United States
SEE Ethnic groups in the United States
Nationality qualifiers for subject headings: H 306, H 320, H 350
Not used for headings in the field of music: H 1917
Native Americans
SEE Indians
Natural disasters
SEE Disasters
specific types of disasters
Natural features in cities
Qualifying subject headings: H 810
Natural history collections as a subdivision: H 1427
Natural language
Topical subject headings: H 306
Natural objects
—**Catalogs and collections:** H 1360, H 1427

Nature conservation areas
SEE Parks
Nature of work/nature of contents codes in field 008
Books: Appendix F
Continuing resources (Serials): Appendix G
New subject heading proposals
SEE Subject heading proposals
New York (N.Y.): H 990
City sections, boroughs, counties: H 990
Metropolitan Area: H 362, H 790, H 990
Region: H 790
New Zealand
Abbreviation as a geographic qualifier: H 810
New Zealand Gazetteer of Official Geographic Names decisions
Obtaining the approved form: H 690
Newspapers
—Directories: H 1558
—Sections, columns, etc. —Reviews: H 2021
Newspapers as a subdivision: H 1920
Newspapers about specific places: H 1920
Newspapers of ethnic groups in the United States: H 1920
Newspapers of Indians of the United States: H 1920
Newspapers on special topics: H 1920
Night clubs
Established as name headings: H 405
Noble houses
Subject heading proposals: H 1574
Non-English languages
SEE Foreign languages, Subject headings in
Foreign languages, Subject headings for
Non-fiction films: H 1913
Non-fiction radio programs: H 1969.5
Non-fiction television programs: H 1913
Non-free-floating subdivisions
SEE Subdivisions
Non-jurisdictional corporate body headings
SEE Corporate bodies
Non-jurisdictional geographic headings
SEE Geographic subject headings

Non-jurisdictional islands
SEE Islands
Non-music sound recordings: H 2230
Non-Roman Arabic/Persian subject headings: H 181
Non-Roman CJK subject headings: H 182
"Nonprint" headings: H 1332
Northern, **Southern**, **Central**, etc., as qualifiers:
Headings for regions: H 760
Northern Ireland
Geographic subdivision: H 955
Law cataloging: H 955
(Not Subd Geog)
Coding headings: H 364
NTS
SEE Narrower terms
Number of choral parts in chorus music headings: H 1917.5
Number of solo vocal parts in music form/genre headings: H 1917.5
Number of the same instrument in music form/genre headings: H 1917.5
Numerals
Abbreviations: Appendix A
Numeric tags: H 200
Numismatic collections as a subdivision: H 1427
Nursery rhymes: H 1800
Literary genre vs. folklore genre: H 1627
Nursing homes
Established as name headings: H 405

- O -

Observatories
Established as name headings: H 405
Occupational groups
Folklore: H 1627
—**Education:** H 2217
—**Professional ethics:** H 1949
—**Training of:** H 2217
Occupations
Formulating headings: H 1592

Ocean currents
Established as subject headings: H 690
Oceans
Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1145.5
Office buildings
Established as subject headings: H 405
Official residences
Established as subject headings: H 405
Official Names with Macrons decisions
Obtaining the approved form: H 690
Old age homes
Established as name headings: H 405
Old Catalog headings
Citing in subject authority records: H 203
On postage stamps as a subdivision: H 1945
Online subject authority records
SEE Subject authority records
Opera houses
Established as subject headings: H 405
Operas
Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1160
—**History and criticism** not used: H 1160
Order of instruments in music form/genre headings: H 1917.5
Order of subdivisions in a subject heading string: H 1075
Order of subject headings: H 80
Orders, Monastic
SEE Monastic orders
Orders, Religious
SEE Religious orders
Ordinal numerals
SEE Numerals
Organizations
SEE Corporate bodies
Organs as a subdivision
Musical instruments: H 1918
Organs of the body
Pattern heading: H 1164
"Orphan" subject headings: H 370
Orphanages
Established as name headings: H 405

"OSER" file
SEE "MAGS" file

- P -

Pageants
Established as name headings: H 405, H 1592
Palaces
SEE ALSO Buildings and structures
Established as subject headings: H 405
Palestine: H 980
Palestinian National Authority: H 980
Parades
Established as name headings: H 405
Parenthetical qualifiers in subject headings: H 357
Music: H 250, H 1916.3, H 1916.5, H 1917.5
Musical instruments: H 1161, H 1918
Park districts
Established as name headings: H 405
Parks: H 1925
SEE ALSO City parks
National parks
As geographic subdivisions: H 830, H 1925
Established as subject headings: H 405, H 690
Subject heading proposals: H 1925
Use of vernacular: H 1925
Parks (Administrative agencies)
Established as name headings: H 405
Partial biography: H 1330
Partial title added entries: **H 150**
Named collections of objects: H 1427
Participation, [. . .] as a subdivision: H 1200
Parts of the body
Singular vs. plural: H 285
Pattern headings: H 1146
SEE ALSO specific pattern headings
As examples in "General see also" references: **H 371**, H 1146
Establishing new subdivisions under: H 1146
Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1147-H 1200
Music headings governed by: H 250

Pavilions
Established as subject headings: H 405
Peoples, Ancient
SEE Ancient peoples
People's Republic of China
SEE China
Performing arts
SEE ALSO Drama
Music
—**Reviews:** H 2021
Period subdivisions
SEE Chronological subdivisions
Periodicals as a subdivision: **H 1927,** H 2060
Form subdivisions not further subdivided by —**Periodicals:** H 1927
Periodicals, Bibliographies of: H 1927
Periodicals, Catalogs of: H 1361
Periodicals, Electronic: H 1580.5
Persian subject headings (Non-Roman): H 181
Personal correspondence
SEE Correspondence of individual persons
Personal names
SEE Names of persons
Personal narratives as a subdivision: H 1480, H 1538, **H 1928**
Persons, Classes of
SEE Classes of persons
Persons, Names of
SEE Names of persons
Pets
Biography: H 1720
Philosophers
—**Philosophy** not used under names of individual philosophers: H 1929
Philosophy headings
Usage of —**History** under: H 1647
Photograph collections as a subdivision: H 1427
Photographs as a subdivision: H 1935
Photographs from space as a subdivision: H 1210.5
Photography: H 1935
Photography, Aerial: H 1210.5
Photography, Artistic: H 1255
Photography, Portrait: H 1255

Photography, Space: H 1210.5
Phrase headings
SEE ALSO **[. . .] and [. . .]** headings
Free-floating terms and phrases
[. . .] in [. . .] headings
Broader terms: H 370
Phrase headings vs. subdivisions
[. . .] and [. . .] headings: H 310
Established phrase headings vs. free-floating subdivisions: H 1095
Piano
Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1161
Pictorial works as a subdivision: H 1935
Picture dictionaries: H 1540
Pipelines
Established as subject headings: H 405
Place names
SEE ALSO Geographic name headings
Geographic subject headings
Biography: H 1330
Dictionaries (Gazetteers)
SEE Gazetteers
Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1140
Local history and genealogical source material: H 1845
Newspapers: H 1920
Used as topical subdivisions
Subfield coding: H 830
Plains
Established as subject headings: H 690
Planetariums
Established as name headings: H 405
Planets
SEE Celestial bodies
Planned communities
Established as name headings: H 405
Plans (Programs)
Established as name headings: H 405
Plants
SEE ALSO Domestic plants
Assigning classification numbers: H 1332
Establishing biological names: H 1332

Plants *(Continued)*
Headings previously unprinted in *Library of Congress Subject Headings*: H 1332
Geographic subdivision allowed at any taxonomic level: H 1332
Pattern heading: H 1180
Subject heading proposals: H 1332
Playgrounds
Established as subject headings: H 405
Plays
SEE Drama
Plays, Children's
SEE Juvenile drama
Plazas: H 1334
Established as subject headings: H 405
Plural vs. singular form of subject headings: H 285
Animals: H 1332
[. . .] as [. . .] headings: H 360
Musical compositions: H 250, H 1160, H 1917.5
Musical instruments: H 250, H 1917.5, H 1918
Parts of the body: H 285
Plants: H 1332
Products: H 285
Poetry: H 1800
Poetry, Children's
SEE Juvenile poetry
Poetry, Folk
SEE Folk poetry
Poetry as a subdivision: H 1800
Fictitious characters: H 1610
Place names: H 910
Poets
SEE Literary authors, Groups
Literary authors, Individual
Police stations
Established as subject headings: H 405
Political activity as a subdivision: H 1942
Political aspects as a subdivision: H 1942
Political divisions of countries
SEE Geographic name headings—First order political divisions of countries
Political history
SEE **Politics and government** as a subdivision

Political incidents
Formulating headings: H 1592
Political jurisdictions
SEE Geographic name headings
Political participation: H 1942
Political science: H 1942
Politicians
Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1110
Politics, Practical: H 1942
Politics and government as a subdivision: H 1942
Polyglot dictionaries: H 1540
Pools, Public
Established as subject headings: H 405
Poorhouses
Established as name headings: H 405
Popular music: H 1916.5
Popular works as a subdivision: H 1943.5
Port authorities
Established as name headings: H 405
Portals as building details
SEE Building details
Portrait photography: H 1255
Portraits as a subdivision: H 1935
Ports
Established as subject headings: H 405
Possessions
SEE **Territories and possessions** as a subdivision
Post offices
Established as subject headings: H 405
Postage stamps on specific topics: H 1945
Poster collections: H 1945.5
Poster collections as a subdivision: H 1427
Posters: H 1945.5
Qualifying by nationalities: H 1945.5
Posters, Travel
SEE Travel posters
Posters as a subdivision: H 1945.5
Posthouses
Established as subject headings: H 405
Power plants
Established as subject headings: H 405

Preaching: H 2032
Prehistoric periods and cultures: H 1225
Prepositional phrase headings
SEE Phrase headings
Presidential mansions
Established as subject headings: H 405
Presidents
SEE Rulers and statesmen
Princes: H 1574
Princesses: H 1574
Prisons
Established as name headings: H 405
Private book collections
SEE **Library** as a subdivision
Private collections: H 1427
Private collections as a subdivision: H 1360, H 1427
Use of geographic subdivision for location of collection: H 1427
Prizes: H 1265
Products
Singlular vs. plural: H 285
Professional ethics: H 1949
Professional ethics as a subdivision: H 1949
Programs (Plans)
Established as name headings: H 405
Programs, Computer
SEE Computer programs, Individual
Projects
Established as name headings: H 405
Proper names
SEE Name headings
Proposals for name authority records made by subject catalogers
Adding 781 fields: H 835
Dividing corporate name headings geographically: H 475
Proposals for subject headings
SEE Subject heading proposals
"Subject heading proposals" as a subtopic under specific topics
Proverbs
Literary genre vs. folklore genre: H 1627
Provinces as a subdivision: H 713
Provisional name headings: H 436

Provisional subject headings: H 1334
Psychological testing as a subdivision: H 2186
Public buildings
Broader terms: H 1334
Public celebrations
Established as name headings: H 405
Public comfort stations
Established as subject headings: H 405
Public opinion as a subdivision: H 1955
Public pools
Established as subject headings: H 405
Publishers' catalogs: H 1965
Publishers' imprints
Established as name headings: H 405
Pueblos
Established as name headings: H 405
Puerto Rico
Abbreviation as geographic qualifier: H 810
Punctuation: Appendix D
Headings using free-floating terms and phrases: H 362
Music form/genre headings: H 1917.5
[. . .] Region headings: H 362, H 760
Purges
Formulating headings: H 1592

- Q -

Qualifiers, Geographic
SEE Geographic qualifiers
Qualifiers, Parenthetical, in subject headings
SEE Parenthetical qualifiers in subject headings
Qualifiers, Subject heading
SEE Subject heading qualifiers
Quarters of cities: H 720
Established as name headings: H 405, H 720
Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1140
Geographic subdivision: H 720, **H 830**
Queens: H 1574
Questions and answers: H 1910
Quotations as a subdivision: H 1969
Quotations, maxims, etc. as a subdivision: H 1969

- R -

Races (Contests)
Established as name headings: H 405
Racetracks
Established as subject headings: H 405
Radio genre/form terms: H 1969.5
Radio programs
Established as name headings: H 405
Raids
Formulating headings: H 1592
Railroads: H 1970
Established as name headings: H 405, H 1970
Railway stations
Established as subject headings: H 405
Ranches
Established as subject headings: H 405
RDA name headings: H 405, H 430
Extinct cities: H 715
Readers: H 1975
Readers as a subdivision: H 1975
Reading films, Juvenile
SEE Juvenile films
Reading interests: H 1333
Recipes: H 1475
Recordings, Catalogs of
SEE **Audiotape catalogs** as a subdivision
Discography as a subdivision
Film catalogs as a subdivision
Recordings, Juvenile sound
SEE Juvenile sound recordings
Recreation areas
Established as subject headings: H 405
Recreation districts
Established as name headings: H 405
Recruiting, enlistment, etc. as a subdivision
Subdividing by wars: H 1159
Reference books: H 1980
Bibliographies: H 1980

References
SEE Broader terms
Narrower terms
Related terms
"Used for" references
Referrals to descriptive catalogers
Requests to have named entities established: H 405
Refugee camps
Established as name headings: H 405
Regimental histories as a subdivision: H 1995
Regions, Geographic
City regions: H 362, **H 790**
Extinct cities: H 715, H 760
Geographic subdivision: H 830
Constructing headings with the free-floating term **[. . .] Region:** H 362, **H 760**
Established as subject headings: H 690
Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1140
Geographic subdivision: H 830
Regions based on international organizations: H 760
Regions based on rivers: H 362, **H 800**, H 1145.5
Regions as a subdivision: H 713
Regions of the body
Pattern heading: H 1164
Registers of births, etc.: H 1631, H 1845
Reigns
Formulating headings: H 1592
Related terms: H 370
Changing references: H 195
Keying in subject authority records: H 200
Moving image genre/form terms: H 1913
Radio genre/form terms: H 1969.5
Relations as a subdivision: H 1996
Relationships between two topics
[. . .] and [. . .] headings: H 310
Religion as a subdivision: H 1997
—Religion—History not used: H 1997
Religions: H 1998, H 2015
—Apologetic works: H 1472
As subdivisions under **—Religions aspects:** H 1998
As subdivisions under topical headings: H 2015

Religions *(Continued)*
Civilization: H 1370
—Controversial literature: H 1472
Corporate body headings established as name headings: H 405
Founders of
Biography: H 1330
Established subdivisions vs. free-floating subdivisions: H 1110
Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1110
Subdivisions for events focused on: H 1592
—Liturgy—Texts: H 2190
Pattern heading: H 1185
—Rituals—Texts: H 2190
Religious aspects as a subdivision: H 1998
Subdivided by religions and denominations: H 1998
Religious denominations
SEE ALSO Christian denominations
Religious sects
Established as name headings: H 405
Religious education textbooks: H 2187
Religious groups
Music: H 1916.3, **H 1917**
Religious life: H 2015.5
SEE ALSO **Christian life**
Religious life and customs as a subdivision: H 2016
Religious life as a subdivision: H 2015.5
Religious orders
Adjectival qualifiers for subject headings: H 306
—Controversial literature: H 1472
—Monastic and religious life: H 2015.5
Pattern heading: H 1186
Religious qualifiers for subject headings: H 306
Religious sects: H 2015
SEE ALSO Christian denominations
—Apologetic works: H 1472
As subdivisions under **—Religious aspects**: H 1998
As subdivisions under topical headings: H 2015
—Civilization not used: H 1370
—Controversial literature: H 1472

Religious sects *(Continued)*
Corporate body headings established as name headings: H 405
—Liturgy—Texts: H 2190
Pattern heading: H 1185
—Rituals—Texts: H 2190
Religious works
SEE ALSO Sacred works
—History and criticism: H 2190
Manuscripts: H 1855
Remote-controlled vehicles
Established as subject headings: H 405
Republic of China
SEE Taiwan
Republics as a subdivision: H 713
Republics of the former Soviet Union: H 1023
Requests to descriptive catalogers to establish named entities: H 405
Research, Legal
SEE **Legal research** as a subdivision
Research as a subdivision
Research as a subdivision: H 2020
Legal materials: H 1710
Research for subject heading proposals: H 202
Research parks
Established as name headings: H 405
Research stations
Established as name headings: H 405
Reservations, Indian
Established as subject headings: H 405
Reserves
Established as subject headings: H 405
Subject heading proposals: H 1925
Use of vernacular: H 1925
Reserves (Administrative agencies)
Established as name headings: H 405
Reservoirs
Established as subject headings: H 690
Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1145.5
Resorts
Established as subject headings: H 405
Restaurants
Established as name headings: H 405

Retail stores
Established as name headings: H 405
Retail trade
Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1153
Return migration: H 1581
Reviews as a subdivision: H 2021
Revolutions
SEE ALSO Cultural revolutions
Formulating headings: H 1592
Pattern heading: H 1200
Rhymes, Nursery
SEE Nursery rhymes
Riddles
Literary genre vs. folklore genre: H 1627
Riots
Formulating headings: H 1592
Geographic subdivision to the city level: H 1560
Rituals—Texts as a subdivision: H 2190
River basins
SEE Watersheds
River deltas
SEE Deltas
River regions: H 362, **H 800**, H 1145.5
River valleys
SEE ALSO Rivers
Valleys
Formulating headings: **H 800**, H 1145.5
[. . .] Region
Headings not constructed for regions based on river valleys: H 760
Rivers
SEE ALSO Estuaries
Forks of rivers
River regions
River valleys
Watersheds
Wild and scenic rivers
Established as subject headings: H 690
Free-floating region headings based on names of rivers: H 362, **H 800**, H 1145.5
Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1145.5

Rivers *(Continued)*
Geographic subdivision: H 800
Subject heading proposals: H 800
Geographic qualifiers: H 800
References: H 800
Roads
Established as subject headings: H 405
Geographic subdivision: H 830
Subject heading proposals: H 2098
Geographic qualifiers: H 2098
Use of vernacular: H 690, H 2098
Rockshelters
Subject heading proposals: H 1225
Roman gods
SEE Greek and Roman gods
Roman numerals
SEE Numerals
Romance languages
SEE ALSO Foreign languages, Subject headings for
Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1154
Romances: H 1795
Romances, Arthurian
SEE Arthurian romances
Romances as a subdivision: H 1795
Romanization
Arabic/Persian subject headings: H 181
CJK subject headings: H 182
Greek and Hebrew letters in subject headings: Appendix C
Topical headings established in foreign languages: H 315
UF references for geographic headings: H 690
Rooms as building details: H 1334
Established as subject headings: H 405
Royal houses: H 1574
—**Biography** not used: H 1574
Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1120
Subject heading proposals: H 1574
RTs
SEE Related terms

Rulers and statesmen
SEE ALSO **Kings and rulers** as a subdivision
Biography: H 1330
Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1110
Russia: H 1023
Russian as adjectival qualifier
vs. **Soviet**: H 1023

- S -

Sacred texts set to music: H 250, H 1916.3
Sacred works
SEE ALSO Religious works
Translations—Sacred works
specific sacred books
Commentaries: H 1435
—**Controversial literature:** H 1472
—**History—Chronology:** H 1367
Manuscripts: H 1855
Pattern heading: H 1188
—**Textbooks:** H 2187
—**Translations:** H 1300
—**Translations into [. . .]:** H 1300
Versions or translations: **H 1300,** H 1435
Safety regulations as a subdivision: H 1705
Saint
Abbreviations: Appendix A
Family names: H 1631
Sanatoriums
Established as name headings: H 405
Sanitary landfills
Established as subject headings: H 405
Sanitation districts
Established as name headings: H 405
Satellites (Moons)
Established as subject headings: H 405
Satellites, Artificial
Established as name headings: H 405

Scandals
Formulating headings: H 1592
Scenic rivers
SEE Wild and scenic rivers
School districts
Established as name headings: H 450
Schools (Educational institutions)
Established as name headings: H 405
Schools (Groups of people)
Capitalization: Appendix B
Schools of artists
Capitalization: Appendix B
Established as subject headings: H 405
Scientific and technical atlases: H 1935
Scientific apparatus collections as a subdivision: H 1427
Scientific expeditions:
Established as name headings: H 405
Scope notes: H 400
Adding to an existing heading: H 400
Changing an existing note: H 400
Moving image genre/form terms: H 1913
Proposing with a new heading: H 200, H 400
Radio genre/form terms: H 1969.5
Scope notes that allow for free-floating subdivision of headings: H 1090
Scores
Not forwarded to the Data Integrity Section when proposing new headings:
H 250
Scotland
Geographic subdivision: H 955
Law cataloging: H 955
Sculpture: H 1250
Seas
Established as subject headings: H 690
Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1145.5
Sections, columns, etc. —Reviews as a subdivision: H 2021
Sects, Christian
SEE Christian denominations
Sects, Religious
SEE Religious sects

"See also" references
SEE Broader terms
Narrower terms
Related terms
"See also" references, General
SEE General see also references
"See" references
SEE "Used for" references
"See" references, General
SEE General see references
Selections
Not used in name-title subject headings for musical works: H 1438
Serbia: H 1055
Serbia and Montenegro: H 1055
Qualification of geographic headings: H 810
Serials: H 178
Serials, Electronic: H 1580.5
Sermons: H 2032
Service stations
Established as name headings: H 405
Shakespeare, William, 1564-1616
Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1110
Shakespeare, William, 1564-1616. Hamlet
Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1155.6
Ships
Established as name headings: H 405
Shipyards
Established as name headings: H 405
Shopping centers
Established as name headings: H 405
Short films: H 1913
Shows (Exhibitions)
Established as name headings: H 405
Shrines
Established as subject headings: H 405
Sieges: H 1560, H 1592
Formulating headings: H 1592
Simulation methods as a subdivision: H 2040, H 2110

Singular vs. plural form of subject headings: H 285
Animals: H 1332
[. . .] as [. . .] headings: H 360
Musical compositions: H 250, H 1160, H 1917.5
Musical instruments: H 250, H 1917.5, H 1918
Parts of the body: H 285
Plants: H 1332
Products: H 285
Sites, Archaeological
SEE Archaeological sites
653 field for uncontrolled subject terms: H 160
Slide collections as a subdivision: H 1427
Slides: H 2230
Slides as a subdivision: H 1935
Slovenia: H 1055
Social conditions as a subdivision: H 2055
Social history
Definition and comparison with **Civilization:** H 1370
Social life and customs as a subdivision: H 2057
Folklore materials: H 1627
—**History** not used: H 2057
Period subdivisions: H 2057
Societies and clubs as a subdivision: H 2060
Societies, etc. as a subdivision: H 2060
Family names: H 1631
Socioeconomic status as a subdivision
Discontinued: H 1578, H 2055
Sociological aspects as a subdivision: H 2055
Software: H 2070
Individual computer programs established as name headings: H 405
Juvenile software: H 1690
Song texts
Language: H 250, H 1916.3, H 1917
Without the music: H 2190
Songs, Folk
SEE **Folk songs**
Songs and music as a subdivision: H 1160, H 1916.3, H 2075
Sound recording labels
Established as name headings: H 405

Sound recordings
Jazz and popular music
Chronological subdivisions: H 1916.5
Non-music: H 2230
Not forwarded to the Data Integrity Section when proposing new headings: H 250
Sound recordings, Non-music: H 2230
Source materials: H 2080
SEE ALSO specific types of source materials
Bibliographies: H 2080
Catalogs: H 2080
Sources as a subdivision: H 1480, **H 2080**
Government publications: H 1643
Southern, **Central**, **Northern**, etc., as qualifiers:
Headings for regions: H 760
Sovereignties, Territorial
SEE Territorial sovereignties
Soviet as adjectival qualifier
vs. **Russian**: H 1023
Soviet republics, Former: H 1023
Soviet Union: H 1023
Space exploration: H 1564
Space photography: H 1210.5
Space vehicles
Established as name headings: H 405
Spanish America
SEE Latin America
Spas
Established as subject headings: H 405
Special characters: Appendix C
Special days: H 1592
Special decades: H 1592
Special months: H 1592
Special weeks: H 1592
Special years: H 1592
Specifications: H 2083
Specifications as a subdivision: H 2083
Specificity of subject headings: H 180
Splits of jurisdictions into two or more entities: H 710

Sports arenas
Established as subject headings: H 405
Sports events
SEE ALSO specific types of sports events
Established as name headings: H 405
Sports facilities
Established as subject headings: H 405
Spouses of famous people
Biography: H 1330
Squadrons
Use of —**Regimental histories:** H 1995
Stadiums
Established as subject headings: H 405
Stagecoach stations
Established as subject headings: H 405
Stamp collections as a subdivision: H 1427
States as a subdivision: H 713
Statesmen
SEE Rulers and statesmen
Statistical methods as a subdivision: H 2095
Statistical services as a subdivision: H 2095
Statistics: H 2095
Nature of work/nature of contents codes: H 2095
Statistics, Medical
SEE Medical statistics
Statistics, Vital
SEE Vital statistics
Statistics as a subdivision: H 2095
Statues
SEE Monuments
Steppes
Established as subject headings: H 690
Stock exchanges
Established as name headings: H 405
Stores, Retail
Established as name headings: H 405
Stories as a subdivision
Discontinued: H 1790
Storms
Geographic subdivision to the city level: H 1560

Straight word order
Topical subject headings: H 306
Street addresses
Buildings established as street addresses: H 1334
Streets
Established as subject headings: H 405
Geographic subdivision: H 830
Subject heading proposals: H 2098
Geographic qualifiers: H 2098
Use of vernacular: H 690, H 2098
Strikes: H 2100
Structures
SEE Buildings and structures
Students
Qualifying by nationality: H 350
Students—Yearbooks as a subdivision: H 2400
Studies (Research projects)
Established as name headings: H 405
Studies and exercises as a subdivision: H 1161
Study and teaching as a subdivision: H 2110
Area studies: H 2110
—Activity programs: H 2110
—Audio-visual aids: H 2110
—Simulation methods: H 2110
—Supervision: H 2110
Subdivision, Geographic
SEE Geographic subdivisions
Subdivision, Indirect
SEE Geographic subdivisions
Subdivisions: H 1075
SEE ALSO Chronological subdivisions
Discontinued subdivisions
Form subdivisions
Free-floating subdivisions
Geographic subdivisions
Multiple subdivisions
specific pattern headings
Abbreviated forms discontinued: Appendix A
Broader terms: H 370
Controlled by pattern headings: H 1146-H 1200

Subdivisions *(Continued)*
Formulating dates for specific events: H 1078
Further subdividing by place: H 860
"General see also" references: H 371
"General see" references: H 374
Interposing place between subject headings and topical subdivisions: H 870
Order of subdivisions: H 1075
Proposals to establish
Multiple subdivisions: H 1090
Religions: H 1998, H 2015
Subdivisions having general application: H 205
Subdivisions qualified by nationality, ethnic group, language, etc.: H 320
Subdivisions under pattern headings: H 1146
Subdivisions vs. phrase headings
[. . .] and [. . .] headings: H 310
Established phrase headings vs. free-floating subdivisions: H 1095
Subfield coding
Events established as subdivisions: H 1592
Geographic subdivisions: H 830
Names of places used as topical subdivisions: H 830
Subheadings as "used for" references: H 373
"Subj Headings Manual/RDA" notation in name authority records: H 405
Subject authority records: H 40
Changing existing records: H 193
Adding *(May Subd Geog)*: H 194, H 250
Changing classification numbers: H 196
Changing references: H 195
Deleting subject authority records: H 193, H 193.5
Characteristics of records in the file: H 40
Creating new authority records: H 200
Filling hierarchical "gaps": H 370
Headings previously unprinted in *Library of Congress Subject Headings*
Biological names: H 1332
Geographic subdivision information in 781 fields: H 836
Historical background: H 40
Status of headings: H 40
Subject dictionaries: H 1540
Subject heading assignment: H 180
SEE ALSO specific topics
Editions: H 175

Subject heading assignment *(Continued)*
Latest name of jurisdictions: H 708, H 830
Order of headings: H 80
Subject authority records: H 40
Subject headings identical to descriptive access points: H 184
Subject heading changes in bibliographic records: H 165
Subject heading construction: H 180
Music headings: H 250, H 1438, H 1916.3, H 1917.5
Musical instruments: H 1918
Subject Heading Proposal System: H 40, H 193, H 194, H 195, **H 200**
Subject heading proposals: H 200
SEE ALSO "Subject heading proposals" as a subtopic under specific topics
Abbreviations in subject headings: Appendix A, H 373
Acronyms as subject headings: H 373
Articles in the initial position in subject headings: H 290
Authority research: H 202
Checklist: H 202
Broader terms and narrower terms: H 200, H 370, H 375
Cataloger comments accompanying proposals: H 200
Categories of headings established as name or subject headings: H 405
Changing existing headings
Adding (*May Subd Geog*): H 193, **H 194**
Changing classification numbers: H 196
Changing references: H 195
Deleting subject authority records: H 193, H 193.5
Checklist for new subject heading proposals: H 200
Citing sources: H 200, **H 203**
Subject Headings Manual as a source: H 200
Classification numbers: **H 365**
Changing numbers associated with existing headings: H 196
Musical instruments: H 1918
New subject headings: H 200
Diacritics and special characters in subject headings: Appendix C
"Gaps" in hierarchical reference structure: H 370
LC patterns
Criteria for citing: H 202
Procedure for citing in subject authority records: H 200
Related terms: H 200, H 370
Scope notes: H 400
Subject authority records: H 200

Subject heading proposals *(Continued)*
Templates: H 200
"Used for" references: H 200, H 373
When to propose new subject headings H 187
Subject heading qualifiers
SEE ALSO Geographic qualifiers
Language qualifiers for subject headings
Art qualifiers: H 306, H 1250
Ethnic qualifiers: H 306, **H 351**
Not used with headings in the field of music: H 1917
Language qualifiers: H 250, H 306
Music headings: H 250, H 306, H 1160, H 1916.3, H 1917, H 1917.5, H 1918
Nationality qualifiers: H 306, H 320, H 350
Not used with headings in the field of music: H 1917
Parenthetical qualifiers: H 357
Music: H 250, H 1916.3, H 1916.5, H 1917.5
Musical instruments: H 1918
Religious qualifiers: H 306
Time periods: H 306
Subject headings, Authority records for
SEE Subject authority records
Subject headings, Cancelling:
SEE Cancelling subject headings
Subject headings, Changing existing
SEE Changing existing subject headings
Subject headings in bibliographic records, Changing: H 165
Subject headings, Specificity of: H 180
Subject usage information in name authority records: H 432, H 708, H 835
Geographic subdivision information: H 835
Name changes in political jurisdictions: H 708
Subscript characters: Appendix C
[. . .] Suburban Area: H 362, **H 790**, H 1140
Suburbs and environs as a subdivision
Discontinued: H 790
Superscript characters: Appendix C
Supplements: H 2145
Surveys: H 2149

Synagogues
Established as name headings: H 405
Systems of law: H 1718

- T -

Tables as a subdivision: H 2160
Tagging subject headings
Moving image genre/form terms: H 1913
Radio genre/form terms: H 1969.5
Taiwan: H 925
Wade-Giles romanization used for geographic names: H 690
Tajikistan: H 1023
Tales: H 1627
SEE ALSO Fairy tales
As a folklore heading: H 1627
Language qualifiers not used: H 1627
Tape recordings, Catalogs of
SEE **Audiotape catalogs** as a subdivision
Tape recordings, Video
SEE Video recordings
Teacher training as a subdivision: H 2217
Teachers
—**In-service training:** H 2217
—**Training of:** H 2217
Teaching films, Foreign language: H 2230
Technical atlases: H 1935
Telephone calls
Citing in subject authority records: H 203
Telephone directories as a subdivision: H 1558
Television programs
Established as name headings: H 405
Template for proposing genre/form terms: H 200
Templates for proposing Children's Subject Headings: H 200
Templates for proposing subject headings: H 200
Temples in ruins
Established as subject headings: H 405
Temples in use
Established as name headings: H 405

Terminal buildings
Established as subject headings: H 405
Terminology as a subdivision: H 2184
—**Dictionaries** not used: H 2184
Terms and phrases as a subdivision: H 1540, H 2184
—**Dictionaries** not used: H 2184
Territorial questions as a subdivision: H 1333.5
Territorial sovereignties
Geographic subdivision: H 830
Territories and possessions as a subdivision: H 2185
SEE ALSO Colonies of individual countries
Terrorist attacks
Not covered by pattern heading for wars: H 1200
Testing as a subdivision: H 2186
Textbooks: H 2187
SEE ALSO Juvenile textbooks
—**Study and teaching** not used: H 2110
Textbooks, Religious education
SEE Religious education textbooks
Textbooks as a subdivision: H 1690, **H 2187**
Textbooks for English, [French, etc.] speakers as a subdivision: H 2187
Textbooks for foreign speakers as a subdivision: H 2187
Texts as a subdivision: H 2190
Music: H 1160, H 1917
"The" in the initial position in subject headings: H 290, H 690
Theater buildings
Established as subject headings: H 405
Theater companies
Established as name headings: H 405
Theater disaster, [*date*] as a subdivision
Discontinued: H 1560
Theme parks
Established as subject headings: H 405
Themes, motives as a subdivision: H 1627
Theology as a subdivision
Usage under **Bible:** H 1295
Theses: H 1570
Time period qualifiers for subject headings: H 306
Time periods: H 620

Title added entries, Partial
SEE Partial title added entries
Titles of publications as subject headings: H 290, H 1435
Tombs
Established as subject headings: H 405
Topical subdivisions: H 1075
Literature about music: H 1160
Musical instruments: H 1161
Topical subject headings
Music: H 1160, H 1916.3
Template for proposing: H 200
Tornadoes
Geographic subdivision to the city level: H 1560
Tournaments
Established as name headings: H 405
Tours as a subdivision: H 1645
Towers
Established as subject headings: H 405
Townships in the United States
Not used as geographic qualifiers: H 810
Trails
Established as subject headings: H 405
Subject heading proposals: H 1925
Use of vernacular: H 690, H 1925
Training of as a subdivision: H 2110, **H 2217**
Translating and interpreting: H 2219
Translating as a subdivision: H 2219
Sacred works: H 1300
Translating into [*name of language*] as a subdivision: H 2219
Translating services: H 2219
Translations: H 2220
Classical and ancient works: H 1412
Folk literature: H 1627
Sacred works: H 1300
Translations as a subdivision: H 2220
Translations into [*name of language*] as a subdivision: H 2220
Folk literature: H 1627
Not used under headings for music of ethnic and national groups: H 1917
Sacred works: H 1300

Transliteration
Geographic subject headings: H 690
Transportation: H 2225
Transportation as a subdivision: H 2225
Travel posters: H 1945.5
Treaties: H 2227
Established as name headings: H 2227
Treaties as a subdivision: H 2227
Trials: H 2228
Formulating headings: H 2228
Trials, litigation, etc. as a subdivision: H 2228
Tribes (Ethnic groups)
Established as subject headings: H 405
Tribes (Legal entities)
Established as name headings: H 405
Tribes, Indigenous (U.S.)
As geographic subdivisions: H 830
Tripitaka: H 1300
Truck stops
Established as name headings: H 405
Tsunamis
Geographic subdivision to the city level: H 1560
Tuberculosis
Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1150
Turkmenistan: H 1023
Tunnels: H 1334
Established as subject headings: H 405
Typhoons
Geographic subdivision to the city level: H 1560

- U -

U.S.A.
SEE United States
U.S.S.R.: H 1023
U.S. Newspaper Program: H 1920
U.S. states: H 713
U.S. Virgin Islands
SEE United States Virgin Islands
United States Virgin Islands
Abbreviation as geographic qualifier: H 810
Geographic subdivision: H 807

UF references
SEE "Used for" references
Ukraine: H 1023
Unaccompanied as a qualifier of music form/genre headings: H 1917.5
Uncontrolled subject terms in the 653 field: H 160
Undertakers
Established as name headings: H 405
Uniform titles as subject headings
Commentaries: H 1435
Deleting articles in the initial position: H 290
Established as name headings: H 1435
—**History** not used: H 1647
Tagging headings
Subject authority records: H 200
Union catalogs: H 1361
Union lists as a subdivision: H 1361
Union territories as a subdivision: H 713
United Kingdom
SEE Great Britain
United States
Abbreviation as geographic qualifier: H 810
Geographic subdivision: H 830
Not used under **[. . .] Americans**: H 1919.5
Not used under certain popular music headings: H 1916.5
Qualification of geographic headings: H 810
Abbreviations of states: H 810
United States—History—Civil War, 1861-1865
Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1200
United States. Air Force
Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1159
United States. Armed Forces
Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1159
United States. Army
Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1159
United States. Congress
Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1155
United States. Marine Corps
Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1159

United States. Navy
Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1159
United States Board on Geographic Names decisions
SEE BGN decisions
United States states: H 713
Universities and colleges
Established as name headings: H 405
Pattern heading for individual educational institutions: H 1151
Pattern heading for types of educational institutions: H 1151.5
Uprisings
Formulating headings: H 1592
Pattern heading: H 1200
Urban transportation: H 2225
USA
SEE United States
"Use" references
SEE "Used for references"
"Used for" references: H 373
Changing references: H 195
Contrasted with "general see" references: H 374
Entering in subject authority records: H 200
Foreign language terms: H 373
Geographic names: H 690
Headings qualified by nationality, ethnic group, or language: H 320, H 373
Moving image genre/form terms: H 1913
Music genre/form headings: H 250, H 1917.5
Musical instruments: H 1918
Radio genre/form terms: H 1969.5
Subheadings: H 373
Variant music subdivisions: H 1160, H 1161
USNP
SEE U.S. Newspaper program
USSR: H 1023
Utility districts
Established as name headings: H 405
Uzbekistan: H 1023

- V -

Valleys
SEE ALSO River valleys
Established as subject headings: H 690
Formulating headings: H 800
Vatican City: H 1045
Geographic subdivision: H 830, H 1045
Vedas: H 1300
Vehicles, Land
SEE Land vehicles
Vehicles, Remote-controlled
Established as subject headings: H 405
Versions as a subdivision: H 1300
Video recordings: H 2230
Villas
Established as subject headings: H 405
Violin
Free-floating subdivisions used under: H 1161
Virgin Islands of the United States
SEE United States Virgin Islands
Visual art
SEE Art
Visual disabilities, People with
Visual materials for: H 1913
Visual materials: H 2230
Vital statistics: H 2095
Vocal music headings
Accompaniment: H 1917.5
Chorus: H 1917.5
Construction: H 1917.5
Governed by pattern headings: H 250
—**History and criticism:** H 2190
Solo voices: H 1917.5
—**Texts:** H 2190
Vocational guidance as a subdivision: H 2232
Voivodeships as a subdivision: H 713

Volcanic eruptions
Formulating headings: H 1592

- W -

Wales
Geographic subdivision: H 955
Law cataloging: H 955
Walls: H 1334
Established as subject headings: H 405
War crime trials: H 2228
Wars
Biography: H 1330
—Casualties—Statistics: H 2095
Drama: H 1780
Fiction: H 1790
Formulating headings: H 1592
Pattern heading: H 1200
—Personal narratives: H 1928
Poetry: H 1800
—Public opinion: H 1955
—Territorial questions: H 1333.5
—Treaties: H 2227
Washington (D.C.)
Geographic subdivision: H 830, H 1050
Metropolitan Area: H 362, H 790, H 1050
Region: H 790
Water districts
Established as name headings: H 405
Watersheds
Formulating headings: H 800, H 1145.5
[. . .] Region
Headings not constructed for regions based on watersheds: H 760
Waterways
Established as subject headings: H 405
Web sites
Established as name headings: H 405
Weeks, Special: H 1592

Wells
Established as subject headings: H 405
West Bank: H 980
West Germany
SEE Germany
Wild and scenic rivers
Subject heading proposals: H 800, **H 1925**
Wilderness areas: H 1925
Wildlife refuges
SEE Parks
Windows as building details: H 1334
with in music form/genre headings: H 250, H 1916.3, H 1917.5
Wives of famous men
Biography: H 1330
Women
SEE ALSO Wives of famous men
Biography: H 1330
Works of art, Individual
Established as name headings: H 405
World politics: H 1942
World War, 1939-1945
Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1200
—**Public opinion:** H 1955
World Wide Web
Citing in subject authority records: H 203

- X -

"x" references
SEE "Used for" references
"xx" references
SEE Broader terms
Related terms

- Y -

Yearbooks as a subdivision
Discontinued as a general form subdivision: H 2400
Usage under —**Students**: H 2400
Years: H 620
Years, Special: H 1592
Yugoslavia: H 1055

- Z -

Zaibatsu
SEE Asian conglomerate corporations
Zoological gardens
Established as name headings: H 405